

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

---

## STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS

---

# 2012 No. 1916

# MEDICINES

## The Human Medicines Regulations 2012

<i>Made</i>	- - - -	<i>19th July 2012</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>		<i>24th July 2012</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	- -	<i>14th August 2012</i>

The Secretary of State and the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety make the following Regulations. They do so in exercise of the powers conferred by section 2(2) and (5) of the European Communities Act 1972<sup>M1</sup>, having been designated for the purposes of section 2(2) of that Act in relation to medicinal products<sup>M2</sup> and to measures in the veterinary and phytosanitary fields for the protection of public health<sup>M3</sup>. They do so in exercise also of the powers conferred by sections 87(1), 88(1) and (2), 91(2), and 129(1), (2) and (5) of the Medicines Act 1968<sup>M4</sup>, having consulted such organisations as appear to them to be representative of interests likely to be substantially affected by these Regulations in accordance with section 129(6) of that Act.

---

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Instrument modified (10.5.2013) by [The National Health Service \(Pharmaceutical Services\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/898\)](#), **reg. 2(5)**
- 

### Marginal Citations

- M1** 1972 c.68. Section 2(2) was amended by section 27(1)(a) of the Legislative Reform Act 2006 (2006 c.51) and section 3(3) of and Part 1 of the Schedule to the [European Union \(Amendment\) Act 2008 \(2008 c.7\)](#). Section 2(5) was amended by section 41(1) of and Part 1 of Schedule 6 to the [Northern Ireland Constitution Act 1973 \(1973 c.36\)](#).
- M2** S.I. 1972/1811.
- M3** S.I. 1999/2027.
- M4** 1968 c.67.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART 1

### General

#### Citation and commencement

- 1.—(1) These Regulations may be cited as the Human Medicines Regulations 2012.
- (2) These Regulations come into force on 14th August 2012.

#### Medicinal products

- 2.—(1) In these Regulations “medicinal product” means—
  - (a) any substance or combination of substances presented as having properties of preventing or treating disease in human beings; or
  - (b) any substance or combination of substances that may be used by or administered to human beings with a view to—
    - (i) restoring, correcting or modifying a physiological function by exerting a pharmacological, immunological or metabolic action, or
    - (ii) making a medical diagnosis.
- (2) These Regulations do not apply to—
  - (a) whole human blood; or
  - (b) any human blood component, other than plasma prepared by a method involving an industrial process.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C2** Reg. 2 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 34 paras. 57\(b\)](#), [64](#) (with [Sch. 32](#)))

#### Scope of these Regulations: special provisions

- 3.—(1) Regulation 17(1) (manufacturing of medicinal products: requirement for licence) shall not apply in circumstances where paragraph (4) applies.
- (2) Regulations 17(1) (manufacturing of medicinal products: requirement for licence) and 46 (requirement for authorisation) shall not apply in circumstances where paragraph (5) or (6) applies.
- (3) These Regulations do not apply where paragraph (7) applies.
- (4) This paragraph applies where a medicinal product is assembled by a registered nurse or a registered midwife if—
  - (a) the nurse or midwife is acting in the course of his or her profession; and
  - (b) the conditions in paragraphs (8) and (9) are met.
- (5) This paragraph applies where a medicinal product is manufactured or assembled by a doctor or dentist and the conditions in paragraphs (8) and (9) are met.
- (6) This paragraph applies where a herbal medicinal product is manufactured or assembled by a person (“A”) if—
  - (a) the manufacture or assembly takes place on premises occupied by A and from which A can exclude the public;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the product is for administration to a person (“B”) and A has been requested by or on behalf of B, and in B's presence, to use A's judgment as to the treatment required;
  - (c) the product does not contain a substance specified in Part 1 of Schedule 20;
  - (d) the product does not contain a substance listed in Part 2 of that Schedule, unless the product is sold or supplied—
    - (i) in or from containers or packages labelled to show a dose not exceeding the maximum dose or maximum daily dose specified in column 2 of that Part, or
    - (ii) in the case of a product for external use only, with a percentage of the substance in the product that does not exceed the percentage specified in column 3 of that Part; and
  - (e) the condition in paragraph (9) is met.
- (7) This paragraph applies where the product is a radionuclide that is in the form of a sealed source.
- (8) This condition is that the medicinal product is supplied—
- (a) to a patient in the course of the treatment of that patient; or
  - (b) in a case to which paragraph (5) applies, to a patient of another doctor or dentist who is a member of the same medical or dental practice.
- (9) This condition is that the medicinal product is not manufactured or, as the case may be, assembled—
- (a) on a large scale; or
  - (b) by an industrial process.
- (10) Chapter 1 of Part 13 (requirements for packaging and package leaflets relating to medicinal products) does not apply to a medicinal product that is sold or supplied in circumstances where paragraph (11) or (12) applies in relation to the product, except to the extent set out in paragraph (14), but the requirements of paragraph (13) shall apply.
- (11) This paragraph applies where a medicinal product is the result of a process of manufacture to which regulation 17(1) does not apply by virtue of paragraph (5) or (6).
- (12) This paragraph applies in the case of a medicinal product where—
- (a) the product is the result of a process of assembly of an authorised medicinal product;
  - (b) regulation 17(1) does not apply to the process of assembly by virtue of paragraph (4) or (5);
  - (c) the process of assembly results in a change in the presentation of the authorised medicinal product; and
  - (d) by reason of that change the product so assembled is not sold or supplied in accordance with the terms of—
    - (i) the marketing authorisation,
    - (ii) the certificate of registration,
    - (iii) the traditional herbal registration, or
    - (iv) the Article 126a authorisation,that relates to the authorised medicinal product.
- (13) The information specified in Part 1 of Schedule 26 must appear on the outer packaging, or, if there is no outer packaging, on the immediate packaging of a medicinal product that is sold or supplied in circumstances—
- (a) where paragraph (11) applies to the product, except in the case of a product manufactured in accordance with paragraph (6); or
  - (b) where paragraph (12) applies in relation to the product.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(14) Regulations 269 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: other persons) and 271 (offences: penalties) shall have effect in relation to paragraph (13) as if that paragraph were a requirement of Part 13.

(15) For the purposes of this regulation and regulation 4 (special provisions for pharmacies etc), a medicinal product is authorised if there is in force for the product—

- (a) a marketing authorisation;
- (b) a certificate of registration;
- (c) a traditional herbal registration; or
- (d) an Article 126a authorisation.

### **Special provisions for pharmacies etc**

4.—(1) Regulations 17(1) (manufacturing of medicinal products: requirement for licence) and 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not apply where any provision of section 10 of the Medicines Act 1968<sup>M5</sup> so provides.

(2) Chapter 1 of Part 13 (requirements for packaging and package leaflets relating to medicinal products) does not apply to a medicinal product that is sold or supplied in circumstances where paragraph (3) or (4) applies in relation to the product, except to the extent set out in paragraph (6), but the requirements of paragraph (5) shall apply.

(3) This paragraph applies in a case where a medicinal product is the result of a process of manufacture to which regulation 17(1) does not apply by virtue of any provision of section 10 of the Medicines Act 1968.

(4) This paragraph applies in the case of a medicinal product where—

- (a) the product is the result of a process of assembly of a medicinal product that is an authorised medicinal product within the meaning of regulation 3(15);
- (b) regulation 17(1) does not apply to the process of assembly by virtue of any provision of section 10 of the Medicines Act 1968;
- (c) the process of assembly results in a change in the presentation of the authorised medicinal product; and
- (d) by reason of that change the product so assembled is not sold or supplied in accordance with the terms of—
  - (i) the marketing authorisation,
  - (ii) the certificate of registration,
  - (iii) the traditional herbal registration, or
  - (iv) the Article 126a authorisation,

that relates to the authorised medicinal product.

(5) The information specified in Part 2 of Schedule 26 must appear on the outer packaging, or, if there is no outer packaging, on the immediate packaging of a medicinal product that is sold or supplied in circumstances where paragraph (3) or (4) applies in relation to the product.

(6) Regulations 269 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: other persons) and 271 (offences: penalties) shall have effect in relation to paragraph (5) as if that paragraph were a requirement of Part 13.

### Marginal Citations

**M5** Section 10(1) was amended by paragraph 10(a) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#), [paragraph 5\(a\)](#) of Schedule 3 to the Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001, and article 3 of [S.I. 1971/1445](#). Section 10(2) was repealed by paragraph 10(b) and (3)(b) was repealed by paragraph 10(c) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#). Section 10(4) was amended and section 10(5) and (6) inserted by article 3 of [S.I. 1971/1445](#). Section 10(6A) was repealed by paragraph 10(d) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#). Section 10(7) was inserted by article 3 of [S.I. 1971/1445](#), and amended by regulation 3 of [S.I. 1993/834](#). Section 10(7A) to (7C) was inserted by the Health Act 2006 section 26(1), and section 10(7A) was amended by paragraph 10(e) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#). Section 10(8) was inserted by [S.I. 1971/1445](#) article 3. Section 10(9) was inserted by paragraph 5(a) of Schedule 3 to the Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001.

### Classification of medicinal products

**5.—(1)** In these Regulations references to a medicinal product subject to general sale are to a product that is not a prescription only medicine or a pharmacy medicine but is—

- (a) a product that is covered by an authorisation of which it is a term that the product is to be available on general sale; or
  - (b) a product that—
    - (i) is covered by an EU marketing authorisation, and
    - (ii) is not classified in the authorisation as a prescription only medicine, and
    - (iii) the licensing authority has determined should be available on general sale.
- (2) In paragraphs (1)(a) and (5)(a) “authorisation” means—
- (a) a UK marketing authorisation;
  - (b) a certificate of registration;
  - (c) a traditional herbal registration; or
  - (d) an Article 126a authorisation.
- (3) In these Regulations references to a prescription only medicine are to any of the following—
- (a) a medicinal product that is covered by an authorisation of which it is a term that the product is to be available only on prescription;
  - (b) a medicinal product that—
    - (i) is covered by an EU marketing authorisation, and
    - (ii) is classified in the authorisation as a prescription only medicine;
  - (c) a medicinal product that is a prescription only medicine by virtue of Part 1 of Schedule 1; or
  - (d) a medicinal product that is the result of—
    - (i) the assembly, or
    - (ii) the reformulation (including the combining with other substances),of a medicinal product that is a prescription only medicine by virtue of sub-paragraph (a) or (b).
- (4) In paragraph (3)(a) “authorisation” means—
- (a) a UK marketing authorisation; or
  - (b) an Article 126a authorisation.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) In these Regulations references to a pharmacy medicine are to a medicinal product that is not a prescription only medicinal product or a medicinal product subject to general sale but is—
- (a) covered by an authorisation of which it is a term that the product is to be available only from a pharmacy;
  - (b) a product that—
    - (i) is covered by an EU marketing authorisation, and
    - (ii) is not classified in the authorisation as a prescription only medicine, other than a product to which paragraph (1)(b)(iii) applies;
  - (c) available only from a pharmacy by virtue of Part 2 of Schedule 1; or
  - (d) the result of—
    - (i) the assembly, or
    - (ii) the reformulation (including the combining with other substances),
 of a medicinal product that is a pharmacy medicine by virtue of sub-paragraph (a) or (b).

### **The licensing authority and the Ministers**

6.—(1) The licensing authority is responsible for the grant, renewal, variation, suspension and revocation of licences, authorisations, certificates and registrations under these Regulations.

(2) In these Regulations “the licensing authority” means either or both of the Ministers.

(3) Any function that—

- (a) is conferred on “the licensing authority” by these Regulations; or
- (b) is a function within paragraph (4),

may be exercised by either of the Ministers acting alone or by both of them acting jointly.

(4) The functions of a member State, or of the competent authority of a member State, under any of the relevant EU provisions are to be exercised by the licensing authority if—

- (a) they relate to medicinal products; and
- (b) they are to be exercised by, or by any authority of, the United Kingdom.

(5) Paragraph (4) does not apply to any function that is conferred by these Regulations on a person or body other than the licensing authority.

(6) In these Regulations “the Ministers” means—

- (a) the Secretary of State; and
- (b) the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety.

(7) Any function that is conferred on “the Ministers” by these Regulations is to be exercised by the Ministers acting jointly.

(8) Paragraph (7) does not apply where these Regulations provide for a function of the Ministers to be exercised by either of them acting alone or both of them acting jointly.

### **Advertisements relating to medicinal products**

7.—(1) In these regulations “advertisement”, in relation to a medicinal product, includes anything designed to promote the prescription, supply, sale or use of that product.

(2) This includes, in particular, the following activities—

- (a) door-to-door canvassing;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) visits by medical sales representatives to persons qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products;
  - (c) the supply of samples;
  - (d) the provision of inducements to prescribe or supply medicinal products by the gift, offer or promise of any benefit or bonus, whether in money or in kind, except where the intrinsic value of such inducements is minimal;
  - (e) the sponsorship of promotional meetings attended by persons qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products; and
  - (f) the sponsorship of scientific congresses attended by persons qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products, including the payment of their travelling and accommodation expenses in that connection.
- (3) But references in these Regulations to an “advertisement” do not include any of the following—
- (a) a medicinal product's package or package leaflet;
  - (b) reference material and announcements of a factual and informative nature, including—
    - (i) material relating to changes to a medicinal product's package or package leaflet,
    - (ii) adverse reaction warnings,
    - (iii) trade catalogues, and
    - (iv) price lists,provided that no product claim is made; or
  - (c) correspondence, which may be accompanied by material of a non-promotional nature, answering a specific question about a medicinal product.
  - (d) In this regulation “person qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products” has the meaning given in regulation 277(1) (interpretation: Part 14 advertising).

### General interpretation

8.—(1) In these Regulations (unless the context otherwise requires)—

[<sup>F1</sup>“the 2001 Directive” means [Directive 2001/83/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on the Community Code relating to medicinal products for human use;]

[<sup>F2</sup>“active substance” means any substance or mixture of substances intended to be used in the manufacture of a medicinal product and that, when used in its production, becomes an active ingredient of that product intended to exert a pharmacological, immunological or metabolic action with a view to restoring, correcting or modifying physiological functions or to make a medical diagnosis;]

“administer” means administer to a human being—

- (a) orally, by injection, or by introduction into the body in any other way; or
- (b) by external application (whether or not by direct application to the body),

and any reference in these Regulations to administering anything is to administering it in its existing state or after it has been dissolved or dispersed in, or diluted or mixed with, a substance used as a vehicle;

“advanced therapy medicinal product” means a medicinal product described in Article 2(1)(a) of Regulation ([EC](#)) [No 1394/2007](#);

“adverse reaction” means a response to a medicinal product that is noxious and unintended;

“advisory body” has the meaning given by regulation 12(1);

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“appropriate practitioner” means an appropriate practitioner within the meaning of regulation 214;

“Article 126a authorisation” means an authorisation granted by the licensing authority under Part 8 of these Regulations;

[<sup>F3</sup>“assemble”, in relation to a medicinal product or an active substance, includes the various processes of dividing up, packaging and presentation of the product or substance, and “assembly” has a corresponding meaning;]

“biological medicinal product” and “biological substance” have the meaning given in the third indent of paragraph 3.2.1.1.(b) of Annex I to the 2001 Directive;

“blood component” means any of the following—

- (a) red cells;
- (b) white cells;
- (c) platelets; and
- (d) plasma;

“the British Pharmacopoeia” means the British Pharmacopoeia referred to in regulation 317;

[<sup>F4</sup>“brokering” means all activities in relation to the sale or purchase of medicinal products, except for wholesale distribution, that do not include physical handling and that consist of negotiating independently and on behalf of another legal or natural person;]

“business” includes—

- (a) a professional practice;
- (b) any activity carried on by a body of persons whether corporate or unincorporated; and
- (c) the provision of services by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety, the Welsh Ministers or the Scottish Ministers as the case may be under the following enactments—
  - (i) the National Health Service Act 2006 <sup>M6</sup>,
  - (ii) the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 <sup>M7</sup> and the Health and Social Care (Reform) Act (Northern Ireland) 2009 <sup>M8</sup>,
  - (iii) the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 <sup>M9</sup>,
  - (iv) the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M10</sup>.

“certificate of registration” means a certificate of registration granted by the licensing authority under Part 6 of these Regulations;

“clinical management plan” means a written plan relating to the treatment of an individual patient and agreed by—

- (a) the patient;
- (b) the doctor or dentist who is a party to the plan; and
- (c) any supplementary prescriber who is to prescribe, give directions for administration or administer under the plan;

“clinical trial” has the meaning given by regulation 2 of the Clinical Trials Regulations;

“the Clinical Trials Directive” means Directive [2001/20/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on the approximation of the laws, regulations and administrative provisions of the Member States relating to the implementation of good clinical practice in the conduct of clinical trials on medicinal products for human use <sup>M11</sup>;



“the Clinical Trials Regulations” means the Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 <sup>M12</sup>;

“the Commission” has the meaning given by regulation 9(1);

“common name” in relation to a medicinal product, active substance or excipient means—

- (a) its international non-proprietary name recommended by the World Health Organisation; or
- (b) if such a name does not exist, its usual common name;

“community practitioner nurse prescriber” means a person—

- (a) who is a registered nurse or a registered midwife; and
- (b) against whose name is recorded in the professional register an annotation signifying that the person is qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances from the Nurse Prescribers' Formulary for Community Practitioners in the current edition of the British National Formulary;

“contravention” includes failure to comply (and “contravene” has a corresponding meaning);

“cosmetic” means any substance or preparation intended to be applied to the surfaces of the human body (including the epidermis, pilary system and hair, nails, lips and external genital organs), or the teeth or buccal mucosa, wholly or mainly for the purpose of—

- (a) perfuming them;
- (b) cleansing them;
- (c) protecting them;
- (d) caring for them or keeping them in condition;
- (e) modifying their appearance (for aesthetic purposes or otherwise); or
- (f) combating body odours or normal body perspiration;

“dentist” means a person registered in the dentists register under section 14 of the Dentists Act 1984 <sup>M13</sup>;

“Directive 2002/98/EC” means Directive 2002/98/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 January 2003 setting standards of quality and safety for the collection, testing, processing, storage and distribution of human blood and blood components and amending Directive 2001/83/EC <sup>M14</sup>;

“Directive 2004/23/EC” means Directive 2004/23/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 31 March 2004 on setting standards of quality and safety for the donation, procurement, testing, processing, preservation, storage and distribution of human tissues and cells <sup>M15</sup>;

“disease” includes any injury, ailment or adverse condition, whether of body or mind;

“doctor” means a registered medical practitioner;

“effervescent”, in relation to a tablet or capsule, means containing not less than 75 per cent, by weight of the tablet or capsule, of ingredients included wholly or mainly for the purpose of releasing carbon dioxide when the tablet or capsule is dissolved or dispersed in water;

“electronic communication” means a communication transmitted (whether from one person to another, from one device to another or from a person to a device or vice versa)—

- (a) by means of an electronic communications network within the meaning of section 32(1) of the Communications Act 2003 <sup>M16</sup>; or
- (b) by other means but while in an electronic form;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F5</sup>“electronic signature” has the meaning given within Article 3(10) of Regulation (EU) 910/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council on electronic identification and trust services for electronic transactions in the internal market;]

“the EMA” means the European Medicines Agency established by Regulation (EC) No 726/2004;

“enactment” includes primary and secondary legislation of the devolved administrations in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland;

“enforcement authority” means the Secretary of State, the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety or a person on whom a function of enforcing a provision of these Regulations has been conferred by virtue of regulations 323 or 324;

“EU marketing authorisation” means a marketing authorisation granted or renewed by the European Commission under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004;

“European Economic Area” or “EEA” means the European Economic Area created by the EEA agreement;

“the European Pharmacopoeia” means the European Pharmacopoeia published by the European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines;

[<sup>F6</sup>“excipient” means any constituent of a medicinal product other than the active substance and the packaging material;]

“exempt advanced therapy medicinal product” has the meaning given in regulation 171;

“expert advisory group” has the meaning given by regulation 14(1);

[<sup>F7</sup>“export” means export, or attempt to export, from the United Kingdom, whether by land, sea or air;]

[<sup>F8</sup>“external use” in relation to a medicinal product—

- (a) means its use by application to the skin, teeth, mucosa of the mouth, throat, nose, ear, eye, vagina or anal canal in circumstances where local action only is necessary and systemic absorption is unlikely to occur; but
- (b) does not include its use by means of a throat spray, nasal spray, nasal inhalation or teething preparation or by means of throat pastilles, throat lozenges, throat tablets or nasal drops;]

[<sup>F9</sup>“falsified medicinal product” means any medicinal product with a false representation of—

- (a) its identity, including its packaging and labelling, its name or its composition (other than any unintentional quality defect) as regards any of its ingredients including excipients and the strength of those ingredients;
- (b) its source, including its manufacturer, its country of manufacturing, its country of origin or its marketing authorisation holder; or
- (c) its history, including the records and documents relating to the distribution channels used;

“Fees Regulations” means [<sup>F10</sup>the Medicines (Products for Human Use) (Fees) Regulations 2016];]

“the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive” means Commission Directive 2003/94/EC of 8 October 2003 laying down the principles and guidelines of good manufacturing practice in respect of medicinal products for human use and investigational medicinal products for human use <sup>M17</sup>;

“the Health and Care Professions Council register” means the register established and maintained by the Health and Care Professions Council under article 5 of the Health and Social Work Professions Order 2001 <sup>M18</sup>;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“health care professional” means—

- (a) a doctor;
- (b) a dentist;
- (c) a pharmacist;
- (d) a pharmacy technician registered in Part 2 or 5 of the Register of pharmacists and pharmacy technicians established and maintained under article 19(2) of the Pharmacy Order 2010 <sup>M19</sup>;
- (e) a registered nurse;
- (f) a registered midwife;
- (g) a registered optometrist;
- (h) a registered osteopath as defined in section 41 of the Osteopaths Act 1993 <sup>M20</sup>;
- (i) a registered chiropractor as defined in section 43 of the Chiropractors Act 1994 <sup>M21</sup>;
- (j) a person registered as a member of a relevant profession within the meaning of article 2 and paragraph 1 of Schedule 3 to the Health and Social Work Professions Order 2001 <sup>M22</sup>, other than a social worker, in the Health and Care Professions Council register; or
- (k) a person registered in the dental care professionals register established and maintained under section 36B of the Dentists Act 1984 <sup>M23</sup> as a member of a profession complementary to dentistry specified by regulation 2 of the General Dental Council (Professions Complementary to Dentistry) Regulations 2006 <sup>M24</sup>;

“health centre” means a health centre maintained under—

- (a) section 2 or 3 of the National Health Service Act 2006 <sup>M25</sup>;
- (b) section 2 or 3 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 <sup>M26</sup>;
- (c) section 36(1)(b) of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M27</sup>; or
- (d) article 5 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 <sup>M28</sup>;

“herbal medicinal product” means a medicinal product whose only active ingredients are herbal substances or herbal preparations (or both);

“herbal preparation” means a preparation obtained by subjecting herbal substances to processes such as extraction, distillation, expression, fractionation, purification, concentration or fermentation, and includes a comminuted or powdered herbal substance, a tincture, an extract, an essential oil, an expressed juice or a processed exudate;

“herbal substance” means a plant or part of a plant, algae, fungi or lichen, or an unprocessed exudate of a plant, defined by the plant part used and the botanical name of the plant, either fresh or dried, but otherwise unprocessed;

“homoeopathic medicinal product” means a medicinal product prepared from homoeopathic stocks in accordance with a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described by—

- (a) the European Pharmacopoeia; or
- (b) in the absence of such a description in the European Pharmacopoeia, in any pharmacopoeia used officially in an EEA State;

“hospital” includes a clinic, nursing home or similar institution;

“immediate packaging” in relation to a medicinal product means the container or other form of packaging immediately in contact with the medicinal product;

[<sup>F11</sup>“import” means import, or attempt to import, into the United Kingdom, whether by land, sea or air;]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“inspector” means a person authorised in writing by an enforcement authority for the purposes of Part 16 (enforcement) (and references to “the enforcement authority”, in relation to an inspector, are to the enforcement authority by whom the inspector is so authorised);

“intermediate product” means a substance which—

- (a) has been manufactured for use in the manufacture of medicinal products; and
- (b) is intended for further processing by a manufacturer of such products;

“investigational medicinal product” has the meaning given in regulation 2(1) of the Clinical Trials Regulations;

“labelling” in relation to a container or package of medicinal products means affixing to or otherwise displaying on it a notice describing or otherwise relating to the contents (and “label” has a corresponding meaning);

“the licensing authority” has the meaning given by regulation 6(2);

“manufacture”, in relation to a medicinal product, includes any process carried out in the course of making the product, but does not include dissolving or dispersing the product in, or diluting or mixing it with, a substance used as a vehicle for the purpose of administering it;

“manufacturer's licence” has the meaning given by regulation 17(1);

“marketing authorisation” means—

- (a) a UK marketing authorisation; or
- (b) an EU marketing authorisation;

“medicinal product subject to general sale” has the meaning given in regulation 5(1) (classification of medicinal products);

“the Ministers” is to be construed in accordance with regulation 6(6) to (8);

“name” in relation to a medicinal product means—

- (a) where the product has a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration, the name—
  - (i) as approved by the licensing authority in granting the authorisation or registration, or
  - (ii) where that name has been varied since that approval, as so amended;
- (b) where the product has an EU marketing authorisation, the name—
  - (i) as approved by the European Commission in granting the authorisation, or
  - (ii) where that name has been varied since that approval, as so amended; and
- (c) where the product has an Article 126a authorisation, the name—
  - (i) as approved by the licensing authority to appear on the packaging and any package leaflet of the product under the authorisation, or
  - (ii) where that name has been varied since that approval, as so amended;

“the Narcotic Drugs Convention” means the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs signed by the United Kingdom on 30th March 1961 as amended by the Protocol Amending the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs signed by the United Kingdom on 25th March 1972;

“NHS primary dental services” means—

- (a) in relation to England, primary dental services under the National Health Service Act 2006;
- (b) in relation to Wales, primary dental services under the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) in relation to Scotland, dental services under the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 or personal dental services in connection with a pilot scheme under the National Health Service (Primary Care) Act 1997<sup>M29</sup>; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, general dental services under the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 or personal dental services in connection with a pilot scheme under the Health Services (Primary Care) (Northern Ireland) Order 1997<sup>M30</sup>;

“NHS primary medical services” means—

- (a) in relation to England, primary medical services under the National Health Service Act 2006;
- (b) in relation to Wales, primary medical services under the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
- (c) in relation to Scotland, primary medical services under the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, primary medical services under the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972;

“nurse independent prescriber” means a person who—

- (a) is a registered nurse or registered midwife; and
- (b) is noted in the professional register as qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a nurse independent prescriber or a nurse independent / supplementary prescriber;

“optometrist independent prescriber” means a person—

- (a) who is a registered optometrist; and
- (b) against whose name is recorded in the relevant register an annotation signifying that the person is qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as an optometrist independent prescriber;

“outer packaging” in relation to a medicinal product means any packaging into which the immediate packaging of the medicinal product is placed;

“package” in relation to a medicinal product, includes—

- (a) a container of the product;
- (b) any box, packet or other article in which one or more containers of the product are or are to be enclosed; and
- (c) any box, packet or other article in which a box, packet or other article mentioned in paragraph (b) or this paragraph is or is to be enclosed;

“package leaflet” in relation to a medicinal product, means a leaflet that accompanies the product and contains information for the user of the product;

“paediatric clinical trial” means a clinical trial conducted in whole or in part on persons under the age of 18 years;

“paediatric investigation plan” means a research and development programme with the purpose of generating data determining the conditions in which a medicinal product may be authorised to treat persons under the age of 18 years;

“the Paediatric Regulation” means Regulation (EC) No 1901/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 December 2006 on medicinal products for paediatric use and amending Regulation (EEC) No 1768/92, Directive 2001/20/EC, Directive 2001/83/EC and Regulation (EC) No 726/2004<sup>M31</sup>;

[<sup>F12c</sup>“paramedic independent prescriber” means a person—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) who is a registered paramedic; and
- (b) against whose name is recorded in the relevant register an annotation signifying that the person is qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a paramedic independent prescriber;]

“periodic safety update report” or “PSUR” has the meaning given in regulation 191 (obligation on holder to submit periodic safety update reports: general requirements);

“pharmacist” means—

- (a) in relation to Great Britain a person registered in Part 1 or 4 of the Register of pharmacists and pharmacy technicians maintained under article 19(2) of the Pharmacy Order 2010<sup>M32</sup>; and
- (b) in relation to Northern Ireland a person registered in the register of pharmaceutical chemists for Northern Ireland or the register of visiting pharmaceutical chemists from a relevant European State maintained under articles 6 and 9 of the Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976<sup>M33</sup>;

“pharmacist independent prescriber” means a person who—

- (a) is a pharmacist; and
- (b) is noted in the relevant register as qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a pharmacist independent prescriber;

“the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee” means the committee of the EMA established by Article 56(1)(aa) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004;

“pharmacovigilance system” means a system used by the holder of a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation, or by the licensing authority, to fulfil the tasks and responsibilities set out in Part 11 and designed to monitor the safety of authorised or registered medicinal products and detect any change to their risk-benefit balance;

“pharmacovigilance system master file” means a detailed description of the pharmacovigilance system used by the holder of a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation with respect to one or more authorised or registered medicinal products;

“pharmacy medicine” has the meaning given in regulation 5(5) (classification of medicinal products);

[<sup>F13</sup>“physiotherapist independent prescriber” means a person—

- (a) who is a registered physiotherapist; and
- (b) against whose name is recorded in the relevant register an annotation signifying that the person is qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a physiotherapist independent prescriber;

“podiatrist independent prescriber” means a person—

- (a) who is a registered podiatrist; and
- (b) against whose name is recorded in the relevant register an annotation signifying that the person is qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a podiatrist independent prescriber;]

“post-authorisation efficacy study” means any study relating to a medicinal product to which a marketing authorisation relates that is conducted with the aim of considering the efficacy of that product;

“post-authorisation safety study” means any study relating to a medicinal product to which a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation relates that is conducted with the aim of—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) identifying, characterising or quantifying a safety hazard;
  - (b) confirming the safety profile of the medicinal product; or
  - (c) measuring the effectiveness of risk management measures;
- “prescription only medicine” has the meaning given in regulation 5(3) (classification of medicinal products);
- “product information” in relation to a medicinal product means—
- (a) the summary of the product characteristics;
  - (b) the immediate and outer packaging; and
  - (c) the package leaflet;
- “the professional register” means the register maintained by the Nursing and Midwifery Council under article 5 of the Nursing and Midwifery Order 2001 <sup>M34</sup>;
- “the Psychotropic Substances Convention” means the Convention on Psychotropic Substances signed by the United Kingdom on 21st February 1971;
- “qualified person”, except in relation to the expression “appropriately qualified person”, means—
- (a) a person who satisfies the requirements specified in Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 7; or
  - (b) where an application for a licence is made before 30th April 2013, in so far as the application relates to activities in respect of traditional herbal medicinal products, a person who has been engaged in activities in respect of traditional herbal medicinal products equivalent to those in Part 3 of Schedule 7 on or before 30th April 2011 and continues to be so engaged at the time when the application is made;
- [<sup>F14</sup>“radiation emergency” has the meaning given by regulation 2(1) of the Radiation (Emergency Preparedness and Public Information) Regulations 2001;]
- “radionuclide” means a radioactive isotope;
- “radionuclide generator” means any system incorporating a fixed parent radionuclide from which is produced a daughter radionuclide which is to be removed by elution or by any other method and is to be used in a radiopharmaceutical;
- “radionuclide kit” means any preparation to be reconstituted or combined with radionuclides in the final radiopharmaceutical, usually prior to its administration;
- “radionuclide precursor” means any radionuclide produced for the radio-labelling of another substance prior to administration, other than a radionuclide that is incorporated in or produced from a generator or is included in a radiopharmaceutical;
- “radiopharmaceutical” means a medicinal product which, when ready for use, contains one or more radionuclides included for a medicinal purpose;
- [<sup>F15</sup>“registered dietitian” means a person registered in Part 4 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;]
- “registered midwife” means a person registered in the Midwives Part of the professional register;
- “registered nurse” means a person registered in the Nurses Part or the Specialist Community Public Health Nurses Part of the professional register;
- “registered optometrist” means a person whose name is entered in the register of optometrists maintained under section 7(a) of the Opticians Act 1989 <sup>M35</sup> or the register of visiting optometrists from relevant European States maintained under section 8B(1)(a) <sup>M36</sup> of that Act;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F16</sup>“registered paramedic” means a person who is registered in Part 8 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;]

“registered pharmacy” means—

- (a) in relation to Great Britain, premises entered in the register required to be kept under article 19 of the Pharmacy Order 2010 for the purposes of sections 74A and 74J of the Medicines Act 1968 <sup>M37</sup>; and
- (b) in relation to Northern Ireland, premises entered in the register required to be kept under section 75 <sup>M38</sup> of the Medicines Act 1968;

[<sup>F17</sup>“registered physiotherapist” means a person registered in Part 9 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;

“registered podiatrist” means a person registered in Part 2 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;

“registered radiographer” means a person registered in Part 11 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;]

“registrable homoeopathic medicinal product” means a homoeopathic medicinal product to which regulation 102 applies;

[<sup>F18</sup>“Regulation (EC) No 726/2004” means Regulation (EC) 726/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 31 March 2004 laying down Community procedures for the authorisation and supervision of medicinal products for human and veterinary use and establishing a European Medicines Agency;]

“Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007” means Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 13 November 2007 on advanced therapy medicinal products and amending Directive 2001/83/EC and Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 <sup>M39</sup>;

“Regulation (EC) No 1234/2008” means Commission Regulation (EC) No 1234/2008 of 24 November 2008 concerning the examination of variations to the terms of marketing authorisations for medicinal products for human use and veterinary medicinal products <sup>M40</sup>;

“the relevant EU provisions” means the provisions of legislation of the European Union relating to medicinal products for human use, except to the extent that any other enactment provides for any function in relation to any such provision to be exercised otherwise than by the licensing authority;

“relevant European State” means an EEA State or Switzerland;

“relevant medicinal product” has the meaning given by regulation 48;

“the relevant register” means—

- (a) in relation to a pharmacist—
  - (i) in Great Britain, Part 1 of the Register of pharmacists and pharmacy technicians maintained under article 19(2) of the Pharmacy Order 2010, or
  - (ii) in Northern Ireland, the register maintained in pursuance of articles 6 and 9 of the Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976;
- (b) in relation to a registered nurse or registered midwife, the professional register;
- (c) in relation to a registered optometrist, the register of optometrists maintained under section 7(a) of the Opticians Act 1989 or the register of visiting optometrists from relevant European States maintained under section 8B(1)(a) of that Act; and
- (d) in relation to a chiropodist or podiatrist, a physiotherapist<sup>F19</sup>, an orthoptist<sup>F20</sup>, a paramedic] or a radiographer, the part of the Health and Care Professions Council register relating to—



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) chiropodists and podiatrists,
- (ii) physiotherapists, <sup>F21</sup> ...
- (iii) radiographers<sup>F22</sup>, <sup>F23</sup> ...
- (iv) orthoptists<sup>F24</sup>, or
- (v) paramedics;]

“retail pharmacy business” means a business (other than a professional practice carried on by a doctor or dentist) which consists of or includes the retail sale of medicinal products that are not subject to general sale;

“risk management plan” means a detailed description of the risk management system;

“risk management system” means a set of pharmacovigilance activities and interventions designed to identify, characterise, prevent or minimise risks relating to a medicinal product, including an assessment of the effectiveness of those activities and interventions;

“serious adverse reaction” means an adverse reaction that—

- (a) results in a person's death;
- (b) threatens a person's life;
- (c) results in a person being hospitalised as an inpatient or prolongs a person's existing stay in hospital;
- (d) results in a person's persistent or significant disability or incapacity; or
- (e) results in a congenital anomaly or birth defect;

“special medicinal product” means a product within the meaning of regulation 167 or any equivalent legislation in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom;

“substance” means any matter regardless of its origins and includes—

- (a) human substances (such as human blood and human blood products);
- (b) animal substances (such as micro-organisms, whole animals, parts of organs, animal secretions, toxins, extracts and blood products);
- (c) vegetable substances (such as micro-organisms, plants, parts of plants, vegetable secretions and extracts);
- (d) chemical substances (such as elements, naturally occurring chemical materials and chemical products obtained by chemical change or synthesis); and
- (e) gases and vapours;

“the summary of the product characteristics” in relation to a medicinal product means—

- (a) where the product has a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration, the summary of the product characteristics—
  - (i) as approved by the licensing authority in granting the authorisation or registration, or
  - (ii) where the summary has been varied since that approval, as so amended; or
- (b) where the product has an EU marketing authorisation, the summary of the product characteristics—
  - (i) as approved by the European Commission in granting the authorisation, or
  - (ii) where the summary has been varied since that approval, as so amended;

“supplementary prescriber” means a person who is noted in the relevant register as qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a supplementary prescriber (or, in the case of a

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

registered nurse or registered midwife, as a nurse independent/supplementary prescriber) and is—

- (a) a pharmacist;
- (b) a registered midwife;
- (c) a registered nurse;
- (d) a chiropodist, podiatrist, physiotherapist<sup>[F25]</sup>, paramedic<sup>[F26]</sup> or radiographer; <sup>F26</sup>...
- (e) a registered optometrist; <sup>[F27]</sup> or
- (f) a registered dietitian;]

“suspected” in relation to an adverse reaction means that there is at least a reasonable possibility of there being a causal relationship between a medicinal product and an adverse event;

<sup>[F28]</sup>“therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber” means a person—

- (a) who is a registered radiographer; and
- (b) against whose name is recorded in the relevant register—
  - (i) an entitlement to use the title “therapeutic radiographer”; and
  - (ii) an annotation signifying that the person is qualified to order drugs, medicines and appliances as a therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber;]

“third country” means a country or territory outside the EEA:

“traditional herbal medicinal product” means a herbal medicinal product to which regulation 125 applies;

“traditional herbal registration” means a traditional herbal registration granted by the licensing authority under these Regulations;

“UK marketing authorisation” means a marketing authorisation granted by the licensing authority under—

- (a) Part 5 of these Regulations; or
- (b) Chapter 4 of Title III to the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition and decentralised procedure);

“vaccine” means an antigenic substance which consists wholly or partly of—

- (a) any micro-organisms, viruses or other organisms in any state;
- (b) any toxins of microbial origin which have been detoxified (toxoids); or
- (c) any extracts or derivatives of any micro-organisms or of any viruses,

being substances which, when administered to human beings, are used for the prevention of specific diseases;

“wholesale dealer’s licence” has the meaning given by regulation 18(1).

(2) In these Regulations, references to distribution of a product by way of wholesale dealing are to be construed in accordance with regulation <sup>[F29]</sup>18(4) and (5)].

(3) In these Regulations, references to selling by retail, or to retail sale, are references to selling a product to a person who buys it otherwise than for a purpose specified in regulation <sup>[F30]</sup>18(5)].

(4) In these Regulations, references to supplying anything in circumstances corresponding to retail sale are references to supplying it, otherwise than by way of sale, to a person who receives it otherwise than for a purpose specified in regulation <sup>[F31]</sup>18(5)];

(5) References in these Regulations to the terms of—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a marketing authorisation include the information supplied in relation to the authorisation in accordance with—
    - (i) regulation 50 and Schedule 8, and
    - (ii) (if appropriate) Schedule 10 (national homoeopathic products),
 as updated in accordance with regulation 57, as approved upon grant under regulation 49 and as varied under regulation 68;
  - (b) a certificate of registration include the information supplied in relation to the certificate in accordance with regulation 103, as approved upon grant under regulation 103 and as varied under regulation 110; and
  - (c) a traditional herbal registration include the information supplied in relation to the registration in accordance with regulation 128 and Schedule 12, as updated in accordance with regulation 129, as approved upon grant under regulation 127 and as varied under regulation 135.
- (6) References in these Regulations to a condition of—
- (a) a marketing authorisation is to a condition to which the authorisation is subject by virtue of regulation 59(1) or 60(1); and
  - (b) a certificate of registration is to a condition to which the certificate is subject by virtue of regulation 105(1).
- (7) For the purposes of these Regulations medicinal products are of the same description if—
- (a) they are manufactured to the same specification, and
  - (b) they are in the same pharmaceutical form.
- [<sup>F32</sup>(8) References in these Regulations to—
- (a) good manufacturing practice for active substances relate to the principles and guidelines for good manufacturing practice adopted by the European Commission under the third paragraph of Article 47 of the 2001 Directive;
  - (b) good distribution practice for active substances relate to the guidelines on good distribution practices for active substances adopted by the European Commission under the fourth paragraph of Article 47 of the 2001 Directive.]

### Textual Amendments

- F1** Words in reg. 8(1) substituted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(2)**
- F2** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(i)**
- F3** Words in reg. 8(1) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(ii)**
- F4** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(iii)**
- F5** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (22.7.2016) by [The Electronic Identification and Trust Services for Electronic Transactions Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/696\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 3 para. 8(1)**
- F6** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(iv)**
- F7** Words in reg. 8(1) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(v)**
- F8** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F9** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (20.8.2013) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1855), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(vi)**
- F10** Words in reg. 8(1) substituted (1.4.2016) by The Medicines (Products for Human Use) (Fees) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/190), regs. 1, **62**
- F11** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (20.8.2013) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1855), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(vii)**
- F12** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)**
- F13** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (20.8.2013) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1855), regs. 1(1), **3(a)(viii)**
- F14** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)**
- F15** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)**
- F16** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(c)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(c)**
- F17** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **3(2)(c)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **3(2)(c)**
- F18** Words in reg. 8(1) substituted (11.11.2013) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) (No. 2) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/2593), regs. 1(2), **2(3)**
- F19** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.10.2017) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/715), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)(i)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.R. 2017/241), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)(i)**
- F20** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(i)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(i)**
- F21** Word in reg. 8(1) omitted (1.10.2017) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/715), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)(ii)** and word in reg. 8(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.R. 2017/241), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)(ii)**
- F22** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.10.2017) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/715), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)(iii)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.R. 2017/241), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)(iii)**
- F23** Word in reg. 8(1) omitted (1.4.2018) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(ii)** and word in reg. 8(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(ii)**
- F24** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(iii)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(iii)**
- F25** Word in reg. 8(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **3(2)(e)** and word in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **3(2)(e)**
- F26** Word in reg. 8(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(i)** and word in reg. 8(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(i)**
- F27** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(ii)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **3(2)(d)(ii)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F28** Words in reg. 8(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)** and words in reg. 8(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)**
- F29** Words in reg. 8(2) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)** and words in reg. 8(2) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **3(2)**
- F30** Word in reg. 8(3) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **3(3)** and word in reg. 8(3) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **3(3)**
- F31** Word in reg. 8(4) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **3(4)** and word in reg. 8(4) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **3(4)**
- F32** Reg. 8(8) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C3** Reg. 8(1) applied (with modifications) by [The Medicines for Human Use \(Clinical Trials\) Regulations 2004 \(S.I. 2004/1031\)](#), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), **64** (with Sch. 32))

#### Marginal Citations

- M6** 2006 c.41.
- M7** [S.I. 1972/1265 \(N.I. 14\)](#).
- M8** 2009 c.1 (N.I.).
- M9** 2006 c.42.
- M10** 1978 c.29.
- M11** OJ No L 121, 1.5.2001, p.34. Directive 2001/20/EC was last amended by Regulation (EC) No 596/2009 (OJ No L 188, 18.7.2009, p.14).
- M12** [S.I. 2004/1031](#), to which there are amendments not relevant to these Regulations.
- M13** 1984 c.24. Section 14 was substituted by the [Dentists Act 1984 \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2011\)](#) articles 2 and 6 and further amended by the [European Qualifications \(Health and Social Care Professions\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3101\)](#), **regulations 109** and 111. Other amendments of the Dentists Act are not relevant to these Regulations.
- M14** OJ No L 33, 8.2.2003, p. 30.
- M15** OJ No L 102, 7.4.2004, p. 48.
- M16** 2003 c.21.
- M17** OJ L 91, 30.3.2004, p.25.
- M18** [S.I. 2002/254](#), as amended by [S.I. 2009/1182](#). There are other amendments that are not relevant.
- M19** [S.I. 2010/231](#).
- M20** 1993 c.21. Section 41 was amended by [S.I. 2007/3101](#) regulations 206 and 214.
- M21** 1994 c.17.
- M22** [S.I. 2002/254](#). Relevant amendments were made by [S.I. 2004/2033](#), [S.I. 2009/1182](#), [S.I. 2010/233](#) and the [Health and the Social Care Act 2012 \(2012 c.7\)](#).
- M23** 1984 c.24. Section 36B was inserted by [S.I. 2005/2011](#), **articles 2(1)** and 29.
- M24** [S.I. 2006/1440](#), **Schedule**.
- M25** 2006 c.41.
- M26** 2006 c.42.
- M27** 1978 c.29. Concurrent functions under section 36(1) were transferred to the National Waiting Times Board by article 4(2)(c) and (4) of [S.S.I. 2002/305](#).
- M28** [S.I. 1972/1265 \(N.I. 14\)](#), as amended by [S.I. 1984/1158 \(N.I. 8\)](#), [S.I. 1986/595 \(N.I. 4\)](#) and [2004/311 \(N.I. 2\)](#).
- M29** 1997 c.46.
- M30** [S.I. 1997/1177 \(N.I. 7\)](#).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- M31** OJ No L 378, 27.12.2006, p.1. Regulation (EC) No 1901/2006, as amended by Regulation (EC) No 1902/2006 (OJ No L 378, 27.12.2006, p.20) .
- M32** S.I. 2010/231.
- M33** S.I. 1976/1213 (N.I. 22), as amended by S.R. 2008 No. 192.
- M34** S.I. 2002/253, as amended by S.I. 2009/1182.
- M35** 1989 c.44; section 7(a) was amended by S.I. 2005/848, **articles 2** and 7(1).
- M36** Section 8B was inserted by S.I. 2007/3101, **regulations 178** and 180.
- M37** 1968 c.67. Sections 74A and 74J were inserted by article 68 of and paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to S.I. 2010/231.
- M38** Section 75 was amended by article 68 of and paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to S.I. 2010/231
- M39** OJ No L 324, 10.12.2007, p.121.
- M40** OJ No L 334, 12.12.2008, p.7.

## PART 2

### Administration

#### Commission on Human Medicines

**9.—(1)** There is to continue to be a body known as the Commission on Human Medicines (referred to in these Regulations as “the Commission”).

- (2) The Commission is to perform the functions conferred on it by these Regulations.
- (3) The Commission is to have at least eight members.
- (4) The members of the Commission are to be appointed by the Ministers.
- (5) The Ministers must appoint one of the members of the Commission to chair it.
- (6) The Ministers must consult the Scottish Ministers before exercising their functions under paragraphs (4) and (5).

#### Functions of the Commission

**10.—(1)** The Commission must give advice to either or both of the Ministers in relation to the matters listed in paragraph (2) if—

- (a) the Minister, or Ministers, request it; or
  - (b) the Commission considers it appropriate to give it.
- (2) The matters mentioned in paragraph (1) are matters—
- (a) relating to the execution of any duty imposed by these Regulations or the Clinical Trials Regulations;
  - (b) relating to the exercise of any power conferred by these Regulations or the Clinical Trials Regulations; or
  - (c) otherwise relating to medicinal products.
- (3) Without prejudice to paragraphs (1) and (2), or to any other functions conferred on the Commission by or under these Regulations, the Commission must—
- (a) give advice with respect to the safety, quality and efficacy of medicinal products; and
  - (b) promote the collection and investigation of information relating to adverse reactions, for the purposes of enabling such advice to be given.
- (4) The Commission must also advise the licensing authority if—

- (a) the licensing authority is required under Schedule 11 (advice and representations) or the Clinical Trials Regulations to consult the Commission about any matter arising under those provisions; or
- (b) the licensing authority consults the Commission about any matter arising under those provisions.

### **British Pharmacopoeia Commission**

**11.**—(1) There is to continue to be a committee called the British Pharmacopoeia Commission (referred to as “the BPC” in this regulation).

(2) The BPC is to continue to have the following functions—

- (a) the preparation under regulation 317(1) of editions of the British Pharmacopoeia;
- (b) the preparation of compendia under regulation 317(3);
- (c) the preparation under regulation 318 (which provides for the preparation and publication of lists of names to be used as headings to monographs in the British Pharmacopoeia) of lists of names; and
- (d) the preparation of any other document under regulation 319.

(3) The BPC is to have at least eight members.

(4) The members of the BPC are to be appointed by the Ministers.

(5) The Ministers must appoint one of the members of the BPC to chair it.

(6) The Ministers must consult the Scottish Ministers before exercising their functions under paragraphs (4) and (5).

(7) In this regulation, a reference to preparation includes revision or amendment.

### **Reporting to Ministers**

**12.**—(1) In this Part “advisory body” means—

- (a) the Commission, or
- (b) the British Pharmacopoeia Commission.

(2) Each advisory body must give a report to the Ministers each year about—

- (a) the performance of its functions; and
- (b) the performance of the functions of any expert advisory group appointed by it under regulation 14 (including any expert advisory group appointed jointly with the other advisory body).

(3) Each advisory body must give its report to the Ministers at the time specified by the Ministers.

(4) The Secretary of State must lay a copy of each report before Parliament.

### **Co-option of additional members of advisory bodies**

**13.**—(1) An advisory body may co-opt one or more additional members for the purposes of a meeting.

(2) A person co-opted as a member of an advisory body for the purposes of a meeting ceases to be a member at the end of the meeting.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### **Appointment of expert advisory groups**

**14.**—(1) An advisory body, or the advisory bodies acting jointly, may with the approval of the licensing authority appoint one or more sub-committees, to be known as expert advisory groups.

(2) The licensing authority may direct an advisory body to appoint an expert advisory group to advise on the matters specified in the direction.

(3) An expert advisory group may include, or consist of, persons who are not members of the advisory body or bodies which appointed the expert advisory group.

(4) The advisory body or bodies which appointed the expert advisory group must appoint a member of the group as its chair.

(5) The chair of an expert advisory group may co-opt additional members of the group for the purposes of a meeting.

(6) Before co-opting additional members under paragraph (5) the chair of the group must consult the chair of the advisory body or bodies which appointed the group.

(7) A person co-opted as a member of an expert advisory group for the purposes of a meeting ceases to be a member of the group at the end of the meeting.

### **Delegation of functions to expert advisory groups**

**15.**—(1) An advisory body may delegate any of its functions, other than the functions specified in paragraph (2), to an expert advisory group.

(2) The functions which may not be delegated are functions of providing advice to the licensing authority in any case where the licensing authority is required to consult the advisory body under—

- (a) Schedule 11 (advice and representations); and
- (b) the Clinical Trials Regulations.

(3) But an advisory body may arrange for an expert advisory group to provide advice to the advisory body in relation to the performance of a function referred to in paragraph (2).

### **Further provision about advisory bodies and expert advisory groups etc**

**16.** Schedule 2 (which makes further provision about advisory bodies and expert advisory groups, and provision about payment and expenses of expert committees appointed by the licensing authority) has effect.

## **PART 3**

### **[<sup>F33</sup>Manufacture and distribution of medicinal products and active substances**

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F33** Pt. 3 heading and Pt. 3 Ch. 1 inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4



## CHAPTER 1

### Interpretation

#### Interpretation

**A17.** In this Part “manufacture”, in relation to an active substance, includes any process carried out in the course of making the substance and the various processes of dividing up, packaging, and presentation of the active substance.]

## [<sup>F34</sup>CHAPTER 2]

### Manufacturing and wholesale dealing

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Pt. 3 Ch. 2 heading inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4

#### *Grant etc of licences*

#### Manufacturing of medicinal products

- 17.**—(1) A person may not except in accordance with a licence (a “manufacturer's licence”)—
- (a) manufacture, assemble or import from a state other than an EEA State any medicinal product; or
  - (b) possess a medicinal product for the purpose of any activity in sub-paragraph (a).
- (2) Paragraph (1) is subject to paragraphs (3) to (5).
- (3) Paragraph (1) applies in relation to an investigational medicinal product only—
- (a) if the product has a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration; and
  - (b) to the extent that the manufacture or assembly of the product is in accordance with the terms and conditions of that authorisation, certificate or registration.
- (4) In paragraph (3), “marketing authorisation” means—
- (a) a marketing authorisation issued by a competent authority in accordance with the 2001 Directive; or
  - (b) an EU marketing authorisation.
- (5) Paragraph (1) does not apply to a person who, in connection with the importation of a medicinal product from a state other than an EEA State—
- (a) provides facilities solely for transporting the product; or
  - (b) acting as an import agent, imports the medicinal product solely to the order of another person who holds a manufacturer's licence authorising the importation of the product.
- (6) Paragraph (1) does not apply to a person who imports a medicinal product for administration to himself or herself or to any other person who is a member of that person's household.

#### [<sup>F35</sup>Wholesale dealing in medicinal products

- 18.**—(1) A person may not except in accordance with a licence (a “wholesale dealer's licence”)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) distribute a medicinal product by way of wholesale dealing; or
  - (b) possess a medicinal product for the purpose of such distribution.
- (2) Paragraph (1)—
- (a) does not apply—
    - (i) to anything done in relation to a medicinal product by the holder of a manufacturer’s licence in respect of that product,
    - (ii) where the product concerned is an investigational medicinal product, or
    - (iii) if the product is a radiopharmaceutical in which the radionuclide is in the form of a sealed source; and
  - (b) is subject to regulation 19.
- (3) Distribution of a medicinal product by way of wholesale dealing, or possession for the purpose of such distribution, is not to be taken to be in accordance with a wholesale dealer’s licence unless the distribution is carried on, or as the case may be the product held, at premises located in the UK and specified in the licence.
- (4) In these Regulations a reference to distributing a product by way of wholesale dealing is a reference to—
- (a) selling or supplying it; or
  - (b) procuring or holding it or exporting it for the purposes of sale or supply,
- to a person who receives it for a purpose within paragraph (5).
- (5) Those purposes are—
- (a) selling or supplying the product; or
  - (b) administering it or causing it to be administered to one or more human beings,
- in the course of a business carried on by that person.
- (6) A wholesale dealer’s licence does not authorise the distribution of a medicinal product by way of wholesale dealing, or possession for the purpose of such distribution, unless a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in respect of the product but this—
- <sup>F36</sup>(a) . . . . .
  - (b) is subject to the exceptions in regulation 43(6).
- (7) In paragraph (6), “marketing authorisation” means—
- (a) a marketing authorisation issued by a competent authority of a member State in accordance with the 2001 Directive; or
  - (b) an EU marketing authorisation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F35** Reg. 18 substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 5

**F36** Reg. 18(6)(a) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and reg. 18(6)(a) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, 4

## Exemptions from requirement for wholesale dealer's licence

**19.**—(1) Regulation 18 does not apply to the sale or offer for sale of a medicinal product by way of wholesale dealing, or possession for the purpose of such sale or offer, where paragraph (2) applies and the person selling or offering the product for sale is—

- (a) the holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration, (an “authorisation”) which relates to the product, including a holder of an authorisation who manufactured or assembled the product; or
- (b) a person who is not the holder of an authorisation in relation to the product but manufactured or assembled the product to the order of a person who is the holder of an authorisation relating to the product.

(2) This paragraph applies if—

- (a) until the sale, the medicinal product has been kept on the premises of the person who manufactured or assembled the product (in this regulation referred to as “authorised premises”); and
- (b) those premises are premises authorised for use for manufacture or assembly by that person's manufacturer's licence.

(3) For the purposes of this regulation, a medicinal product is regarded as having been kept on authorised premises at a time when—

- (a) it was being moved from one set of authorised premises to another, or from one part of authorised premises to another part; or
- (b) it was being moved from authorised premises by way of delivery to a purchaser.

(4) Regulation 18 does not apply to a person who in connection with the importation of a medicinal product—

- (a) provides facilities solely for transporting the product; or
- (b) acting as an import agent, handles the product where the product is imported solely to the order of another person who intends to sell the product or offer it for sale by way of wholesale dealing or to distribute it in any other way.

<sup>F37</sup>(5) .....

### Textual Amendments

**F37** Reg. 19(5) omitted (20.8.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1855), regs. 1(1), 6

## Mixing of medicines

**20.**—(1) Regulation 17(1) (manufacturing of medicinal products) does not apply to the mixing of medicines by—

- (a) a nurse independent prescriber;
- (b) a pharmacist independent prescriber;
- (c) a supplementary prescriber, if the mixing of medicines forms part of the clinical management plan for an individual patient;

[<sup>F38</sup>(ca) physiotherapist independent prescriber;

(cb) podiatrist independent prescriber;]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [<sup>F39</sup>(cc) a therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber;]
- [<sup>F40</sup>(cd) a paramedic independent prescriber;]
- (d) a person acting in accordance with the written directions of a—
- (i) doctor,
  - (ii) dentist,
  - (iii) nurse independent prescriber, <sup>F41</sup>...
  - [<sup>F42</sup>(iv) pharmacist independent prescriber,
  - (v) physiotherapist independent prescriber, <sup>F43</sup>...
  - (vi) podiatrist independent prescriber; or]
  - [<sup>F44</sup>(vii) therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber; or]
  - [<sup>F45</sup>(viii) paramedic independent prescriber; or]
- (e) a person acting in accordance with the written directions of a supplementary prescriber, if the mixing of medicines forms part of the clinical management plan for an individual patient.
- (2) In this regulation “mixing of medicines” means the combining of two or more medicinal products together for the purposes of administering them to meet the needs of an individual patient.

#### Textual Amendments

- F38** Reg. 20(1)(ca)(cb) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **7(a)**
- F39** Reg. 20(1)(cc) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(a)** and reg. 20(1)(cc) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(a)**
- F40** Reg. 20(1)(cd) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **4(2)(a)** and reg. 20(1)(cd) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **4(2)(a)**
- F41** Word in reg. 20(1)(d)(iii) omitted (20.8.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **7(b)**
- F42** Reg. 20(1)(d)(iv)-(vi) substituted for reg. 20(1)(d)(iv) (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **7(c)**
- F43** Word in reg. 20(1)(d)(v) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)(i)** and word in reg. 20(1)(d)(v) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)(i)**
- F44** Reg. 20(1)(d)(vii) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)(ii)** and reg. 20(1)(d)(vii) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)(ii)**
- F45** Reg. 20(1)(d)(viii) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **4(2)(b)** and reg. 20(1)(d)(viii) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **4(2)(b)**

#### Application for manufacturer's or wholesale dealer's licence

- 21.—**(1) An application for a grant of a licence under this Part must—
- (a) be made to the licensing authority;

- (b) be made in the way and form specified in Schedule 3; and
- (c) contain or be accompanied by the information, documents, samples and other material specified in that Schedule.

(2) An application must indicate the descriptions of medicinal products in respect of which the licence is required, either by specifying the descriptions of medicinal products in question or by way of an appropriate general classification.

### **Factors relevant to determination of application for manufacturer's or wholesale dealer's licence**

22.—(1) In dealing with an application for a manufacturer's licence the licensing authority must in particular take into consideration—

- (a) the operations proposed to be carried out under the licence;
- (b) the premises in which those operations are to be carried out;
- (c) the equipment which is or will be available on those premises for carrying out those operations;
- (d) the qualifications of the persons under whose supervision the operations will be carried out; and
- (e) the arrangements made or to be made for securing the safekeeping of, and the maintenance of adequate records in respect of, medicinal products manufactured or assembled in pursuance of the licence.

(2) In dealing with an application for a wholesale dealer's licence the licensing authority must in particular take into consideration—

- (a) the premises on which medicinal products of the descriptions to which the application relates will be stored;
- (b) the equipment which is or will be available for storing medicinal products on those premises;
- (c) the equipment and facilities which are or will be available for distributing medicinal products from those premises; and
- (d) the arrangements made or to be made for securing the safekeeping of, and the maintenance of adequate records in respect of, medicinal products stored on or distributed from those premises.

### **Grant or refusal of licence**

23.—(1) Subject to the following provisions of these Regulations, on an application to the licensing authority for a licence under this Part the licensing authority may—

- (a) grant a licence containing such provisions as it considers appropriate; or
- (b) refuse to grant a licence if having regard to the provisions of these Regulations and any European Union obligation it considers it necessary or appropriate to do so.

(2) The licensing authority must grant or refuse an application for a licence under this Part within the period of 90 days beginning immediately after the day on which it receives the application.

(3) Paragraph (2) applies to an application only if the requirements of Schedule 3 have been met.

(4) If a notice under regulation 30 requires the applicant to provide the licensing authority with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (2).

(5) In paragraph (4), the “information period” means the period—

- (a) beginning with the day on which the notice is given, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) ending with the day on which the licensing authority receives the information or the applicant shows to the licensing authority's satisfaction that the applicant is unable to provide it.
- (6) The licensing authority must give the applicant a notice stating the reasons for its decision in any case where—
  - (a) the licensing authority refuses to grant an application for a licence; or
  - (b) the licensing authority grants a licence otherwise than in accordance with the application and the applicant requests a statement of its reasons.

### Standard provisions of licences

**24.—**(1) The standard provisions set out in Schedule 4 may be incorporated by the licensing authority in a licence under this Part granted on or after the date on which these Regulations come into force.

(2) The standard provisions may be incorporated in a licence with or without modifications and either generally or in relation to medicinal products of a particular class.

### Duration of licence

**25.** A licence granted under this Part remains in force until—

- (a) the licence is revoked by the licensing authority; or
- (b) the licence is surrendered by the holder.

### General power to suspend, revoke or vary licences

**26.—**(1) The licensing authority may in accordance with the procedure specified in regulation 27—

- (a) suspend a licence under this Part for such period as the authority thinks fit;
- (b) revoke a licence under this Part; or
- (c) vary the provisions of a licence under this Part.
- (2) The suspension or revocation of a licence may be—
  - (a) total;
  - (b) limited to medicinal products of one or more descriptions; or
  - (c) limited to medicinal products manufactured, assembled or stored on specified premises or a specified part of any premises.
- (3) The powers conferred by this regulation may not be exercised in relation to a manufacturer's licence or a wholesale dealer's licence except on one or more of the grounds specified in—
  - (a) paragraph (4) (in relation to either a manufacturer's licence or a wholesale dealer's licence);
  - (b) paragraph (5) (in relation to a manufacturer's licence); or
  - (c) paragraph (6) (in relation to a wholesale dealer's licence).
- (4) Those grounds are that—
  - (a) the information in the application as a result of which the licence was granted was false or incomplete in a material respect;
  - (b) a material change of circumstances has occurred in relation to any of the matters stated in the application;
  - (c) the holder of the licence has materially contravened a provision of it; or

- (d) the holder of the licence has without reasonable excuse failed to supply information to the licensing authority with respect to medicinal products of a description to which the licence relates when required to do so under regulation 30(2).
- (5) In relation to a manufacturer's licence, the powers conferred by this regulation may also be exercised on either or both of the following grounds—
  - (a) that the holder of the manufacturer's licence has manufactured or assembled medicinal products to the order of a person who holds a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration (an “authorisation”) and has habitually failed to comply with the provisions of that authorisation; or
  - (b) that the holder of the manufacturer's licence does not have appropriate facilities to carry out processes of manufacture or assembly authorised by the licence.
- (6) In relation to a wholesale dealer's licence, the powers conferred by this regulation may also be exercised on the grounds that the equipment and facilities available to the holder of the licence for storing or distributing medicinal products are inadequate to maintain the quality of medicinal products of one or more descriptions to which the licence relates.

#### **Procedure where licensing authority proposes to suspend, revoke or vary licence**

- 27.—(1) This regulation applies where—
- (a) the provisions of regulation 28 do not apply; and
  - (b) the licensing authority proposes to suspend, vary or revoke a licence under regulation 26.
- (2) The licensing authority must notify the licence holder in writing of—
- (a) its proposal;
  - (b) the reasons for it; and
  - (c) the date (which must be no earlier than 28 days from the notice given by the licensing authority) on which it is proposed that the suspension, revocation or variation should take effect.
- (3) The licence holder may before the date specified in the notice—
- (a) make written representations to the licensing authority with respect to the proposal; or
  - (b) notify the licensing authority that the holder wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations.
- (4) If the licence holder makes written representations in accordance with paragraph 3(a) the licensing authority must take those representations into account before making a decision in the matter.
- [<sup>F46</sup>(5) If the licence holder notifies the licensing authority that the holder wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations in accordance with paragraph (3) (b)—
- (a) Schedule 5 has effect; and
  - (b) the licence holder must pay a fee for a review upon oral representations in accordance with the Fees Regulations.]
- (6) If the licensing authority proceeds to suspend, revoke or vary a licence in accordance with the provisions of regulation 26 it must give a notice to the licence holder.
- (7) The notice must—
- (a) give particulars of the suspension, revocation or variation; and
  - (b) give reasons for the decision to suspend, revoke or vary the licence.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(8) Paragraphs (6) and (7) are without prejudice to any requirement of Schedule 5 as to notification.

#### Textual Amendments

**F46** Reg. 27(5) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 8

#### Suspension of licence in cases of urgency

**28.**—(1) Notwithstanding anything in the preceding provisions of this Part, where it appears to the licensing authority that in the interests of safety it is necessary to suspend a licence under this Part with immediate effect, the licensing authority may do so for a period not exceeding three months.

(2) This paragraph applies where—

- (a) a licence has been suspended under paragraph (1); and
- (b) it appears to the licensing authority that it is necessary to consider whether the licence should be further suspended, revoked or varied.

(3) Where paragraph (2) applies, the licensing authority must proceed as set out in regulation 27 (but this is subject to paragraphs (4) and (5)).

(4) Paragraph (5) applies where, in circumstances where paragraph (2) applies, the licensing authority proceeds as set out in regulation 27 and any proceedings under that regulation have not been finally disposed of before the end of the period for which the licence was suspended under paragraph (1) or further suspended under paragraph (5).

(5) If it appears to the licensing authority to be necessary in the interests of safety to do so, the authority may further suspend the licence for a period which (in the case of each further suspension) is not to exceed three months.

(6) In the event that any challenge against a decision under regulation 27 to suspend, vary or revoke the licence is made on an application to the High Court under regulation 322(4) paragraph (5) shall apply, but this is without prejudice to regulation 322(6)(a).

#### Variation of licence on the application of the holder

**29.**—(1) This regulation applies if the holder of a licence under this Part applies to the licensing authority for a variation of the licence.

(2) The application must—

- (a) be in writing;
- (b) specify the variation requested;
- (c) be signed by or on behalf of the applicant;
- (d) be accompanied by such information as may be required to enable the licensing authority to consider the application; and
- (e) be accompanied by the required fee (if any).

(3) The licensing authority must consider an application made in accordance with this regulation.

(4) If paragraph (5) applies, the licensing authority must vary the licence or refuse to vary it before the end of the period allowed for considering the application.

(5) This paragraph applies to a variation which would have the effect of altering—

- (a) the types of medicinal product in respect of which the licence was granted;



- (b) any operation carried out under the licence; or
  - (c) any premises, equipment or facilities in respect of which the licence was granted.
- (6) The period allowed for consideration of an application under this regulation is—
- (a) in a case where the licensing authority considers that it is necessary to inspect premises to which the licence relates, 90 days beginning with the day after the date when the licensing authority receives the application; and
  - (b) in any other case 30 days beginning with that day.
- (7) The licensing authority may give a notice to the applicant requiring the applicant to supply further information in connection with the application.
- (8) If a notice under paragraph (7) requires the applicant to provide the licensing authority with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (6).
- (9) In paragraph (8), the “information period” means the period—
- (a) beginning with the day on which the notice is given; and
  - (b) ending with the day on which the licensing authority receives the information or the applicant shows to the licensing authority's satisfaction that the applicant is unable to provide it.
- (10) Nothing in this regulation affects the powers conferred by regulation 26.

### **Provision of information**

**30.**—(1) Where an application has been made to the licensing authority for a licence under this Part, the licensing authority may, before determining the application, require the applicant to provide such information as the licensing authority thinks necessary, within the period specified by the licensing authority.

(2) The licensing authority may give a notice to the holder of a licence under this Part, requiring the holder to provide information of a kind specified in the notice within the period specified in the notice.

(3) A notice under paragraph (2) may not be given to the holder of a licence unless it appears to the licensing authority, or representations are made to the licensing authority by the Commission, an expert advisory group of the Commission, or an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority, that it is necessary for the licensing authority to consider whether the licence should be varied, suspended or revoked.

(4) A notice under paragraph (2) may specify information which the licensing authority, or the Commission, an expert advisory group of the Commission, or an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority, thinks necessary for considering whether the notice should be varied, suspended or revoked.

### *Miscellaneous and offences*

### **Certification of manufacturer's licence**

**31.**—(1) The licensing authority must issue a certificate in accordance with the following paragraphs of this regulation in relation to a manufacturer's licence relating to the manufacture or assembly of medicinal products if requested to do so by—

- (a) subject to paragraph (5), the holder of the licence;
- (b) a person who intends to export a medicinal product manufactured or assembled by the holder under the licence; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) the competent authorities of a country other than an EEA State into which a medicinal product manufactured or assembled under the licence is, or is proposed to be, imported.
- (2) The certificate must contain —
  - (a) information sufficient to identify the holder of the manufacturer's licence;
  - (b) details of the medicinal products that may be manufactured or assembled under the licence; and
  - (c) any other information concerning the holder, the product or the licence that the licensing authority thinks it appropriate to include, including information relating to clinical trials.
- (3) If—
  - (a) a request is made—
    - (i) under paragraph (1)(a) in relation to the export or the proposed export of a product, or
    - (ii) under paragraph (1)(b) or (c); and
  - (b) there is a marketing authorisation or a traditional herbal registration in force for any product to which the licence relates,

the certificate must be accompanied by the summary of the product characteristics relating to that product.

  - (4) The licensing authority may restrict the information provided under sub-paragraphs (2)(a) and (b) and paragraph (3) to information relating to the specific medicinal products mentioned in the request made under paragraph (1).
  - (5) A licence holder who makes a request under paragraph (1) must—
    - (a) produce to the licensing authority a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration in relation to any product to which the certificate is to relate; or
    - (b) make a declaration to the licensing authority explaining why no marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is available.
  - (6) The licensing authority must have regard to the prevailing administrative arrangements of the World Health Organisation when issuing the certificate.

### Sale and supply of starting materials

<sup>F47</sup>**32.** . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

**F47** Reg. 32 revoked (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **35**

### Offence concerning data for advanced therapy medicinal products

- 33.**—(1) A person who is, or immediately before its revocation or suspension was, the holder of a manufacturer's licence relating to an advanced therapy medicinal product is guilty of an offence if the person fails to—
- (a) keep the data referred to in Article 15(1) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 1394/2007](#) in accordance with the requirements of Article 15(4) of that Regulation; or
  - (b) transfer the data referred to in Article 15(1) to the licensing authority in the event of that person's bankruptcy or liquidation,

but this is subject to paragraphs (2) and (3).

(2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) does not apply if—

- (a) the person is bankrupt or in liquidation and has transferred the data to another person; or
- (b) the period for which the person was required to keep the data in accordance with the requirements of Article 15(4) mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) has expired.

(3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under paragraph (1) to prove that the person took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid commission of the offence.

(4) Where evidence is adduced that is sufficient to raise an issue with respect to the defence in paragraph (3), the court or jury must presume that the defence is satisfied unless the prosecution proves beyond reasonable doubt that it is not.

### **Offences: breach of regulations and false information and defence concerning starting materials**

**34.—**(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person contravenes the provisions of regulation 17(1) [<sup>F48</sup>or 18(1)].

(2) A person is guilty of an offence if the person knowingly gives false information in response to a notice under regulation 30(1).

(3) A person is guilty of an offence if, without reasonable excuse, the person fails to comply with a notice under regulation 30(2).

(4) The defence in paragraph (5) applies to a person who is charged under paragraph (1) with an offence of contravening regulation 17(1) (prohibition on manufacturing a medicinal product except in accordance with a licence) by virtue of a breach of regulation [<sup>F49</sup>37(3)] (requirement that active substances used as starting materials are manufactured or assembled in accordance with the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive).

(5) It is a defence for the person to show that the person could not, by taking all reasonable precautions and exercising all due diligence, have discovered that an active substance was not manufactured in accordance with regulation [<sup>F49</sup>37(3)].

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F48** Words in reg. 34(1) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **9(a)**

**F49** Word in reg. 34(4)(5) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **9(b)**

### **Penalties**

**35.—**(1) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 33(1) or regulation 34(1) or (2) is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 34(3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Conditions for holding a manufacturer's licence

### Conditions for manufacturer's licence

**36.**—(1) Regulations 37 to 41 apply to the holder of a manufacturer's licence (referred to in those regulations as “the licence holder”) and have effect as if they were provisions of the licence (but the provisions specified in paragraph (2) do not apply to the holder of a manufacturer's licence insofar as the licence relates to the manufacture or assembly of exempt advanced therapy medicinal products).

(2) Those provisions are regulations [<sup>F50</sup>37(3)], 38, 39(6)(a) and (8), 40 and 41.

(3) The requirements of Part 1 of Schedule 6 apply to the holder of a manufacturer's licence insofar as the licence relates to the manufacture or assembly of exempt advanced therapy medicinal products, and have effect as if they were provisions of the licence.

#### Textual Amendments

**F50** Word in reg. 36(2) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **10**

### [<sup>F51</sup>Manufacturing and assembly

**37.**—(1) This regulation applies in relation to a manufacturer's licence relating to the manufacture or assembly of medicinal products.

(2) The licence holder must comply with the principles and guidelines for good manufacturing practice set out in the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive.

(3) Unless paragraph (10) applies, the licence holder shall use active substances as starting materials only if—

- (a) those substances have been manufactured in accordance with good manufacturing practice for active substances; and
- (b) those substances have been distributed in accordance with the guidelines on good distribution practice for active substances.

(4) The licence holder shall verify—

- (a) that the manufacturer or distributor of an active substance used by the licence holder has complied with the requirements of good manufacturing practice and good distribution practice for active substances by means of audits performed—
  - (i) directly by the licence holder, or
  - (ii) by a person acting on behalf of the licence holder under a contract;
- (b) that unless the active substance is imported from a third country, any manufacturers, importers or distributors supplying active substances to the licence holder are registered with the competent authority of a member State in which they are established; and

(c) the authenticity and quality of the active substance.

(5) The licence holder shall ensure that—

- (a) excipients are suitable for use in a medicinal product by—
  - (i) ascertaining what the appropriate good manufacturing practice is, and
  - (ii) ensuring that the ascertained good manufacturing practice is applied;
- (b) the suitability of the excipient is ascertained on the basis of a formalised risk assessment as described in paragraph 5 of Article 47 of the 2001 Directive;

- (c) the assessment under sub-paragraph (b) takes account of—
- (i) the source,
  - (ii) requirements under other quality systems,
  - (iii) intended use of the excipients, and
  - (iv) previous instances of quality defects,
- (d) the authenticity and quality of any excipient used is verified; and
- (e) the measures taken under this paragraph are documented by the licence holder.
- (6) The licence holder must maintain such staff, premises and equipment as are necessary for the stages of manufacture and assembly of medicinal products undertaken by the licence holder in accordance with—
- (a) the manufacturer's licence; and
  - (b) the marketing authorisations, Article 126a authorisations, certificates of registration or traditional herbal registrations applying to the medicinal products.
- (7) The licence holder must not manufacture or assemble medicinal products, or classes of medicinal products, other than those specified in the licence.
- (8) The licence holder must not manufacture or assemble medicinal products on premises other than those specified in the licence as approved by the licensing authority for the purpose.
- (9) The licence holder must ensure that blood, or blood components, imported into the United Kingdom and used as a starting material or raw material in the manufacture of a medicinal product meet—
- (a) the standards of quality and safety specified in Commission Directive [2004/33/EC](#) of 22 March 2004 implementing Directive [2002/98/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards certain technical requirements for blood and blood components; or
  - (b) equivalent standards.
- (10) The requirements in paragraphs (3) to (5) do not apply in relation to the manufacture or assembly of special medicinal product to which regulation 167 (supply to fulfil special needs) applies.
- (11) The licence holder must immediately inform the competent authority of a member State and, where applicable, the marketing authorisation holder, of medicinal products which come within the scope of manufacturing authorisation which the licence holder—
- (a) knows or suspects; or
  - (b) has reasonable grounds for knowing or suspecting,
- to be falsified.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F51** Reg. 37 substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 11

#### Imports from states other than EEA States

**38.**—(1) This regulation applies in relation to a manufacturer's licence relating to the import of medicinal products.

(2) The licence holder must comply with the conditions set out in this regulation in relation to the import of medicinal products from a state other than an EEA State.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The licence holder must—
- (a) comply with the principles and guidelines on good manufacturing practice in the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive in so far as they are relevant to the import of medicinal products; and
  - (b) ensure that active substances have been used as starting materials in the manufacture of medicinal products, other than special medicinal products, imported from a state other than an EEA State only if those substances have been manufactured or assembled in accordance with [<sup>F52</sup>good manufacturing practice for active substances].

#### Textual Amendments

**F52** Words in reg. 38(3)(b) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 38(3)(b) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, 4

#### Further requirements for manufacturer's licence

- 39.**—(1) This regulation applies in relation to any manufacturer's licence.
- (2) The licence holder must maintain such staff, premises, equipment and facilities for the handling, control, storage and distribution of medicinal products under the licence as are appropriate in order to maintain the quality of the medicinal products.
- (3) The licence holder must ensure that any arrangements made for the handling, control, storage and distribution of medicinal products are adequate to maintain the quality of the products.
- (4) The licence holder must not handle, control, store or distribute medicinal products on any premises other than those specified in the licence as approved by the licensing authority for the purpose.
- (5) The licence holder must inform the licensing authority before making a material alteration to the premises or facilities used under the licence, or to the purposes for which those premises or facilities are used.
- (6) The licence holder must inform the licensing authority of any proposed change to—
- (a) the qualified person; and
  - (b) any person named in the licence as having responsibility for quality control.
- (7) For the purposes of enabling the licensing authority to determine whether there are grounds for suspending, revoking or varying the licence, the licence holder must permit a person authorised in writing by the licensing authority to do anything that the licensing authority could have done for the purposes of verifying a statement made in an application for a licence.
- (8) In distributing a medicinal product by way of wholesale dealing, the licence holder must comply with regulations 43(1), (2) and (5) and [<sup>F53</sup>44(5) and (6)] as if the licence holder were the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence.

#### Textual Amendments

**F53** Words in [reg. 39\(8\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, 5 and words in [reg. 39\(8\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, 5

### **Obligation to provide information relating to control methods**

40.—(1) This regulation applies in relation to any manufacturer's licence.

(2) The licensing authority may require the licence holder to provide the authority with proof of the control methods employed by the holder in relation to a medicinal product.

### **Requirements as to qualified persons**

41.—(1) This regulation applies in relation to any manufacturer's licence.

(2) The licence holder must ensure that there is at the disposal of the holder at all times at least one qualified person who is responsible for carrying out, in relation to medicinal products manufactured, assembled or imported under the licence, the duties specified in Part 3 of Schedule 7.

(3) If the licence holder satisfies the requirements of Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 7 the licence holder may act as a qualified person.

(4) A qualified person may be treated by the licence holder as satisfying the requirements of Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 7 if that person produces evidence that he or she—

- (a) is a member of a body specified in paragraph (5); and
- (b) is regarded by that body as satisfying those requirements.

(5) Those bodies are—

- (a) the Society of Biology;
- (b) the Royal Pharmaceutical Society;
- (c) the Pharmaceutical Society of Northern Ireland;
- (d) the Royal Society of Chemistry; and
- (e) such other body as may be specified by the licensing authority for the purpose of this paragraph.

(6) Where the qualified person changes, the licence holder must give the licensing authority advance notification of—

- (a) that change; and
- (b) the name, address and qualifications of the new qualified person.

(7) The licence holder must not permit any person to act as a qualified person other than the person named in the licence or another person notified to the licensing authority under paragraph (6).

(8) Paragraph (9) applies if the licensing authority thinks, after giving the licence holder and a person acting as a qualified person the opportunity to make representations (orally or in writing), that the person—

- (a) does not satisfy the requirements of Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 7 in relation to qualifications or experience;
- (b) does not satisfy paragraph (b) of the definition of “qualified person” in regulation 8; or
- (c) is failing to carry out the duties referred to in paragraph (2) adequately or at all.

(9) Where this paragraph applies, the licensing authority must notify the licence holder in writing that the person is not permitted to act as a qualified person.

(10) The licence holder must at all times provide and maintain such staff, premises and equipment as are necessary to enable the qualified person to carry out the duties referred to in paragraph (2).

(11) The licence holder is not obliged to meet the requirements of this regulation in relation to any activity under the licence which relates to special medicinal products or to products authorised on a temporary basis under regulation 174 (supply in response to spread of pathogenic agents etc).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Conditions for holding a wholesale dealer's licence

### Conditions for wholesale dealer's licence

**42.—**(1) Regulations 43 to 45 apply to the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence (referred to in those regulations as “the licence holder”) and have effect as if they were provisions of the licence (but the provisions specified in paragraph (2) do not apply to the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence insofar as the licence relates to exempt advanced therapy medicinal products).

[<sup>F54</sup>(2) Those provisions are regulations 43(2) and (8) and 44.]

(3) The requirements in Part 2 of Schedule 6 apply to the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence insofar as the licence relates to exempt advanced therapy medicinal products, and have effect as if they were provisions of the licence.

#### Textual Amendments

**F54** Reg. 42(2) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **13**

### Obligations of licence holder

**43.—**(1) The licence holder must comply with the guidelines on good distribution practice published by the European Commission in accordance with Article 84 of the 2001 Directive.

(2) The licence holder must ensure, within the limits of the holder's responsibility, the continued supply of medicinal products to pharmacies, and other persons who may lawfully sell medicinal products by retail or supply them in circumstances corresponding to retail sale, so that the needs of patients in the United Kingdom are met.

(3) The licence holder must provide and maintain such staff, premises, equipment and facilities for the handling, storage and distribution of medicinal products under the licence as are necessary—

- (a) to maintain the quality of the products; and
- (b) to ensure their proper distribution.

(4) The licence holder must inform the licensing authority of any proposed structural alteration to, or discontinuance of use of, premises to which the licence relates or which have otherwise been approved by the licensing authority.

(5) Subject to paragraph (6), the licence holder must not sell or supply a medicinal product, or offer it for sale or supply, unless—

- (a) there is a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration (an “authorisation”) in force in relation to the product; and
- (b) the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply, is in accordance with the authorisation.

(6) The restriction in paragraph (5) does not apply to—

- (a) the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply, of a special medicinal product;
- (b) the export to an EEA State, or supply for the purposes of such export, of a medicinal product which may be placed on the market in that State without a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration by virtue of legislation adopted by that State under Article 5(1) of the 2001 Directive; <sup>F55</sup>...
- (c) the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply, of an unauthorised medicinal product where the Secretary of State has temporarily authorised the distribution of the product under regulation 174; [<sup>F56</sup>or



(d) the wholesale distribution of medicinal products to a person in a third country].

(7) The licence holder must—

(a) keep documents relating to the sale or supply of medicinal products under the licence which may facilitate the withdrawal or recall from sale of medicinal products in accordance with paragraph (b);

(b) maintain an emergency plan to ensure effective implementation of the recall from the market of a medicinal product where recall is—

(i) ordered by the licensing authority or by the competent authority of any EEA State, or

(ii) carried out in co-operation with the manufacturer of, or the holder of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration for, the product; and

[<sup>F57</sup>(c) keep records in relation to the receipt, dispatch or brokering of medicinal products, of—

(i) the date of receipt,

(ii) the date of despatch,

(iii) the date of brokering,

(iv) the name of the medicinal product,

(v) the quantity of the product received, dispatched or brokered,

(vi) the name and address of the person from whom the products were received or to whom they are dispatched,

(vii) the batch number of medicinal products bearing safety features referred to in point (o) of Article 54 of the 2001 Directive.]

[<sup>F57</sup>(8) A licence holder (“L”) who imports from another EEA State a medicinal product in relation to which L is not the holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or a traditional herbal registration shall—

(a) notify the intention to import that product to the holder of the authorisation and—

(i) in the case of a product which has been granted a marketing authorisation under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004, to the EMA; or

(ii) in any other case, the licensing authority; and

(b) pay a fee to the EMA in accordance with Article 76(4) of the 2001 Directive or the licensing authority as the case may be, in accordance with the Fees Regulations,

but this paragraph does not apply in relation to the wholesale distribution of medicinal products to a person in a third country.]

(9) For the purposes of enabling the licensing authority to determine whether there are grounds for suspending, revoking or varying the licence, the licence holder must permit a person authorised in writing by the licensing authority, on production of identification, to carry out any inspection, or to take any samples or copies, which an inspector could carry out or take under Part 16 (enforcement).

[<sup>F58</sup>(10) The holder (“L”) must verify in accordance with paragraph (11) that any medicinal products received by L that are required by Article 54a of the Directive to bear safety features are not falsified but this paragraph does not apply in relation to the distribution of medicinal products received from a third country by a person to a person in a third country.

(11) Verification under this paragraph is carried out by checking the safety features on the outer packaging, in accordance with the requirements laid down in the delegated acts adopted under Article 54a(2) of the 2001 Directive.

(12) The licence holder must maintain a quality system setting out responsibilities, processes and risk management measures in relation to their activities.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(13) The licence holder must immediately inform the licensing authority and, where applicable, the marketing authorisation holder, of medicinal products which the licence holder receives or is offered which the licence holder—

- (a) knows or suspects; or
- (b) has reasonable grounds for knowing or suspecting,

to be falsified.

(14) Where the medicinal product is obtained through brokering, the licence holder must verify that the broker involved fulfils the requirements set out in regulation 45A(1)(b).

(15) In this regulation, “marketing authorisation” means—

- (a) a marketing authorisation issued by a competent authority in accordance with the 2001 Directive; or
- (b) an EU marketing authorisation.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F55** Word in reg. 43(6)(b) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(a)** and word in reg. 43(6)(b) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(a)**

**F56** Reg. 43(6)(d) and preceding word inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(b)** and reg. 43(6)(d) and preceding word inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(b)**

**F57** Reg. 43(7)(c)(8) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **14(a)**

**F58** Reg. 43(10)-(15) substituted for reg. 43(10) (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **14(b)**

**[<sup>F59</sup>Requirement for wholesale dealers to deal only with specified persons**

**44.—<sup>F60</sup>(1)** .....

(2) [<sup>F61</sup>The] licence holder must not obtain supplies of medicinal products from anyone except—

- (a) the holder of a manufacturer’s licence or wholesale dealer’s licence in relation to products of that description;
- (b) the person who holds an authorisation granted by another EEA State authorising the manufacture of products of the description or their distribution by way of wholesale dealing; [<sup>F62</sup>or]
- (c) where the medicinal product is directly received from a third country (“A”) for export to a third country (“B”), the supplier of the medicinal product in country A is a person who is authorised or entitled to supply such medicinal products in accordance with the legal and administrative provisions in [<sup>F63</sup>country A.]

<sup>F64</sup>(d) .....

(3) Where a medicinal product is obtained in accordance with paragraph <sup>F65</sup>... (2)(a) or (b), the licence holder must verify that—

- (a) the wholesale dealer who supplies the product complies with the principles and guidelines of good distribution practices; or

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the manufacturer or importer who supplies the product holds a manufacturing authorisation.

<sup>F66</sup>(4) .....

(5) [<sup>F67</sup>The] licence holder may distribute medicinal products by way of wholesale dealing only to—

- (a) the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence relating to those products;
- (b) the holder of an authorisation granted by the competent authority of another EEA State authorising the supply of those products by way of wholesale dealing;
- (c) a person who may lawfully sell those products by retail or may lawfully supply them in circumstances corresponding to retail sale;
- (d) a person who may lawfully administer those products; or
- (e) in relation to supply to persons in third countries, a person who is authorised or entitled to receive medicinal products for wholesale distribution or supply to the public in accordance with the applicable legal and administrative provisions of the third country concerned.

(6) Where a medicinal product is supplied to a person who is authorised or entitled to supply medicinal products to the public in accordance with paragraph <sup>F68</sup>... (5)(c) or (e), the licence holder must enclose with the product a document stating the—

- (a) date on which the supply took place;
- (b) name and pharmaceutical form of the product supplied;
- (c) quantity of product supplied;
- (d) name and address of the licence holder; and
- (e) batch number of the medicinal products bearing the safety features referred to in point (o) of Article 54 of the 2001 Directive.

(7) The licence holder must—

- (a) keep a record of information supplied in accordance with paragraph (6) for at least five years beginning immediately after the date on which the information is supplied; and
- (b) ensure that the record is available to the licensing authority for inspection.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F59** Reg. 44 substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **15**
- F60** Reg. 44(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)** and reg. 44(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)**
- F61** Word in reg. 44(2) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(a)** and word in reg. 44(2) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(a)**
- F62** Word in reg. 44(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(b)** and word in reg. 44(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(b)**
- F63** Words in reg. 44(2)(c) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(c)** and words in reg. 44(2)(c) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(c)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F64** Reg. 44(2)(d) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(d)** and reg. 44(2)(d) omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)(d)**
- F65** Word in reg. 44(3) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(4)** and word in reg. 44(3) omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(4)**
- F66** Reg. 44(4) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(5)** and reg. 44(4) omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(5)**
- F67** Word in reg. 44(5) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **6(6)** and word in reg. 44(5) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **6(6)**
- F68** Word in reg. 44(6) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **7** and word in reg. 44(6) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **7**

## Requirement as to responsible persons

**45.—(1)** The licence holder must ensure that there is available at all times at least one person (referred to in this regulation as the “responsible person”) who in the opinion of the licensing authority—

- (a) has knowledge of the activities to be carried out and of the procedures to be performed under the licence which is adequate to carry out the functions mentioned in paragraph (2); and
- (b) has adequate experience relating to those activities and procedures.

(2) Those functions are—

- (a) ensuring that the conditions under which the licence was granted have been, and are being, complied with; and
- (b) ensuring that the quality of medicinal products handled by the licence holder is being maintained in accordance with the requirements of the marketing authorisations, Article 126a authorisations, certificates of registration or traditional herbal registrations applicable to those products.

(3) The licence holder must notify the licensing authority of—

- (a) any change to the responsible person; and
- (b) the name, address, qualifications and experience of the responsible person.

(4) The licence holder must not permit any person to act as a responsible person other than the person named in the licence or another person notified to the licensing authority under paragraph (3).

(5) Paragraph (6) applies if, after giving the licence holder and a person acting as a responsible person the opportunity to make representations (orally or in writing), the licensing authority thinks that the person—

- (a) does not satisfy the requirements of paragraph (1) in relation to qualifications or experience; or
- (b) is failing to carry out the functions referred to in paragraph (2) adequately or at all.

(6) Where this paragraph applies, the licensing authority must notify the licence holder in writing that the person is not permitted to act as a responsible person.

## [<sup>F69</sup>CHAPTER 3

### Brokering

#### Textual Amendments

**F69** Pt. 3 Chs. 3, 4 inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 16

#### Brokering in medicinal products

- 45A.**—(1) A person may not broker a medicinal product unless—
- (a) that product is covered by an authorisation granted—
    - (i) under Regulation ([EC](#)) No 726/2004; or
    - (ii) by a competent authority of a member State; and
  - (b) that person—
    - (i) is validly registered as a broker with a competent authority of a member State,
    - (ii) except where the person is validly registered with the competent authority of another EEA state, has a permanent address in the United Kingdom, and
    - (iii) complies with the guidelines on good distribution practice published by the European Commission in accordance with Article 84 of the 2001 Directive insofar as those guidelines apply to brokers.
- (2) A person is not validly registered for the purpose of paragraph (1)(b) if—
- (a) the person’s permanent address is not entered into a register of brokers kept by a competent authority of a member State;
  - (b) the registration is suspended; or
  - (c) the person has notified the competent authority of a member State to remove that person from the register.
- (3) Paragraph (1)(b)(i) does not apply until 20th October 2013 in relation to a person who brokered any medicinal product before 20th August 2013.

#### Application for brokering registration

- 45B.**—(1) The licensing authority may not register a person as a broker unless paragraphs [<sup>F70</sup>(2)] to (7) are complied with.
- (2) An application for registration must be made containing—
- (a) the name of the person to be registered;
  - (b) the name under which that person is trading (if different to the name of that person);
  - (c) that person’s—
    - (i) permanent address in the United Kingdom,
    - (ii) e-mail address, and
    - (iii) telephone number;
  - (d) a statement of whether the medicinal products to be brokered are—
    - (i) prescription only medicines,
    - (ii) pharmacy medicines, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iii) medicines subject to general sale;
  - (e) an indication of the range of medicinal products to be brokered;
  - (f) evidence that that person can comply with regulations 45A(1)(b)(iii), 45E(3)(a) to (f) and 45F(1); and
  - (g) any fee payable in connection with the application in accordance with the Fees Regulations.
- (3) Where the address at which the emergency plan, documents or record necessary to comply with regulation 45E(3)(b) to (d) are kept is different from the address notified in accordance with sub-paragraph (2)(c)(i), the application must contain—
- (a) that address where the plan or records are to be kept;
  - (b) the name of a person who can provide access to that address for the purpose of regulation 325 (rights of entry); and
  - (c) that person’s—
    - (i) address,
    - (ii) e-mail address, and
    - (iii) telephone number.
- (4) Unless paragraph (6) applies, the application for registration must—
- (a) be in English; and
  - (b) be signed by the person seeking a brokering registration.
- (5) The pages of the application must be serially numbered.
- (6) Where the application is made on behalf of the person seeking a brokering registration by another person (“A”), the application must—
- (a) contain the name and address of A; and
  - (b) be signed by A.

#### Textual Amendments

**F70** Word in reg. 45B(1) inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and word in reg. 45B(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, 4

#### Procedure for determining an application for broker’s registration

**45C.—(1)** The licensing authority must grant or refuse an application for registration under regulation 45B within the period of 90 days beginning immediately after the day on which it receives the application.

(2) Paragraph (1) applies to an application only if the requirements of regulation 45B(2) have been met.

(3) Before determining an application for a brokering registration, the licensing authority may notify the applicant of a requirement to provide such information as the licensing authority thinks necessary, within the period specified by the licensing authority.

(4) If a notice under paragraph (3) requires the applicant to provide the licensing authority with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (1).

(5) In paragraph (4), the “information period” means the period—

- (a) beginning with the day on which the notice is given, and
- (b) ending with the day on which the licensing authority receives the information or the applicant shows to the licensing authority's satisfaction that the applicant is unable to provide it.

### **Grant or refusal of broker's registration**

**45D.**—(1) Subject to regulations 45E and 45F, on an application to the licensing authority for a brokering registration, the licensing authority must, if it considers it necessary and appropriate to do so—

- (a) register the applicant as a broker; or
- (b) refuse registration as a broker, having regard to—
  - (i) the provisions of these Regulations, and
  - (ii) any EU obligation.

(2) The licensing authority must give the applicant a notice stating the reasons for its decision in any case where the licensing authority—

- (a) refuses to grant an application for registration; or
- (b) grants registration otherwise than in accordance with the application and the applicant requests a statement of its reasons.

(3) The licensing authority must register the applicant or refuse registration under this Chapter within the period of 90 days beginning immediately after the day on which it receives the application.

(4) Where the licensing authority registers a person as a broker, the licensing authority must enter the following information into a publicly available register—

- (a) the person's name;
- (b) the name under which that person is trading (if different from the person's name);
- (c) the person's permanent address in the United Kingdom.

(5) The licensing authority must make the register of brokers publicly available.

### **Criteria of broker's registration**

**45E.**—(1) Registration of a broker is conditional on that broker—

- (a) complying with regulation 45A(1); and
- (b) satisfying—
  - (i) the criteria in paragraphs (3), (4) and (7), and
  - (ii) such other criteria as the licensing authority considers appropriate and notifies the broker of.

(2) The criteria referred to in paragraph (1)(b)(ii) may include (but are not limited to) the criteria specified in paragraphs (5) and (6).

(3) The broker must—

- (a) have a permanent address in the United Kingdom;
- (b) maintain an emergency plan to ensure effective implementation of the recall from the market of a medicinal product where recall is—
  - (i) ordered by the licensing authority or by the competent authority of any EEA State, or
  - (ii) carried out in co-operation with the manufacturer of, or the holder of the marketing authorisation, for the product;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) keep documents relating to the sale or supply of medicinal products under the licence which may facilitate the withdrawal or recall from sale of medicinal products in accordance with sub-paragraph (b);
  - (d) record in relation to the brokering of each medicinal product—
    - (i) the name of the medicinal product,
    - (ii) the quantity of the product brokered,
    - (iii) the batch number of the medicinal product bearing the safety features referred to in point (o) of Article 54 of the 2001 Directive,
    - (iv) the name and address of the—
      - (aa) supplier, or
      - (bb) consignee, and
    - (v) the date on which the sale or purchase of the product is brokered;
  - (e) maintain a quality system setting out responsibilities, processes and risk management measures in relation to their activities; and
  - (f) keep the documents or record required by sub-paragraph (c) or (d) available to the licensing authority for a period of five years; and
  - (g) comply with regulation 45F(1), (2) and (4).
- (4) Where the address at which the plan or records necessary to comply with paragraph (3)(b) to (d) are kept is different from the address notified in accordance with regulation 45B(2)(c)(i), the broker must—
- (a) ensure that the plan or records are kept at an address in the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) inform the licensing authority of the address at which the plan or records are kept.
- (5) The broker must provide such information as may be requested by the licensing authority concerning the type and quantity of medicinal products brokered within the period specified by the licensing authority.
- (6) The broker must take all reasonable precautions and exercise all due diligence to ensure that any information provided by that broker to the licensing authority in accordance with regulation 45F is not false or misleading.
- (7) For the purposes of enabling the licensing authority to determine whether there are grounds for suspending, revoking or varying the registration, the broker must permit a person authorised in writing by the licensing authority, on production of identification, to carry out any inspection, or to take any copies, which an inspector may carry out or take under regulations 325 (rights of entry) and 327 (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure).

### **Provision of information**

**45F.—(1)** A broker registered in the UK must immediately inform—

- (a) the licensing authority; and
- (b) where applicable, the marketing authorisation holder,

of medicinal products which the broker identifies as, suspects to be, or has reasonable grounds for knowing or suspecting to be, falsified.

(2) On or before the date specified in paragraph (3), a broker who is, or has applied to the licensing authority to become, a registered broker in the United Kingdom must submit a report to the licensing authority, which—



- (a) includes a declaration that the broker has in place an appropriate system to ensure compliance with regulations 45A, 45B and this regulation; and
  - (b) details the system which the broker has in place to ensure such compliance.
- (3) The date specified for the purposes of this paragraph is—
- (a) in relation to any application made before 31st March 2014, the date of the application; and
  - (b) in relation to each subsequent reporting year, 30th April following the end of that year.
- (4) The broker must without delay notify the licensing authority of any changes to the matters in respect of which evidence has been supplied in relation to paragraph (2) which might affect compliance with the requirements of this Chapter.
- (5) Any report or notification to the licensing authority under paragraph (2) or (4) must be accompanied by the appropriate fee in accordance with the Fees Regulations.
- (6) The licensing authority may give a notice to a registered broker requiring that broker to provide information of a kind specified in the notice within the period specified in the notice.
- (7) A notice under paragraph (6) may not be given to a registered broker unless it appears to the licensing authority that it is necessary for the licensing authority to consider whether the registration should be varied, suspended or revoked.
- (8) A notice under paragraph (6) may specify information which the licensing authority thinks necessary for considering whether the registration should be varied, suspended or revoked.
- (9) In paragraph (3)(b), “reporting year” means a period of twelve months ending on 31st March.

#### **Power to suspend or vary a broker’s registration or remove a broker from the register**

- 45G.**—(1) The licensing authority may in accordance with regulation 45H—
- (a) suspend a broker’s registration for such period as the authority thinks fit;
  - (b) vary a broker’s registration; or
  - (c) remove a person from the register.
- (2) The suspension of registration or removal from the register may be—
- (a) total;
  - (b) limited to medicinal products of one or more descriptions; or
  - (c) limited to medicinal products manufactured, assembled or stored on specified premises or a specified part of any premises.
- (3) The powers conferred by this regulation may not be exercised in relation to a broker’s registration except on one or more of the following grounds—
- (a) the information in the application as a result of which the broker’s registration was granted was false or incomplete in a material respect;
  - (b) a material change of circumstances has occurred in relation to any of the matters stated in the application;
  - (c) the broker has materially contravened a criterion of registration; or
  - (d) the broker has without reasonable excuse failed to supply information to the licensing authority with respect to medicinal products of a description to which the registration relates when required to do so under regulation 45F(6).

#### **Procedure where licensing authority proposes to suspend or vary a broker’s registration or remove a broker from the register**

- 45H.**—(1) This regulation applies where—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) regulation 45I does not apply; and
  - (b) the licensing authority proposes to exercise the power in regulation 45G(1).
- (2) The licensing authority must notify the broker in writing of—
- (a) its proposal;
  - (b) the reasons for it; and
  - (c) the date (which must be no earlier than 28 days from the notice given by the licensing authority) on which it is proposed that the suspension, variation or revocation should take effect.
- (3) The registered broker may before the date specified in the notice—
- (a) make written representations to the licensing authority with respect to the proposal; or
  - (b) notify the licensing authority that the broker wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations.
- (4) If the broker makes written representations in accordance with paragraph (3)(a) the licensing authority must take those representations into account before making a decision in the matter.
- (5) Schedule 5 has effect if the registered broker—
- (a) notifies the licensing authority of the proposal to review upon oral representations in accordance with paragraph (3)(b); and
  - (b) pays the fee for a review upon oral representations in accordance with the Fees Regulations.
- (6) If the licensing authority proceeds to suspend or vary a registration or remove a broker from the register in accordance with the provisions of regulation 45G it must give a notice to the broker.
- (7) A notice under paragraph (6) must—
- (a) give particulars of the suspension, variation or removal; and
  - (b) give reasons for the decision to suspend, vary or remove a broker from the register.
- (8) Paragraphs (6) and (7) are without prejudice to any requirement of Schedule 5 as to notification.

### **Suspension of a broker registration in cases of urgency**

**45I.**—(1) The licensing authority may immediately suspend a broker’s registration for a period not exceeding three months where it appears to the licensing authority that in the interests of safety it is appropriate to do so.

(2) This paragraph applies where—

- (a) a broker’s registration has been suspended under paragraph (1); and
- (b) it appears to the licensing authority that it is necessary to consider whether the broker’s registration should be—
  - (i) further suspended or varied, or
  - (ii) removed from the brokers’ register.

(3) Where paragraph (2) applies, the licensing authority must proceed as set out in regulation 45H (but this is subject to paragraph (4)).

(4) Paragraph (5) applies where, in circumstances where paragraph (2) applies, the licensing authority proceeds as set out in regulation 45H and any proceedings under that regulation have not been finally disposed of before the end of the period for which the registration was suspended under paragraph (1) or further suspended under paragraph (5).

(5) If it appears to the licensing authority to be necessary in the interests of safety to do so, the authority may further suspend the registration for a period which (in the case of each further suspension) is not to exceed three months.

(6) In the event that any challenge against a decision under regulation 45H to suspend, vary or revoke the registration is made on an application under regulation 322(4), paragraph (5) shall apply, but this is without prejudice to regulation 322(6)(a) (validity of decisions and proceedings).

### **Variation of a broker's registration on the application of the broker**

**45J.**—(1) This regulation applies if the person registered as a broker applies to the licensing authority for a variation of the registration.

(2) The application must—

- (a) be in writing;
- (b) specify the variation requested;
- (c) be signed by or on behalf of the applicant;
- (d) be accompanied by such information as may be required to enable the licensing authority to consider the application;
- (e) include the appropriate fee in accordance with the Fees Regulations.

(3) The licensing authority must vary a broker's registration or refuse to vary it within 30 days beginning with the day after the date when the licensing authority receives the application.

(4) The licensing authority may give a notice to the applicant requiring the applicant to supply further information in connection with the application within the period specified in the notice.

(5) If a notice under paragraph (4) requires the applicant to provide the licensing authority with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (3).

(6) In paragraph (5), the "information period" means the period—

- (a) beginning with the day on which notice is given; and
- (b) ending with the day on which the licensing authority receives the information or the applicant shows to the licensing authority's satisfaction that the applicant is unable to provide it.

(7) Nothing in this regulation affects the powers conferred by regulations 45G and 45I.

### **Offences: breach of regulations and false information**

**45K.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person—

- (a) contravenes regulation 45A(1); or
- (b) brokers a medicinal product otherwise than in accordance with the criteria under regulation 45E relating to that person's brokering registration.

(2) A person is guilty of an offence if the person knowingly gives false information in—

- (a) an application for a broker registration under regulation 45B(2);
- (b) a notification to the licensing authority under regulation 45F(4);
- (c) an application for a variation under regulation 45J(1); or
- (d) response to a notice under regulation 45C(3) or 45J(5).

(3) A person is guilty of an offence if, without reasonable excuse, the person fails to comply with a notice under regulation 45F(6) or 45J(5).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Penalties

- 45L.**—(1) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 45K(1) or (2) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 45K(3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.]

## [<sup>F69</sup>CHAPTER 4

### Importation, manufacture and distribution of active substances

#### Criteria for importation, manufacture or distribution of active substances

- 45M.**—(1) A person may not—
- (a) import;
  - (b) manufacture; or
  - (c) distribute,

an active substance unless that person is registered with the licensing authority in accordance with regulation 45N and the requirements in regulation 45O are met.

(2) Paragraph (1) applies in relation to an active substance which is to be used in an investigational medicinal product only—

- (a) if the product has a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration; and
- (b) to the extent that the manufacture of the active substance is in accordance with the terms and conditions of that authorisation, certificate or registration.

(3) Paragraph (1)(a) does not apply to a person who, in connection with the importation of an active substance from a state other than an EEA state—

- (a) provides facilities solely for transporting the active substance; or
- (b) acting as an import agent, imports the active substance solely to the order of another person who holds a certificate of good manufacturing practice issued by the licensing authority.

#### Registration in relation to active substances

**45N.**—(1) For registration in relation to active substances, the licensing authority must have received a valid registration form from the applicant for import, manufacture or, as the case may be, distribution of an active substance and—

- (a) 60 days have elapsed since receipt and the licensing authority have not notified the applicant that an inspection will be carried out; or
- (b) the licensing authority—
  - (i) notified the applicant within 60 days of receipt of a registration form that an inspection will be carried out; and
  - (ii) within 90 days of that inspection the licensing authority have issued that person with a certificate of good manufacturing practice or, as the case may be, of good distribution practice; and
- (c) that person has not instructed the licensing authority to end that person's registration.

(2) The person applying for registration under paragraph (1) must notify the licensing authority of any changes which have taken place as regards the information in the registration form—

- (a) immediately where such changes may have an impact on quality or safety of the active substances that are manufactured, imported or distributed;
- (b) in any other case, on each anniversary of the receipt of the application form by the licensing authority.

(3) For the purpose of paragraph (2), changes which are notified in accordance with that paragraph shall be treated as incorporated in the application form.

(4) Any notification to the licensing authority under paragraph (2) must be accompanied by the appropriate fee in accordance with the Fees Regulations.

(5) A registration form is valid for the purpose of paragraph (1) if—

- (a) it is provided to the licensing authority; and
- (b) is completed in the way and form specified in Schedule 7A.

(6) Paragraph (1) does not apply until 20th October 2013 in relation to a person who had, before 20th August 2013, commenced the activity for which the person would, apart from this provision, need to send a registration form to the licensing authority.

### **Requirements for registration as an importer, manufacturer or distributor of an active substance**

**450.**—(1) Where the Commission has adopted principles and guidelines of good manufacturing practice under the third paragraph of Article 47 of the 2001 Directive which applies to an active substance manufactured in the UK, the manufacturer must comply with good manufacturing practice in relation to that active substance.

(2) Where the Commission has adopted principles and guidelines of good distribution practice under the fourth paragraph of Article 47 of the 2001 Directive which applies to an active substance distributed in the United Kingdom, the distributor must comply with good distribution practice in relation to that active substance.

(3) Without prejudice to regulation 37(4) (manufacture and assembly in relation to active substances) and paragraph 9A of Schedule 8 (material to accompany an application for a UK marketing authorisation in relation to an active substance), where the Commission has adopted principles and guidelines of good manufacturing practice under the third paragraph of Article 47 of the 2001 Directive which applies to an active substance imported into the UK and where an active substance is imported from a third country—

- (a) the importer must comply with good manufacturing practice and good distribution practice in relation to the active substance;
- (b) the active substances must have been manufactured in accordance with standards which are at least equivalent to good manufacturing practice; and
- (c) the active substances must be accompanied by a written confirmation from the competent authority of the exporting third country of the following—
  - (i) the standards of manufacturing practice applicable to the plant manufacturing the exported active substance are at least equivalent to good manufacturing practice,
  - (ii) the manufacturing plant concerned is subject to regular, strict and transparent controls and to the effective enforcement of standards of manufacturing practice at least equivalent to good manufacturing practice, including repeated and unannounced inspections, so as to ensure a protection of public health at least equivalent to that in the Union, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iii) in the event of findings relating to non-compliance, information on such findings is supplied by the exporting third country to the Union without any delay.
- (4) Paragraph (3)(c) does not apply—
  - (a) where the country from where the active substance is exported is included in the list referred to in Article 111b of the 2001 Directive; or
  - (b) for a period not exceeding the validity of the certificate of good manufacturing practice, where—
    - (i) in relation to a plant where active substances are manufactured where the competent authority of a member State has found, upon inspection, that a plant complies with the principles and guidelines of good manufacturing practice, and
    - (ii) the licensing authority is of the opinion that it is necessary to waive the requirement to ensure availability of the active substance.
- (5) The criteria in this regulation apply regardless of whether an active substance is intended for export.

### Provision of information

- 45P.**—(1) In this regulation—
- “R” means a person who is, or has applied to the licensing authority to become, a registered importer, manufacturer or distributor of active substances;
  - “reporting year” means a period of twelve months ending on 31st March.
- (2) On or before the date specified in paragraph (3), R must submit a report to the licensing authority which—
- (a) includes a declaration that R has in place an appropriate system to ensure compliance with regulations 45N, 45O and this regulation; and
  - (b) details the system which R has in place to ensure such compliance.
- (3) The date specified for the purposes of this paragraph is—
- (a) in relation to any application made before 31st March 2014, the date of the application; and
  - (b) in relation to each subsequent reporting year, 30th April following the end of that year.
- (4) R must without delay notify the licensing authority of any changes to the matters in respect of which evidence has been supplied in relation to paragraph (2) which might affect compliance with the requirements of this Chapter.
- (5) Any report or notification to the licensing authority under paragraph (2) or (4) must be accompanied by the appropriate fee in accordance with the Fees Regulations.
- (6) The licensing authority may give a notice to R, requiring R to provide information of a kind specified in the notice within the period specified in the notice.
- (7) A notice under paragraph (6) may not be given to R unless it appears to the licensing authority that it is necessary for the licensing authority to consider whether the registration should be varied, suspended or removed from the active substance register.
- (8) A notice under paragraph (6) may specify information which the licensing authority thinks necessary for considering whether the registration should be varied, suspended or removed from the active substance register.

### Power to suspend or vary or remove an active substance registration

- 45Q.**—(1) The licensing authority may in accordance with regulation 45R—

- (a) suspend an active substance registration for such period as the authority thinks fit;
  - (b) vary an active substance registration; or
  - (c) remove a person from the active substance register.
- (2) The suspension of registration may be—
- (a) total;
  - (b) limited to active substances of one or more descriptions; or
  - (c) limited to active substances imported, manufactured, assembled or stored on specified premises or a specified part of any premises.
- (3) The powers conferred by this regulation may not be exercised in relation to an active substance registration except on one or more of the following grounds—
- (a) the information in the application as a result of which the active substance registration was granted was false or incomplete in a material respect;
  - (b) a material change of circumstances has occurred in relation to any of the matters stated in the application;
  - (c) the person with an active substance registration has materially contravened a criterion of registration; or
  - (d) the person with an active substance registration has without reasonable excuse failed to supply information to the licensing authority with respect to active substances of a description to which the registration relates when required to do so under regulation 45P(6).

**Procedure where licensing authority proposes to suspend or vary an active substance registration or remove a person from the active substance register**

- 45R.**—(1) This regulation applies where—
- (a) the provisions of regulation 45S do not apply; and
  - (b) the licensing authority proposes to exercise the power in regulation 45Q(1).
- (2) The licensing authority must notify the person with an active substance registration in writing of—
- (a) its proposal;
  - (b) the reasons for it; and
  - (c) the date (which must be no earlier than 28 days from the notice given by the licensing authority) on which it is proposed that the suspension, variation or removal from the active substance register should take effect.
- (3) The person with an active substance registration may before the date specified in the notice—
- (a) make written representations to the licensing authority with respect to the proposal; or
  - (b) notify the licensing authority that the person wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations.
- (4) If the person with an active substance registration makes written representations in accordance with sub-paragraph (3)(a) the licensing authority must take those representations into account before making a decision in the matter.
- (5) If the person with an active substance registration notifies the licensing authority that the person wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations in accordance with paragraph (3)(b)—
- (a) Schedule 5 has effect; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the person with an active substance registration must pay a fee for a review upon oral representations in accordance with the Fees Regulations.
- (6) If the licensing authority proceeds to suspend or vary a registration or remove a person from the active substance register in accordance with the provisions of regulation 45Q it must give a notice to that person.
- (7) The notice must—
  - (a) give particulars of the suspension, variation or removal; and
  - (b) give reasons for the decision to suspend, vary or remove a person's entry on the active substance register.
- (8) Paragraphs (6) and (7) are without prejudice to any requirement of Schedule 5 as to notification.

### **Suspension of an active substance registration in cases of urgency**

**45S.**—(1) The licensing authority may immediately suspend a person's active substance registration for a period not exceeding three months where it appears to the licensing authority that in the interests of safety it is appropriate to do so.

- (2) This paragraph applies where—
  - (a) a person's active substance registration has been suspended under paragraph (1); and
  - (b) it appears to the licensing authority that it is necessary to consider whether a person's active substance registration should be—
    - (i) further suspended or varied, or
    - (ii) removed from the active substance register.
- (3) Where paragraph (2) applies, the licensing authority must proceed as set out in regulation 45R (but this is subject to paragraph (4)).
- (4) Paragraph (5) applies where, in circumstances where paragraph (2) applies, the licensing authority proceeds as set out in regulation 45R and any proceedings under that regulation have not been finally disposed of before the end of the period for which the registration was suspended under paragraph (1) or further suspended under paragraph (5).
- (5) If it appears to the licensing authority to be necessary in the interests of safety to do so, the authority may further suspend the registration for a period which (in the case of each further suspension) is not to exceed three months.
- (6) In the event that any challenge against a decision under regulation 45R to suspend, vary or remove a person's active substance registration is made on an application to the High Court under regulation 322(4), paragraph (5) shall apply, but this is without prejudice to regulation 322(6)(a) (validity of decisions and proceedings).

### **Variation of an active substance registration on an application from the registered person**

**45T.**—(1) This regulation applies if a person with an active substance registration applies to the licensing authority for a variation of the registration.

- (2) The application must—
  - (a) be in writing;
  - (b) specify the variation requested;
  - (c) be signed by or on behalf of the applicant;
  - (d) be accompanied by such information as may be required to enable the licensing authority to consider the application; and



- (e) include the appropriate fee in accordance with the Fees Regulations.
- (3) The licensing authority must vary an active substance registration or refuse to vary it within 30 days beginning with the day after the date when the licensing authority receives the application.
- (4) The licensing authority may give a notice to the applicant requiring the applicant to supply further information in connection with the application within the period specified in the notice.
- (5) If a notice under paragraph (4) requires the applicant to provide the licensing authority with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (3).
- (6) In paragraph (5), the “information period” means the period—
  - (a) beginning with the day on which notice is given; and
  - (b) ending with the day on which the licensing authority receives the information or the applicant shows to the licensing authority’s satisfaction that the applicant is unable to provide it.
- (7) Nothing in this regulation affects the powers conferred by regulations 45Q and 45S.

#### **Offences: breach of regulations and false information**

- 45U.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person imports, manufactures or distributes an active substance in breach of regulation 45M(1).
- (2) A person is guilty of an offence if the person knowingly gives false information in—
    - (a) a registration form received by the licensing authority under regulation 45N(1);
    - (b) a notification to the licensing authority under regulation 45N(2) or 45P(4);
    - (c) an application for a variation under regulation 45T(2); or
    - (d) response to a notice under regulation 45T(4).
  - (3) A person is guilty of an offence if, without reasonable excuse, the person fails to comply with a notice under regulation 45P(6) or 45T(4).

#### **Penalties**

- 45V.**—(1) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 45U(1) or (2) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 45U(3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.]

## **PART 4**

### **Requirement for authorisation**

#### **Requirement for authorisation**

- 46.**—(1) A person may not sell or supply, or offer to sell or supply, an unauthorised medicinal product.
- (2) A person may not sell or supply, or offer to sell or supply, a medicinal product otherwise than in accordance with the terms of—
  - (a) a marketing authorisation;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a certificate of registration;
  - (c) a traditional herbal registration; or
  - (d) an Article 126a authorisation.
- (3) A person may not possess an unauthorised medicinal product if the person knows or has reasonable cause to believe that the product is intended to be sold or supplied to another person within the European Economic Area.
- (4) A person may not in the circumstances mentioned in paragraph (5)—
- (a) manufacture or assemble a medicinal product; or
  - (b) procure the sale, supply, manufacture or assembly of a medicinal product.
- (5) Those circumstances are that the person knows or has reasonable cause to believe that the medicinal product has been or is intended to be sold or supplied contrary to paragraph (1).
- (6) For the purposes of this regulation a medicinal product is unauthorised if none of the following is in force for the product—
- (a) a marketing authorisation;
  - (b) a certificate of registration;
  - (c) a traditional herbal registration; or
  - (d) an Article 126a authorisation.
- (7) This regulation is subject to—
- (a) Part 10 (exceptions to requirement for marketing authorisation etc); and
  - (b) Article 83 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 (authorisation of placing on the market of medicinal product for compassionate reasons).
- (8) A medicinal product is not unauthorised for the purposes of this regulation if—
- (a) it is sold or supplied, or offered for sale or supply, for export to an EEA State; and
  - (b) the product may lawfully be sold or supplied in that state by virtue of legislation adopted by that state in compliance with the 2001 Directive.
- (9) Paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply to the sale, supply, or offer for sale or supply, of a medicinal product to a person outside the European Economic Area.
- (10) Paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply to the sale, supply, or offer for sale or supply, of an investigational medicinal product to a person specified in regulation 13(1) of the Clinical Trials Regulations for the purposes of administering that product in a clinical trial, provided that the conditions specified in regulation 13(2) of those Regulations are satisfied.
- (11) Paragraph (3) does not apply to possession of an investigational medicinal product by a person who knows or has reasonable cause to believe—
- (a) that the investigational medicinal product is intended to be sold or supplied within the European Economic Area; and
  - (b) that paragraph (10) will apply to the sale or supply.

### **Breach of requirement**

- 47.—(1) A person who breaches regulation 46 is guilty of an offence.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment not exceeding two years or to both.

(3) It is to be presumed for the purposes of regulation 46(3) that, if a person (“P”) knows or has reasonable cause to believe that a medicinal product is intended to be sold or supplied to another person, P knows or has reasonable cause to believe that the other person is within the European Economic Area.

(4) Paragraph (3) does not apply if P proves that P did not know or have reasonable cause to believe that the person was within the European Economic Area.

(5) Where evidence is adduced that is sufficient to raise an issue with respect to the defence in paragraph (4), the court or jury must assume that the defence is satisfied unless the prosecution proves beyond reasonable doubt that it is not.

(6) Paragraph (7) applies if the holder of a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation is charged with an offence under this regulation in respect of anything that—

- (a) has been manufactured or assembled to the holder's order by another person; and
- (b) has been so manufactured or assembled as not to comply with the terms of the authorisation, certificate or registration.

(7) Where this paragraph applies, it is a defence for the holder to prove that—

- (a) the holder communicated the terms of the authorisation, certificate or registration to the other person; and
- (b) the holder did not know and could not by the exercise of reasonable care have known that those terms had not been complied with.

## PART 5

### Marketing authorisations

#### Application of this Part

**48.**—(1) This Part applies to relevant medicinal products.

(2) In this Part—

“generic medicinal product” has the meaning given in Article 10(2)(b) of the 2001 Directive;

[<sup>F71</sup>“parallel import licence” means a licence that—

- (a) is granted by the licensing authority in compliance with the rules of European Union Law relating to parallel imports; and
- (b) authorises the holder to place on the market a medicinal product imported into the United Kingdom from another EEA State;]

“relevant medicinal product” means a medicinal product that is not—

- (a) a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product; or
- (b) a traditional herbal medicinal product; and

“reference medicinal product” has the meaning given in Article 10(2)(a) of the 2001 Directive.

#### Textual Amendments

**F71** Words in [reg. 48\(2\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), [regs. 1, 3](#) and words in [reg. 48\(2\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 3](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Application for UK marketing authorisation

#### Application for grant of UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F72</sup>or parallel import licence]

49.—<sup>F73</sup>(1) The licensing authority may grant—

- (a) subject to regulation 58, a UK marketing authorisation; or
- (b) a parallel import licence,

for a relevant medicinal product in response to an application made in accordance with this Part.]

(2) A marketing authorisation [<sup>F74</sup>or parallel import licence] granted under paragraph (1) shall contain terms approved by the licensing authority.

(3) The applicant must be established in the European Union.

(4) The application must be—

- (a) made in writing;
- (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
- (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(5) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (4)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(6) The application and any accompanying material must be in English.

(7) The application must include a statement indicating whether the product to which the application relates should be available—

- (a) only on prescription;
- (b) only from a pharmacy; or
- (c) on general sale.

(8) The application must include a statement indicating—

- (a) whether any terms of the authorisation are proposed relating to the method of sale or supply of the product (including, in particular, any proposed restrictions affecting the circumstances of the use or promotion of the product); and
- (b) if so, what terms are proposed.

#### Textual Amendments

**F72** Words in reg. 49 heading inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 49 heading inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(a)

**F73** Reg. 49(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 5 and reg. 49(1) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 5

**F74** Words in reg. 49(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 49(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(b)

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Accompanying material

**50.—(1)** An applicant for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation for a relevant medicinal product must provide the material specified in Schedule 8 in relation to the product.

<sup>F75</sup>(1A) An applicant for the grant of a parallel import licence for a relevant medicinal product must provide the material specified in Schedule 8A in relation to the product.]

(2) An applicant for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F76</sup>or parallel import licence] for a radionuclide generator must, in addition, provide—

- (a) a general description of the system together with a detailed description of the components of the system which may affect the composition or quality of the daughter nucleid preparation; and
- (b) qualitative and quantitative particulars of the eluate or the sublimate.

(3) The applicant must also, if requested by the licensing authority to do so, provide the licensing authority with material or information that the licensing authority reasonably considers necessary for dealing with the application.

(4) If any of the medicinal products to which the application [<sup>F77</sup>for a UK marketing authorisation] relates is liable to be imported from a country other than an EEA State, the material or information referred to in paragraph (3) may include an undertaking from the manufacturer of the product to comply with the matters set out in Schedule 9.

(5) Material that is submitted under this regulation [<sup>F78</sup>for the purposes of a UK marketing authorisation] must be submitted in accordance with the applicable provisions of Annex I to the 2001 Directive.

(6) [<sup>F79</sup>Unless the application is for a parallel import licence this] regulation is subject to—

- (a) regulation 51 (applications relating to generic medicinal products);
- (b) regulation 52 (applications relating to certain medicinal products that do not qualify as generic etc);
- (c) regulation 53 (applications relating to certain biological medicinal products);
- (d) regulation 54 (applications relating to products in well-established medicinal use);
- (e) regulation 55 (applications relating to new combinations of active substances);
- (f) regulation 56 (applications containing information supplied in relation to another medicinal product with consent); and
- (g) Schedule 10 (applications relating to national homoeopathic products).

### Textual Amendments

- F75** Reg. 50(1A) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)** and reg. 50(1A) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **6(2)**
- F76** Words in reg. 50(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **4** and words in reg. 50(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(c)**
- F77** Words in reg. 50(4) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **6(3)** and words in reg. 50(4) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **6(3)**
- F78** Words in reg. 50(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **6(4)** and words in reg. 50(5) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **6(4)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F79** Words in [reg. 50\(6\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), [regs. 1, 6\(5\)](#) and words in [reg. 50\(6\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 6\(5\)](#)

### Applications relating to generic medicinal products

**51.**—(1) An applicant for a UK marketing authorisation for a relevant medicinal product that is a generic medicinal product may provide information in relation to the application in accordance with Article 10(1), (5) and (6) of the 2001 Directive.

(2) If the licensing authority grants a UK marketing authorisation for the generic medicinal product in accordance with paragraph (1), it is a term of the authorisation that the product must not be sold or supplied, or offered for sale or supply, in the United Kingdom before the time at which it may be placed on the market in accordance with—

- (a) Article 10(1) of the 2001 Directive; or
- (b) in a case where the application for the marketing authorisation for the reference medicinal product referred to in the application was submitted on or before 30th October 2005, Article 10(1) of the 2001 Directive as it stood before it was amended by Article 1(8) of Directive [2004/27/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 31 March 2004 amending the 2001 Directive <sup>M41</sup> (“Directive [2004/27/EC](#)”), in accordance with Article 2 of Directive [2004/27/EC](#) .

#### Marginal Citations

**M41** OJ No L 136, 30.4.2004, p. 34.

### Applications relating to certain medicinal products that do not qualify as generic etc

**52.**—(1) This regulation applies where—

- (a) an application is made for a UK marketing authorisation in respect of a product by reference to another medicinal product as reference medicinal product; and
- (b) one or more of the circumstances listed in Article 10(3) of the 2001 Directive applies in respect of the application.

(2) The applicant must provide information in accordance with Article 10(3) and (6) of the 2001 Directive.

(3) Regulation 51(2) shall apply to the application as it applies in relation to an application made in accordance with regulation 51(1).

### Applications relating to similar biological medicinal products

**53.**—(1) This regulation applies if an applicant for a UK marketing authorisation for a biological medicinal product is not able to show that it meets a condition for its being a generic version of a similar medicinal product because of any of the reasons described in Article 10(4) of the 2001 Directive.

(2) The applicant must provide information in accordance with Article 10(4) and (6) of the 2001 Directive.

(3) Regulation 51(2) shall apply to the application as it applies in relation to an application made in accordance with regulation 51(1).

### **Applications relating to products in well-established medicinal use**

**54.**—(1) This regulation applies if an applicant for a UK marketing authorisation for a relevant medicinal product is able to demonstrate that the active substances of the product have been in well-established medicinal use within the European Union for at least 10 years, with recognised efficacy and an acceptable level of safety in terms of the conditions set out in Annex I to the 2001 Directive.

(2) The applicant must provide information in accordance with Article 10a of the 2001 Directive.

### **Applications relating to new combinations of active substances**

**55.**—(1) This paragraph applies to an application for a UK marketing authorisation for a relevant medicinal product that contains active substances that—

(a) have been used in medicinal products that have been the subject of a marketing authorisation under these Regulations, the 2001 Directive or Regulation (EC) No 726/2004; but

(b) have not been used in that combination for therapeutic purposes.

(2) The applicant must provide information in accordance with Article 10b of the 2001 Directive.

### **Applications containing information supplied in relation to another product with consent**

**56.**—(1) This regulation applies to an application for a UK marketing authorisation for a relevant medicinal product where—

(a) the product that is the subject of the application (“product A”) has the same qualitative and quantitative composition in terms of active substances and the same pharmaceutical form as a product (“product B”);

(b) product B is the subject of a UK marketing authorisation; and

(c) the holder of the marketing authorisation for product B has allowed use to be made of the pharmaceutical, pre-clinical and clinical documentation contained in the file on product B with a view to examining subsequent applications relating to other medicinal products possessing the same qualitative and quantitative composition in terms of active substances and the same pharmaceutical form.

(2) The documentation referred to in paragraph (1)(c) in relation to product B may be used in relation to the application in relation to product A, in accordance with Article 10c of the 2001 Directive.

### **Obligation to update information supplied in connection with application**

**57.**—(1) The applicant for a UK marketing authorisation must update information supplied in accordance with paragraphs 18 to 21 of Schedule 8 (material to accompany an application for a UK marketing authorisation) in connection with the application.

(2) The applicant must update information supplied in connection with the application to include any further information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product concerned.

(3) Updated information within paragraphs (1) or (2) must be provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the applicant becomes aware of it.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## **[<sup>F80</sup>Obligation to update information supplied in connection with parallel import licence application**

**57A.**—(1) The applicant for a parallel import licence must update information supplied in accordance with Schedule 8A (material to accompany an application for a parallel import licence) in connection with the application.

(2) The applicant must update information supplied in connection with the application to include any further information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product concerned.

(3) Updated information within paragraphs (1) or (2) must be provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the applicant becomes aware of it.]

### **Textual Amendments**

**F80** Reg. 57A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 7 and reg. 57A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 7

### *Consideration of application*

#### **Consideration of application**

**58.**—(1) The licensing authority must take all reasonable steps to ensure that it makes a decision to grant or refuse a UK marketing authorisation before the end of 210 days beginning immediately after the day on which the application for the authorisation is submitted in accordance with regulations 49 to 55.

(2) If the licensing authority requests the applicant to provide any further information or material, the period referred to in paragraph (1) is suspended for the period—

- (a) beginning with the date on which the request is made; and
- (b) ending with the date on which the information or material is provided.

(3) If the licensing authority requests the applicant to give an oral or written explanation of the application, the period referred to in paragraph (1) is suspended for the period—

- (a) beginning with the date on which the request is made; and
- (b) ending with the date on which the explanation is provided.

(4) The licensing authority may grant the application only if, having considered the application and the accompanying material, the authority thinks that—

- (a) the applicant has established the therapeutic efficacy of the product to which the application relates;
- (b) the positive therapeutic effects of the product outweigh the risks to the health of patients or of the public associated with the product;
- (c) the application and the accompanying material complies with regulations 49 to 55; and
- (d) the product's qualitative and quantitative composition is as described in the application and the accompanying material.

(5) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to an application for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation.

(6) This regulation does not apply to an application that—



*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) has been submitted to the licensing authority in accordance with Article 28 of the 2001 Directive; or
  - (b) has been referred to the Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use established under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 for the application of the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive.
- (7) An application to which paragraph (6) applies is to be determined by the licensing authority in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

**Conditions of UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F81</sup>or parallel import licence]: general**

59.—(1) [<sup>F82</sup>Unless paragraph (1A) applies the licensing authority] may—

- (a) grant a UK marketing authorisation subject to one or more of the conditions in paragraph (2); or
- (b) vary or remove a condition in paragraph (2) to which the UK marketing authorisation is subject.

[<sup>F83</sup>(1A) Where the application concerns a parallel import licence, the licensing authority may—

- (a) grant a parallel import licence subject to one or more of the conditions in paragraph (2) (a), (c), (d) or (e); or
- (b) vary or remove a condition in paragraph (2)(a), (c), (d) or (e) to which the parallel import licence is subject.]

(2) Those conditions are—

- (a) to take certain measures for ensuring the safe use of the medicinal product and include them in the risk management plan;
- (b) to conduct post-authorisation safety studies;
- (c) to comply with obligations on the recording or reporting of suspected adverse reactions which are stricter than those referred to in Part 11;
- (d) any other conditions or restrictions with regard to the safe and effective use of the medicinal product;
- (e) the existence of an adequate pharmacovigilance system; and
- (f) to conduct post-authorisation efficacy studies where concerns relating to some aspects of the efficacy of the medicinal product are identified and can be resolved only after the medicinal product has been marketed.

(3) An obligation to conduct such studies as are referred to in paragraph (2)(f) must be based on the delegated acts adopted pursuant to Article 22b of the 2001 Directive, while taking into account the scientific guidance referred to in Article 108a of the 2001 Directive.

(4) The marketing authorisation [<sup>F84</sup>or parallel import licence] must lay down deadlines for the fulfilment of the conditions in paragraph (2) [<sup>F85</sup>where relevant and necessary].

(5) The licensing authority must notify the EMA of any marketing authorisation that it has granted subject to a condition included in accordance with this regulation.

(6) The holder of the authorisation must incorporate any condition included in a marketing authorisation [<sup>F86</sup>or parallel import licence] in accordance with this regulation into the risk management system for the product.

(7) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to proposals to vary or remove a condition to which a UK marketing authorisation is subject.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F81** Words in reg. 59 heading inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 59 heading inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(d)
- F82** Words in reg. 59(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 8(2) and words in reg. 59(1) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 8(2)
- F83** Reg. 59(1A) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 8(3) and reg. 59(1A) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 8(3)
- F84** Words in reg. 59(4) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 59(4) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(e)
- F85** Words in reg. 59(4) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 8(4) and words in reg. 59(4) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 8(4)
- F86** Words in reg. 59(6) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 59(6) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(e)

### Conditions of UK marketing authorisation: exceptional circumstances

- 60.—(1) The licensing authority may—
- (a) grant a UK marketing authorisation subject to conditions in accordance with the following paragraphs of this regulation; or
  - (b) vary or remove such a condition to which the UK marketing authorisation is subject.
- (2) The powers in paragraph (1) may be exercised only after consultation with the applicant for the authorisation or (as the case may be) its holder.
- (3) The power in paragraph (1)(a) to grant an authorisation subject to conditions may be exercised only—
- (a) in exceptional circumstances; and
  - (b) when the applicant can show that the applicant is unable to provide comprehensive data on the efficacy and safety of the medicinal product under normal conditions of use.
- (4) The conditions must relate to a matter addressed by Annex I to the 2001 Directive.
- (5) The conditions may, in particular, relate to the safety of the product to which the authorisation relates.
- (6) The conditions may, in particular, require that, where there is a serious adverse reaction relating to the use of the product—
- (a) the reaction must be reported to the licensing authority; and
  - (b) such other action as may be specified in the conditions must be taken.
- (7) The licensing authority must keep under review—
- (a) the conditions under this regulation to which a UK marketing authorisation is subject; and
  - (b) the holder's compliance with those conditions.
- (8) The licensing authority must consider those matters no less frequently than—

- (a) at the end of the period of one year beginning with the date on which the authorisation was granted; and
- (b) at the end of each subsequent period of one year.

(9) The licensing authority must notify the EMA of any marketing authorisation that it has granted subject to a condition included in accordance with this regulation.

(10) The holder of the authorisation must incorporate any condition included in a marketing authorisation in accordance with this regulation into the risk management system for the product.

(11) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to proposals to vary or remove a condition to which a UK marketing authorisation is subject.

### **Conditions of UK marketing authorisation: new obligations post-authorisation**

**61.**—(1) After the granting of a UK marketing authorisation, the licensing authority may impose an obligation on the holder of the authorisation in accordance with either or both of —

- (a) paragraph (4), in a case where paragraph (2) applies; or
- (b) paragraph (5), in a case where paragraph (3) applies.

(2) This paragraph applies if there are concerns about the risks of a medicinal product that is the subject of a marketing authorisation.

(3) This paragraph applies if the understanding of the disease or the clinical methodology indicate that previous efficacy evaluations might have to be revised significantly.

(4) The obligation in this paragraph is to conduct a post-authorisation safety study.

(5) The obligation in this paragraph is to conduct a post-authorisation efficacy study.

(6) If concerns as described in paragraph (2) apply to more than one medicinal product, the licensing authority shall, following consultation with the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee, encourage the marketing authorisation holders concerned to conduct a joint post-authorisation safety study.

(7) The obligation under paragraph (5) shall be based on the delegated acts adopted pursuant to Article 22b of the 2001 Directive while taking account of the scientific guidance referred to in Article 108a of the 2001 Directive.

(8) Where the licensing authority imposes an obligation under paragraph (4) or (5), it must without delay give written notice to the holder of —

- (a) the imposition of the obligation;
- (b) the justification for the imposition;
- (c) the objectives and timeframe for submission and conduct of the study; and
- (d) the opportunity to present written observations in accordance with paragraph (9) and the time limit specified for doing so.

(9) Where the holder so requests within the period of thirty days beginning on the day after the receipt by the holder of the notice referred to in paragraph (8), the licensing authority must provide the holder of the authorisation with an opportunity to present written observations in response to the imposition of the obligation within the time limit specified by the licensing authority in the notice.

(10) Where the holder presents written observations under paragraph (9), the licensing authority must withdraw or confirm the imposition of the obligation under paragraph (4) or (5) on the basis of the written observations as soon as is reasonably practicable.

(11) Paragraph (12) applies where the licensing authority—

- (a) imposes an obligation under paragraph (4) or (5) and the holder does not present written representations under paragraph (9); or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) confirms the imposition of an obligation under paragraph (10).

(12) Where this paragraph applies, the licensing authority must vary the marketing authorisation to include the obligation as a condition of the marketing authorisation as if it were a condition imposed under regulation 59 (conditions of UK marketing authorisations: general).

(13) The licensing authority must notify the EMA that the marketing authorisation is subject to a condition included in accordance with paragraph (12).

(14) The holder of the authorisation must incorporate any condition included in a marketing authorisation in accordance with paragraph (12) into the risk management system for the product.

(15) Schedule 11, which makes provision about advice and representations in relation to proposals to vary or remove a condition to which a UK marketing authorisation is subject, shall apply in relation to the variation or removal of a condition included in a marketing authorisation in accordance with paragraph (12).

### **Classification of UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F87</sup> or parallel import licence]**

**62.—**(1) A UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F88</sup> or parallel import licence] must include a term that the product to which the authorisation relates is to be available—

- (a) only on prescription;
- (b) only from a pharmacy; or
- (c) on general sale.

(2) In making a determination under paragraph (1), the licensing authority must have regard to the following in relation to the product—

- (a) the maximum single dose;
- (b) the maximum daily dose;
- (c) the strength of the product;
- (d) its pharmaceutical form;
- (e) its packaging; and
- (f) such other circumstances relating to its use as the licensing authority considers relevant.

(3) A UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F89</sup> or parallel import licence] must be granted subject to a condition that the product to which the authorisation relates is to be available only on prescription if the licensing authority considers that the product—

- (a) is likely to present a direct or indirect danger to human health, even when used correctly, if used without the supervision of a doctor or dentist;
- (b) is frequently and to a very wide extent used incorrectly, and as a result is likely to present a direct or indirect danger to human health;
- (c) contains substances, or preparations of substances, of which the activity requires, or the side effects require, further investigation; or
- (d) is normally prescribed by a doctor or dentist for parenteral administration.

(4) In deciding whether paragraph (3) applies to a product, the licensing authority must take into account whether the product—

- (a) contains a substance listed in any of Schedules I, II or IV to the Narcotics Drugs Convention (where the product is not a preparation listed in Schedule III to that Convention);

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) contains a substance listed in any of Schedules I to IV of the Psychotropic Substances Convention (where the product is not a preparation which may be exempted from measures of control in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 of article 3 of that Convention);
- (c) is likely, if incorrectly used—
  - (i) to present a substantial risk of medicinal abuse,
  - (ii) to lead to addiction, or
  - (iii) to be used for illegal purposes;
- (d) contains a substance that, by reason of its novelty or properties, might fall within paragraph (c), but as to which there is insufficient information available to determine whether it does so fall;
- (e) by reason of its pharmaceutical characteristics or novelty, or in the interests of public health, is reserved for treatments that can only be followed in a hospital;
- (f) is used in the treatment of conditions that must be diagnosed in a hospital or in an institution with special diagnostic facilities (although administration and subsequent supervision may be carried out elsewhere); or
- (g) is intended for outpatients but may produce very serious side effects which would require a prescription drawn up as required by a specialist and special supervision throughout the treatment.

(5) A UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F90</sup>or parallel import licence] may include a term that the product to which the authorisation relates is to be available on general sale only if the licensing authority considers that the product can with reasonable safety be sold or supplied otherwise than by, or under the supervision of, a pharmacist.

#### Textual Amendments

- F87** Words in reg. 62 heading inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 62 heading inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(f)**
- F88** Words in reg. 62(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 62(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(g)**
- F89** Words in reg. 62(3) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 62(3) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(g)**
- F90** Words in reg. 62(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 62(5) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(g)**

#### Frequency of periodic safety update reports

**63.—**(1) The licensing authority must, if paragraph (2) applies, include in a UK marketing authorisation a term that specifies the frequency, calculated from the date on which the authorisation is granted, with which the holder of the authorisation must submit periodic safety update reports in accordance with regulation 191(8) (obligation on holder to submit periodic safety update reports: general requirements).

(2) This paragraph applies in the case of a medicinal product in relation to which regulation 191(8) applies by virtue of regulation 191(1).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Duties of licensing authority in connection with determination**

- 64.—(1) This regulation applies if the licensing authority grants a UK marketing authorisation.
- (2) The licensing authority must inform the holder of the authorisation of the summary of the product characteristics as approved by the authority.
- (3) The licensing authority must ensure that the summary of the product characteristics continues to match the version it has approved, subject to any changes it approves.
- (4) As soon as is reasonably practicable after granting the marketing authorisation, the licensing authority must make available publicly—
- (a) the marketing authorisation;
  - (b) the package leaflet;
  - (c) the summary of the product characteristics;
  - (d) any conditions established in accordance with Articles 21a, 22 and 22a of the 2001 Directive; and
  - (e) any deadlines for the fulfilment of those conditions.
- (5) The licensing authority must draw up an assessment report and make comments on the file as regards—
- (a) the results of the pharmaceutical and pre-clinical tests, the clinical trials, the risk management system and the pharmacovigilance system of the product to which the authorisation relates; or
  - (b) in the case of a national homoeopathic medicinal product within the meaning of Schedule 10, the information submitted under paragraphs 3 to 5 of that Schedule.
- (6) The licensing authority must—
- (a) revise the assessment report whenever new information becomes available that is of importance for the evaluation of the quality, safety or efficacy of the medicinal product;
  - (b) make the assessment report publicly available (with the omission of information of a commercially confidential nature) as soon as is reasonably practicable after it has been prepared or revised; and
  - (c) include in the assessment report a summary, written in a manner that is understandable to the public, that contains, in particular, a section relating to the conditions of use of the medicinal product.
- (7) The assessment must be provided separately for each indication that is authorised.

### *Validity of UK marketing authorisation*

#### **Validity of UK marketing authorisation**

- 65.—(1) Subject to the following paragraphs, a UK marketing authorisation remains in force—
- (a) for an initial period of five years beginning with the date on which it is granted; and
  - (b) if the authorisation is renewed in accordance with regulation 66, for an unlimited period after its renewal.
- (2) The licensing authority may, on the first application for renewal of an authorisation, determine on grounds relating to pharmacovigilance, including exposure of an insufficient number of patients to the medicinal product concerned, that it should be necessary for the holder to make one further application for renewal.
- (3) In that event the authorisation remains in force—

- (a) for a further period of five years beginning with the date on which it is first renewed; and
- (b) if the authorisation is further renewed under regulation 66, for an unlimited period after its further renewal.

(4) If an application for the renewal or further renewal of an authorisation is made in accordance with regulation 66 the authorisation remains in force until the licensing authority notifies the applicant of its decision on the application.

(5) This regulation is subject to—

- (a) regulation 67 (failure to place on the market etc); and
- (b) regulation 68 (revocation etc of marketing authorisations).

### [<sup>F91</sup>Validity of parallel import licence

**65A.**—(1) Unless paragraph (2) applies, a parallel import licence remains in force for a period of 5 years from the date it is granted or renewed.

(2) A parallel import licence will cease to be valid if—

- (a) the information supplied in the application for a licence no longer matches the information currently approved for the reference product by the licensing authority;
- (b) details about the product imported under the licence are not consistent with the details supplied in the application; or
- (c) the patient information leaflet supplied with the product is not consistent with latest version of the leaflet that is required to be issued with the product by the licensing authority, and

an application to vary the licence to update any details in relation to sub-paragraph (a) to (c) has not been granted by the licensing authority because the condition in regulation 68(11) has not been met.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F91** Reg. 65A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **9** and reg. 65A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **9**

### Application for renewal of authorisation

**66.**—(1) The licensing authority may renew a UK marketing authorisation in response to an application made in accordance with this regulation.

(2) The applicant must be established in the European Union.

(3) The application must be—

- (a) made in writing;
- (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
- (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(4) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (3)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(5) The application must be made so that it is received by the licensing authority before the beginning of the period of nine months ending with the expiry of the period mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) or (as the case may be) (3)(a) of regulation 65 (initial and further period of validity).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6) The holder must provide a consolidated version of the file in respect of quality, safety and efficacy, including—

- (a) the evaluation of data contained in suspected adverse reaction reports and periodic safety update reports submitted in accordance with Part 11; and
- (b) all amendments made since the authorisation was granted.

(7) The licensing authority may renew a UK marketing authorisation only if, having considered the application and the material accompanying it, the authority thinks that the positive therapeutic effects of the product to which the authorisation relates outweigh the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public.

(8) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to an application for the renewal of a UK marketing authorisation.

### [<sup>F92</sup>Application for renewal of a parallel import licence

**66A.**—(1) The licensing authority may renew a parallel import licence in response to an application made in accordance with this regulation.

- (2) The applicant must be established in the European Union.
- (3) The application must be—
  - (a) made in writing;
  - (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
  - (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(4) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (3)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(5) The application must be made so that it is received by the licensing authority within three months of the end of a period expiring 5 years after the date of grant or (as the case may be) latest renewal of the licence.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F92** Reg. 66A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **10** and reg. 66A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **10**

#### Failure to place on the market etc

**67.**—(1) A UK marketing authorisation ceases to be in force if the product to which it relates is not placed on the market in the United Kingdom during the period of three years beginning immediately after the day on which it was granted.

(2) A UK marketing authorisation for a product which has been placed on the market ceases to be in force if the product to which it relates is not sold or supplied in the United Kingdom for a period of three years.

(3) This regulation does not apply if the licensing authority grants an exemption from its operation.

- (4) An exemption may be granted—
  - (a) in response to an application in writing by the holder of the UK marketing authorisation; or
  - (b) by the licensing authority of its own motion.



- (5) An exemption may be granted only—
  - (a) in exceptional circumstances; and
  - (b) on public health grounds.
- (6) An exemption—
  - (a) has effect for the period determined by the licensing authority, which may not exceed three years beginning with the day on which it is granted; and
  - (b) may be renewed or further renewed.

*Revocation, variation and suspension of marketing authorisation*

**Revocation, variation and suspension of UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F93</sup> or parallel import licence]**

**68.**—(1) The licensing authority may revoke, vary or suspend a UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F94</sup> or parallel import licence] if any of the following conditions is met.

- (2) Condition A is that the licensing authority thinks that—
  - (a) the product to which the authorisation relates is harmful;
  - (b) the positive therapeutic effects of the product do not outweigh the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public;
  - (c) the product lacks therapeutic efficacy, in that therapeutic results cannot be obtained from the product; or
  - (d) the product's qualitative or quantitative composition is not as described in the application for the authorisation or the material supplied with it.
- (3) Condition B is that the licensing authority thinks that the application or the material supplied with it is incorrect.
- [<sup>F95</sup>(4) Condition C is that the licensing authority thinks that there has been a breach of—
  - (a) a term of the authorisation or licence;
  - (b) in the case of a UK marketing authorisation, a requirement imposed by Part 13 (packaging and leaflets); or
  - (c) in the case of a parallel import licence, a requirement in relation to packaging and leaflets imposed by the licensing authority.]
  - [<sup>F96</sup>(5) Condition D is that the licensing authority thinks that a condition to which—
    - (a) the UK marketing authorisation or parallel import licence is subject by virtue of regulation 59 (conditions of UK marketing authorisations or parallel import licence: general); or
    - (b) the UK marketing authorisation is subject by virtue of regulations 60 (conditions of UK marketing authorisations: exceptional circumstances) or 61 (conditions of UK marketing authorisations: new obligations post-authorisation),  
has not been fulfilled.]
    - (6) Condition E is that the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the authorisation has not complied with regulation 75(1) to (3) (requirements to provide information).
    - (7) Condition F is that the holder of the authorisation has ceased to be established in the European Union.
    - (8) Condition G is that—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the product to which the authorisation relates is manufactured in the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the manufacturer's licence for the product has failed to comply in relation to the product with regulations 37 (manufacturing and assembly), 38 (imports from states other than EEA States), 39 (further requirements for manufacturer's licence), 40 (obligation to provide information relating to control methods) or 41 (requirements as to qualified persons).
- (9) Condition H is that—
- (a) the product to which the authorisation relates is manufactured in a member State other than the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) the licensing authority thinks that the licensee under the manufacturer's licence for the product has failed to comply in relation to the product with provision giving effect to Article 41 of the 2001 Directive (requirements relating to manufacturing authorisations) in that member State.
- (10) Condition I is that the licensing authority thinks that urgent action to protect public health is necessary, in which case it—
- (a) may suspend the authorisation; and
  - (b) must notify the suspension to the EMA, the European Commission, and all other member States by the end of the next working day following the day on which the suspension comes into force.
- (11) Condition J is that—
- (a) the holder applies to vary the authorisation; and
  - (b) the licensing authority thinks that the application should be granted.
- [<sup>F97</sup>(11A) Condition K is that the manufacture of the product to which the authorisation relates is not carried out in compliance with the particulars provided under paragraphs 5 and 9 of Schedule 8.]
- (12) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to a proposal to revoke, vary or suspend a UK marketing authorisation, other than a proposal to vary an authorisation on the application of its holder.
- (13) [<sup>F98</sup>Except in the case of a parallel import licence, this] regulation is subject to regulation 70 (authorisations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive).

### Textual Amendments

- F93** Words in reg. 68 heading inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 68 heading inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(h)
- F94** Words in reg. 68(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 68(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(i)
- F95** Reg. 68(4) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 11(2) and reg. 68(4) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 11(2)
- F96** Reg. 68(5) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 11(3) and reg. 68(5) substituted (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 11(3)
- F97** Reg. 68(11A) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 17

**F98** Words in reg. 68(13) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **11(4)** and words in reg. 68(13) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(4)**

### **Suspension of use etc of relevant medicinal product**

**69.**—(1) The licensing authority may, if any of the following conditions are met, suspend the use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply within the United Kingdom of a product to which a UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F99</sup>or parallel import licence] relates.

(2) Condition A is that the licensing authority thinks that—

- (a) the product to which the authorisation relates is harmful;
- (b) the positive therapeutic effects of the product do not outweigh the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public;
- (c) the product lacks therapeutic efficacy, in that therapeutic results cannot be obtained from the product; or
- (d) the product's qualitative or quantitative composition is not as described in the application for the authorisation or the material supplied with it.

(3) Condition B is that the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the authorisation has not complied with regulation 75(7) (requirements to provide proof of controls on manufacturing process).

(4) Condition C is that the licensing authority thinks that there has been a breach of—

- (a) a term of the authorisation; or
- (b) a requirement imposed by Part 13 (packaging and leaflets).

(5) Condition D is that the licensing authority thinks that paragraph (4) or (5) of regulation 26 (power to revoke, suspend or vary manufacturers' licences) applies in relation to the manufacturer's licence for the product to which the authorisation relates.

(6) A suspension under this regulation may relate to batches of the product.

(7) The licensing authority must give notice in writing of a suspension under this regulation to the holder of the UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F100</sup>or parallel import licence].

(8) The licensing authority must provide in the notice that the suspension—

- (a) is to take effect immediately or from a date specified in the notice; and
- (b) is to apply for the period specified in the notice.

(9) Where a medicinal product is the subject of a suspension under this regulation, the licensing authority may—

- (a) in exceptional circumstances; and
- (b) for such a transitional period as the licensing authority may determine,

allow the supply of the medicinal product to patients who are already being treated with the medicinal product.

(10) [<sup>F101</sup>Except in the case of a parallel import licence, this] regulation is subject to regulation 70 (authorisations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F99** Words in [reg. 69\(1\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), [regs. 1, 4](#) and words in [reg. 69\(1\)\(7\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 4\(2\)\(j\)](#)
- F100** Words in [reg. 69\(7\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), [regs. 1, 4](#) and words in [reg. 69\(1\)\(7\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 4\(2\)\(j\)](#)
- F101** Words in [reg. 69\(10\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), [regs. 1, 12](#) and words in [reg. 69\(10\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 12](#)

### Authorisations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive

- 70.—**(1) Regulations 68 and 69 do not apply in relation to a UK marketing authorisation that—
- was granted in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure);
  - was granted before 1st January 1995 in accordance with Article 4 of Council Directive [87/22/EEC](#) of 22 December 1986 on the approximation of national measures relating to the placing on the market of high-technology medicinal products, particularly those derived from biotechnology <sup>M42</sup>; or
  - was subject to the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive following a referral under Article 30 or 31 of that Directive, unless the procedure was limited to certain specific parts of the authorisation.

(2) A proposal by the licensing authority to vary, suspend or revoke a marketing authorisation within paragraph (1), or an application by the holder of such an authorisation to vary or revoke it, is to be determined in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

### Marginal Citations

**M42** OJ No L 15, 17.1.1987. p.38.

### Withdrawal of medicinal product from the market

- 71.—**(1) This regulation applies if—
- under regulation 68, regulation 70(2), Article 34(3) of the 2001 Directive or Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) the licensing authority or the European Commission revokes or suspends a marketing authorisation [<sup>F102</sup>or parallel import licence], or
  - under regulation 69 or Article 20(4) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) the licensing authority suspends the use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply within the United Kingdom of a product to which a marketing authorisation [<sup>F102</sup>or parallel import licence] relates.

(2) The licensing authority may give written notice to the person who is, or immediately before its revocation was, the holder of the authorisation [<sup>F103</sup>or related parallel import licence] requiring that person to comply with both of the following requirements.

(3) Requirement A is to take all reasonably practicable steps to inform wholesalers, retailers, medical practitioners, patients and others who may be in possession of the product to which the authorisation relates of—

- (a) the revocation or suspension;
  - (b) the reasons for the revocation or suspension; and
  - (c) any action to be taken to restrict or prevent further use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply of the product.
- (4) Requirement B is to take all reasonably practicable steps to withdraw from the market in the United Kingdom and recover possession of—
- (a) the product; or
  - (b) the batches of the product specified in the notice,
- within the time and for the period specified in the notice.

#### Textual Amendments

**F102** Words in reg. 71(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 71(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(k)

**F103** Words in reg. 71(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 13 and words in reg. 71(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 13

#### Sale etc of suspended medicinal product

**72.**—(1) This regulation applies if the use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply of a medicinal product is suspended in accordance with regulation 69 or 70(2) or Article 20(4) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

- (2) A person must not—
- (a) sell, supply or offer to sell or supply the product; or
  - (b) procure the sale, supply or offer for sale or supply of the product,

knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that such use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply is suspended.

#### *Obligations of holder of marketing authorisation*

#### Obligation to notify placing on the market etc

**73.**—(1) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation must notify the licensing authority of the date on which the product to which the authorisation relates is placed on the market in the United Kingdom, taking account of the various presentations authorised.

(2) A notification under paragraph (1) must be given before the end of the period of two months beginning with the date on which the product is placed on the market.

(3) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation must notify the licensing authority if the product to which the authorisation relates is to be withdrawn from the market in the United Kingdom (whether temporarily or permanently).

(4) A notification under paragraph (3) must be given before the beginning of the period of two months ending with the date on which the product is to be withdrawn from the market unless it is not reasonably practicable to do so.

(5) In that event, the notification must be given as far as is reasonably practicable in advance of the date on which the product is withdrawn from the market.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F104</sup>(5A) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation must notify the licensing authority forthwith if the holder takes action to—

- (a) request the cancellation of the authorisation;
- (b) not apply for the renewal of the authorisation; or
- (c) withdraw the product to which the authorisation relates from the market in a third country (whether temporarily or permanently) and the action is based on any of the grounds set out in Article 116 or 117(1) of the 2001 Directive.

(5B) A notification under paragraph (3) or (5A) must include the reasons for the action, in particular declaring if the action is based on any of the grounds set out in Article 116 or 117(1) of the 2001 Directive.

(5C) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation must also notify the EMA forthwith where the action which is the subject of a notification by the holder under paragraph (3) or (5A) is based on any of the grounds set out in Article 116 or 117(1) of the 2001 Directive.]

(6) The licensing authority may require the holder of a UK marketing authorisation to provide—

- (a) information relating to the volume of sales in the United Kingdom of the product to which the authorisation relates; or
- (b) information of which the holder is aware relating to the volume of prescriptions in the United Kingdom for the product.

(7) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation must provide the licensing authority with information that it requires under paragraph (6)—

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the licensing authority, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

#### Textual Amendments

**F104** Reg. 73(5A)-(5C) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3

#### Obligation to take account of scientific and technical progress

74.—(1) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation must keep under review the methods of manufacture and control of the product to which the authorisation relates, taking account of scientific and technical progress.

(2) As soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the need to do so, the holder must apply to vary the marketing authorisation to make any changes to those methods that are required to ensure they are generally accepted scientific methods.

#### Obligation to provide information relating to safety etc

75.—(1) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F105</sup>or parallel import licence] must provide the licensing authority with any new information that might entail the variation of the authorisation.

(2) The holder [<sup>F106</sup>of a UK marketing authorisation] must, in particular, provide the licensing authority with the following information—

- (a) information about any prohibition or restriction imposed in relation to the product to which the authorisation relates by the competent authority of any country in which the product is on the market;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) positive and negative results of clinical trials or other studies in all indications and populations, whether or not included in the marketing authorisation;
- (c) data on the use of the medicinal product where such use is outside the terms of the marketing authorisation; and
- (d) any other information that the holder considers might influence the evaluation of the benefits and risks of the product.

[<sup>F107</sup>(2A) The holder of a parallel import licence must, in particular, provide the licensing authority with—

- (a) information about any prohibition or restriction imposed in relation to the product to which the licence relates by the competent authority of any country in which the product is on the market; and
- (b) other information that the holder considers might influence the evaluation of the benefits and risks of the product.]

(3) Information within paragraph (1) [<sup>F108</sup>to (2A)] must be provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the holder becomes aware of it.

(4) The licensing authority may require the holder of a UK marketing authorisation to provide the authority with information that—

- (a) is specified by the licensing authority; and
- (b) demonstrates that the positive therapeutic effects of the product to which the authorisation relates continue to outweigh the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public.

[<sup>F109</sup>(4A) The licensing authority may require the holder of a parallel import licence to provide further information specified by the licensing authority.]

(5) The information that may be required under paragraph (4) [<sup>F110</sup>or (4A)] includes information arising from use of the product—

- (a) in a country which is not an EEA State; or
- (b) outside the terms of the marketing authorisation,

including use in clinical trials.

(6) If the information supplied under paragraph (1), (2)[<sup>F111</sup>, (4) or (4A)] entails the variation of the UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F112</sup>or parallel import licence], the holder must make an application to the licensing authority to that effect as soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the information.

(7) The licensing authority may require the holder of a UK marketing authorisation to provide the authority with proof of the control methods employed by the manufacturer of the product to which the authorisation relates.

(8) The holder of a UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F113</sup>or parallel import licence] must provide the licensing authority with information it requests under paragraphs [<sup>F114</sup>(4), (4A) or] (7)—

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the licensing authority, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F105** Words in [reg. 75\(1\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [4](#) and words in [reg. 75\(1\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [4\(2\)\(l\)](#)
- F106** Words in [reg. 75\(2\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(2\)](#) and words in [reg. 75\(2\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(2\)](#)
- F107** [Reg. 75\(2A\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(3\)](#) and [reg. 75\(2A\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(3\)](#)
- F108** Words in [reg. 75\(3\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(4\)](#) and words in [reg. 75\(3\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(4\)](#)
- F109** [Reg. 75\(4A\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(5\)](#) and [reg. 75\(4A\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(5\)](#)
- F110** Words in [reg. 75\(5\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(6\)](#) and words in [reg. 75\(5\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(6\)](#)
- F111** Words in [reg. 75\(6\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(7\)](#) and words in [reg. 75\(6\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(7\)](#)
- F112** Words in [reg. 75\(6\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [4](#) and words in [reg. 75\(6\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [4\(2\)\(l\)](#)
- F113** Words in [reg. 75\(8\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [4](#) and words in [reg. 75\(8\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [4\(2\)\(l\)](#)
- F114** Words in [reg. 75\(8\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [14\(8\)](#) and words in [reg. 75\(8\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [14\(8\)](#)

### Obligation in relation to product information

**76.—(1)** The holder of a UK marketing authorisation [<sup>F115</sup>or parallel import licence] for a medicinal product must ensure that the product information relating to the product is kept up to date with current scientific knowledge.

(2) In this regulation “current scientific knowledge” includes the conclusions of the assessment and recommendations made public by means of the European medicines web-portal established in accordance with Article 26 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

### Textual Amendments

- F115** Words in [reg. 76\(1\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, [4](#) and words in [reg. 76\(1\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), [4\(2\)\(m\)](#)



## Record-keeping obligations

77. The holder of a marketing authorisation [<sup>F116</sup>or parallel import licence] must keep any documents or information that will facilitate the withdrawal or recall from sale or supply of any product to which the authorisation relates.

### Textual Amendments

**F116** Words in reg. 77 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in reg. 77 inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 4(2)(n)

## Obligation to ensure appropriate and continued supplies

78. The holder of a marketing authorisation must take all reasonable steps to ensure appropriate and continued supplies of the product to which the authorisation relates to pharmacies and persons authorised to supply the product so that the needs of patients in the United Kingdom are met.

### *Offences relating to specific requirements*

## Failure to provide information on marketing authorisations to EMA

79.—(1) The holder of a marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder—

- (a) has not submitted information to the EMA as required by Article 57(2)(b) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (information on all existing medicinal products for human use authorised or registered in the EU) in relation to any medicinal product that is the subject of a marketing authorisation granted before 2nd July 2012; and
- (b) fails to do so as soon as is reasonably practicable after the coming into force of these Regulations.

(2) The holder of a marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to submit information to the EMA as required by Article 57(2)(c) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (information on any new or varied authorisations granted in the EU) in relation to any medicinal product that is the subject of a marketing authorisation granted on or after 2nd July 2012 as soon as is reasonably practicable after the grant of the authorisation.

## Urgent safety restrictions

80. The holder of a marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder —

- (a) fails to inform the licensing authority or the European Commission in accordance with Article 22(1) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 1234/2008](#) that the holder has taken urgent safety restrictions on the holder's own initiative;
- (b) fails to implement an urgent safety restriction imposed on the holder by the licensing authority or the European Commission under Article 22(2) of that Regulation; or
- (c) fails to submit an application for variation of the marketing authorisation to the licensing authority or the European Commission in accordance with Article 22(3) of that Regulation before the end of a period of fifteen days beginning on the day after—
  - (i) the taking under Article 22(1) or, as the case may be,
  - (ii) the imposition under Article 22(2),of that Regulation of an urgent safety restriction.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### [<sup>F117</sup>Urgent safety restrictions: parallel import licences

- 80A.** The holder of a parallel import licence is guilty of an offence if the holder—
- (a) fails to inform the licensing authority that the holder has taken urgent safety restrictions on the holder's own initiative;
  - (b) fails to implement an urgent safety restriction imposed on the holder by the licensing authority; or
  - (c) fails to submit an application for variation of the parallel import licence to the licensing authority before the end of a period of fifteen days beginning on the day after—
    - (i) the taking of urgent safety restrictions under paragraph (a) or, as the case may be,
    - (ii) the imposition of urgent safety restrictions under paragraph (b).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F117** Reg. 80A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **15** and reg. 80A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **15**

### *Offences relating to EU marketing authorisations*

#### **Obligation to update information supplied in connection with EU application**

**81.** An applicant for an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if that person fails to supply updated information to the EMA in accordance with Article 8(3) of the 2001 Directive as applied by Article 6(1) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#).

#### **EU marketing authorisations: failure to notify placing on market etc**

**82.—(1)** The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to notify the EMA in accordance with—

- (a) the first paragraph of Article 13(4) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (requirement to notify date of placing of product on the market); <sup>F118</sup>...
- (b) the second paragraph of Article 13(4) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (requirement to notify that product is to be withdrawn from the [<sup>F119</sup>market]); or]

[<sup>F120</sup>(c) Article 14b of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (requirement to notify suspending of marketing of the product etc).]

(2) The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to provide the EMA with information that it requires under the third paragraph of Article 13(4) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (information as to sales and prescriptions)—

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the EMA, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

#### Textual Amendments

**F118** Word in reg. 82(1)(a) omitted (11.11.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(2)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F119** Words in reg. 82(1)(b) substituted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), 4(3)
- F120** Reg. 82(1)(c) added (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), 4(4)

### EU marketing authorisations: failure to take account of technical and scientific progress

**83.** The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to apply to vary the marketing authorisation as required by Article 16(1) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (obligation to take account of scientific and technical progress).

### EU marketing authorisations: failure to provide information as to safety etc

**84.—(1)** The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to provide information to the EMA, the Commission or the licensing authority as required by Article 16(2) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (new information which might entail amendment of particulars or documents) as soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the information.

(2) The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to provide the EMA with information that it requests as required by the first paragraph of Article <sup>[F121]</sup>16(3a) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) (data on risk-benefit balance).

#### Textual Amendments

- F121** Word in reg. 84(2) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 18

### EU marketing authorisations: failure to update product information

**85.—(1)** The holder of an EU marketing authorisation for a medicinal product is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to ensure that the product information relating to the product is kept up to date with current scientific knowledge, as required by Article 16(3) of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#).

(2) In this regulation “current scientific knowledge” includes the conclusions of the assessment and recommendations made public by means of the European medicines web-portal established in accordance with Article 26 of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#).

### EU marketing authorisations: breach of pharmacovigilance condition etc

**86.—(1)** The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to comply with—

- (a) any obligation to which the marketing authorisation is subject by virtue of Articles 10a(1) or 14(7); or
- (b) any condition to which the authorisation is subject by virtue of Article 14(8),

of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#).

(2) The holder of an EU marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to incorporate into the risk management system for the product as required by Article 14a of Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#)—

- (a) any recommendation referred to in Article 9(4)(c), (ca), (cb) or (cc);
- (b) any obligation to which the authorisation is subject by virtue of Articles 10a(1) or 14(7) ; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(c) any condition to which the marketing authorisation is subject by virtue of Article 14(8), of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

### *Offences relating to advanced therapy medicinal products*

#### **Offences in connection with risk management systems and traceability systems**

**87.**—(1) The holder of an EU marketing authorisation for an advanced therapy medicinal product is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to—

- (a) submit an additional report evaluating the effectiveness of a risk management system and the results of studies within the period of 21 days beginning on the day following receipt of a request made under the second sub-paragraph of Article 14(2) of Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007, or such longer period as the EMA may specify; or
- (b) include in any periodic safety update report referred to in Article 28(2) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 an evaluation of the effectiveness of a risk management system or of the results of any study performed pursuant to the first sub-paragraph of Article 14(2) of Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007, as required by the third sub-paragraph of Article 14(2).

(2) A person who is, or who immediately before its revocation or withdrawal was, the holder of an EU marketing authorisation for an advanced therapy medicinal product is guilty of an offence if the person fails to—

- (a) establish and maintain a traceability system in accordance with the requirements set out in Article 15(1) of Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007;
- (b) where the product contains human cells or tissues, to ensure that the traceability system is complementary to and compatible with the requirements laid down in Articles 8 and 14 of Directive 2004/23/EC, as regards human cells and tissues other than blood cells, and Articles 14 and 24 of Directive 2002/98/EC, as regards blood cells; or
- (c) to keep the data to which the traceability system relates in accordance with the requirements of Article 15(4) of Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007.

#### **Offence concerning data for advanced therapy medicinal products**

**88.**—(1) A person who is, or immediately before its revocation or suspension was, the holder of an EU marketing authorisation relating to an advanced therapy medicinal product is guilty of an offence if the person fails to—

- (a) keep the data referred to in Article 15(1) of Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007 in accordance with the requirements of Article 15(4) of that Regulation; or
- (b) transfer the data referred to in Article 15(1) to the EMA in the event of that person's bankruptcy or liquidation in accordance with Article 15(5),

but this is subject to paragraph (2).

(2) Paragraph (1)(b) does not apply if—

- (a) the person is bankrupt or in liquidation and has transferred the data to another person; or
- (b) the period for which the person was required to keep the data in accordance with the requirements of Article 15(4) mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) has expired.

### *Offences relating to the Paediatric Regulation*

#### **Offences in connection with withdrawal of product from the market**

**89.**—(1) This regulation applies to a person (“H”) if—

- (a) H is the holder of a UK marketing authorisation;
- (b) H has benefited from one or more rewards or incentives under any of Articles 36, 37 and 38 of the Paediatric Regulation in relation to the product to which the authorisation relates, and
- (c) all of the periods of protection provided pursuant to those Articles have expired in relation to H.

(2) H is guilty of an offence if H ceases to supply the product without previously in accordance with Article 35 of the Paediatric Regulation —

- (a) transferring the UK marketing authorisation to another person who has declared an intention to continue to supply the product; or
- (b) allowing such a person to use the pharmaceutical, pre-clinical and clinical documentation contained in the file on that product as provided for in regulation 56.

(3) H is guilty of an offence if H—

- (a) ceases to supply the product; and
- (b) does not in accordance with Article 35 of the Paediatric Regulation inform the EMA of H's intention to do so before the beginning of the period of six months ending immediately before the day on which H does so.

#### **Failure to place on the market taking account of paediatric indication**

**90.**—(1) A person (“P”) is guilty of an offence if—

- (a) P is the holder of a UK marketing authorisation;
- (b) P obtains a paediatric indication in respect of the product to which the authorisation relates following completion of an agreed paediatric investigation plan;
- (c) the product was placed on the market for other indications before P obtained that paediatric indication; and
- (d) P fails to place the product on the market taking account of the paediatric indication in accordance with Article 33 of the Paediatric Regulation before the end of the period of two years beginning immediately after the day on which the paediatric indication is authorised.

(2) In this regulation “paediatric indication” means a term of the marketing authorisation enabling the product to which it relates to be used by or administered to persons under the age of 18 years.

#### **Failure to notify results of third country clinical trials**

**91.**—(1) This regulation applies to a person (“P”) if—

- (a) a decision by the EMA in respect of a paediatric investigation plan is addressed to P;
- (b) the plan refers to clinical trials carried out in third countries (“third country clinical trials”); and
- (c) P is established in the United Kingdom.

(2) P is guilty of an offence if P does not enter into the database referred to in Article 11 of the Clinical Trials Directive the details set out in that Article in relation to the third country clinical trials in accordance with Article 41(1) of the Paediatric Regulation within whichever is the later of—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the period of one month beginning after the day on which the decision was received; or
  - (b) the period of one month beginning after the day on which the necessary permission to conduct the clinical trial was received from the competent authorities in the country where the clinical trial is to take place.
- (3) P is guilty of an offence if P does not submit the results of those clinical trials to the EMA in accordance with Article 41(2) of the Paediatric Regulation within the period of—
- (a) six months, if P is the holder of a marketing authorisation for the medicinal product concerned; or otherwise
  - (b) twelve months,
- beginning with the day on which the last of those trials ended.
- (4) Paragraph (3) does not apply, and regulation 93(3) shall apply, in the case of a clinical trial that forms part of a paediatric study to which regulation 93 applies.

#### **Failure of sponsor of UK paediatric clinical trial to notify results of trial**

**92.**—(1) This regulation applies to the sponsor (“S”) of a paediatric clinical trial in the United Kingdom in respect of a medicinal product if—

- (a) the product has a UK marketing authorisation but S is not the holder of the authorisation; or
- (b) the product does not have a marketing authorisation.

(2) S is guilty of an offence if S does not submit the results of the clinical trial to the EMA in accordance with Article 41(2) of the Paediatric Regulation within the period of twelve months beginning with the day on which the trial ended.

#### **Failure to notify results of paediatric study**

**93.**—(1) This regulation applies to a person (“H”) if—

- (a) H is the holder of a UK marketing authorisation; and
- (b) H sponsors a paediatric study in respect of the product to which the authorisation relates.

(2) H is guilty of an offence if H does not submit the results of the study to the licensing authority in accordance with Article 46(1) of the Paediatric Regulation within the period of six months beginning with the day on which the study ended.

(3) H is guilty of an offence if H does not submit the results of any clinical trial that forms part of that study to the EMA in accordance with Article 41(2) of the Paediatric Regulation within the period of six months beginning with the day on which the trial ended.

#### **Failure to submit report to EMA**

**94.** The holder of a marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to submit an annual report to the EMA as required by Article 34(4) of the Paediatric Regulation.

#### *General provisions relating to offences*

#### **Offences in connection with application**

**95.** A person is guilty of an offence if, in the course of an application for the grant, renewal or variation of a marketing authorisation for a relevant medicinal product, the person—

- (a) fails to provide the licensing authority with any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) provides to the licensing authority any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product but that is false or misleading in a material particular;
- (c) fails to provide the EMA with any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product as required by paragraph (7) or (11) in the “Introduction and general principles” of Annex 1 to the 2001 Directive as applied by Article 6(1) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004; or
- (d) provides to the EMA any information of the kind described in sub-paragraph (c) that is false or misleading in a material particular.

### [<sup>F122</sup>Offences in connection with parallel import licence application

**95A.** A person is guilty of an offence if, in the course of an application for the grant, renewal or variation of a parallel import licence for a relevant medicinal product, the person—

- (a) fails to provide the licensing authority with any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product; or
- (b) provides to the licensing authority any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product but that is false or misleading in a material particular.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F122** Reg. 95A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **16** and reg. 95A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **16**

### Provision of false or misleading information

**96.**—(1) The holder of a marketing authorisation [<sup>F123</sup>or parallel import licence] is guilty of an offence if the holder provides any information to which paragraph (2) applies that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of a medicinal product but that is false or misleading in a material particular to—

- (a) the licensing authority;
- (b) the EMA; or
- (c) the competent authorities of other EEA States.

(2) This paragraph applies to information about the product that is supplied pursuant to the obligations in—

- (a) these Regulations; or
- (b) Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

(3) This regulation is without prejudice to the operation of regulation 95.

#### Textual Amendments

**F123** Words in [reg. 96\(1\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **4** and words in [reg. 96\(1\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(o)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Breach of pharmacovigilance condition

**[<sup>F124</sup>97.—**(1) The holder of a marketing authorisation or a parallel import licence is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to comply with a condition to which the marketing authorisation or parallel import licence is subject by virtue of regulation 59 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation or parallel import licence: general).

(2) The holder of a marketing authorisation is guilty of an offence if the holder fails to comply with a condition to which the marketing authorisation is subject by virtue of regulation 60 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation: exceptional circumstances) or 61 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation: new obligations post-authorisation).]

### Textual Amendments

**F124** Reg. 97 substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **17** and reg. 97 substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **17**

## General offence of breach of provision of this Part

**98.—**(1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person commits a breach of a provision in this Part.

(2) A breach of a provision in this Part includes any—

- (a) failure by the holder of a marketing authorisation [<sup>F125</sup>or parallel import licence] to comply with any requirement or obligation in this Part;
- (b) contravention by any person of any prohibition in this Part; or
- (c) failure to comply with any requirement imposed on a person by the licensing authority pursuant to this Part.

(3) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to any offence established by any other provision in this Part.

### Textual Amendments

**F125** Words in [reg. 98\(2\)\(a\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **4** and words in [reg. 98\(2\)\(a\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(p)**

## Penalties

**99.—**(1) A person guilty of an offence under this Part, other than a breach of regulation 79 (failure to provide information on marketing authorisations to EMA), is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

(2) A person guilty of a breach of regulation 79 is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.



## Persons liable

**100.** If a breach of regulation 95 (offences in connection with application) is committed by a person acting as employee or agent, the employer or principal of that person is guilty of the same offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

## Defences

**101.**—(1) Paragraph (2) applies if the holder of a marketing authorisation [<sup>F126</sup>or parallel import licence] is charged with an offence under this Part in respect of anything that—

- (a) has been manufactured or assembled to the holder's order by another person; and
- (b) has been so manufactured or assembled as not to comply with the terms of the authorisation.

(2) It is a defence for the holder to prove that—

- (a) the holder communicated the terms of the authorisation to the other person; and
- (b) the holder did not know and could not by the exercise of reasonable care have known that those terms had not been complied with.

(3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence consisting of a breach of regulations 73(3) or 78, or an offence under any of regulations 88 to 93, 95 and 96, to prove that the person took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid commission of that offence.

(4) Where evidence is adduced that is sufficient to raise an issue with respect to the defence in paragraph (3), the court or jury must presume that the defence is satisfied unless the prosecution proves beyond reasonable doubt that it is not.

### Textual Amendments

**F126** Words in [reg. 101\(1\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 4 and words in [reg. 101\(1\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **4(2)(q)**

## PART 6

### Certification of homoeopathic medicinal products

#### *Application of Part*

#### Application of Part

**102.**—(1) This Part applies to a homoeopathic medicinal product (a “registrable homoeopathic medicinal product”) that meets the following conditions.

(2) Condition A is that the product is administered orally or externally.

(3) Condition B is that no specific therapeutic indication appears—

- (a) on the labelling of the product; or
- (b) in any information supplied with the product.

(4) Condition C is that—

- (a) the product contains no more than one part per 10,000 of the mother tincture; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in a case where the product's active substance is a relevant allopathic substance, the product contains no more than 1/100th of the smallest concentration of that substance used in allopathy.
- (5) In this regulation “relevant allopathic substance” means an active substance whose presence in an allopathic medicinal product means that the product is only available on prescription.
- (6) For this purpose—
  - (a) “allopathic medicinal product” means a medicinal product other than a homoeopathic medicinal product; and
  - (b) “allopathy” means treatment using an allopathic medicinal product.

*Application for certificate of registration and consideration of application*

**Application for certificate of registration**

**103.**—(1) The licensing authority may, subject to regulation 104, grant an application for a certificate of registration for a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product in response to an application made in accordance with this Part.

(2) A certificate granted under paragraph (1) shall contain terms approved by the licensing authority.

(3) The application may relate to two or more homoeopathic medicinal products derived from the same homoeopathic stock or the same combination of homoeopathic stocks.

(4) The applicant must be established in the European Union.

(5) The application must be—

- (a) made in writing;
- (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
- (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(6) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (5)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(7) The application and any accompanying material must be in English.

(8) The applicant must provide each of the following for each product to which the application relates—

- (a) a statement of the scientific name, or other name given in a pharmacopoeia, of the homoeopathic stock or stocks from which the product is derived;
- (b) a statement of the routes of administration, pharmaceutical forms and degree of dilution of the product;
- (c) a dossier describing how the homoeopathic stock or stocks are obtained and controlled and justifying their homoeopathic use on the basis of an adequate bibliography;
- (d) a manufacturing and control file for each pharmaceutical form and a description of the method of dilution and potentiation of the product;
- (e) evidence that each manufacturer of the medicinal product is authorised to manufacture it (which, in the case of a product manufactured in the United Kingdom or another EEA State, means the manufacturer's licence or (as the case may be) its equivalent in that EEA State);
- (f) where an authorisation to place the product on the market has been granted by another member State, a copy of the authorisation;

- (g) a mock-up of the outer and immediate packaging of the product; and
- (h) data concerning the stability of the product.

(9) This material, taken as a whole, must be such as to demonstrate the pharmaceutical quality and batch to batch homogeneity of each product to which the application relates.

(10) The applicant must also, if requested by the licensing authority to do so, provide the licensing authority with material or information that the licensing authority reasonably considers necessary for considering the application.

### **Consideration of application**

**104.**—(1) The licensing authority must take all reasonable steps to ensure that it makes a decision to grant or refuse a certificate of registration before the end of the period of 210 days beginning immediately after the day on which an application for the certificate is submitted in accordance with regulation 103.

(2) If the licensing authority requests the applicant to provide any further information or material, the period referred to in paragraph (1) is suspended for the period—

- (a) beginning with the date on which the request is made; and
- (b) ending with the date on which the information or material is provided.

(3) The licensing authority may grant a certificate only if, having considered the application and the accompanying material, the authority thinks that—

- (a) the risks to the health of patients or of the public associated with the product do not outweigh any beneficial effects of the homoeopathic medicinal product in question;
- (b) the application and the accompanying material complies with regulation 103; and
- (c) the product's qualitative or quantitative composition is as described in the application and the accompanying material.

(4) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to an application for the grant of a certificate of registration.

(5) This regulation does not apply to an application that—

- (a) has been submitted to the licensing authority in accordance with Article 28 of the 2001 Directive; or
- (b) has been referred to the Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use for the application of the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive.

(6) An application to which paragraph (5) applies is to be determined by the licensing authority in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

### **Conditions of certificate of registration**

**105.**—(1) The licensing authority may—

- (a) grant a certificate of registration subject to conditions; or
- (b) vary or remove a condition to which the certificate of registration is subject.

(2) The powers in paragraph (1) may be exercised only after consultation with the applicant for the certificate or (as the case may be) its holder.

(3) The power in paragraph (1)(a) to grant an authorisation subject to conditions may be exercised only—

- (a) in exceptional circumstances; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) when the applicant can show that the applicant is unable to provide comprehensive data on the safety of the medicinal product under normal conditions of use.
- (4) The conditions must relate to a matter addressed by Annex I to the 2001 Directive.
- (5) The conditions may, in particular, relate to the safety of the product to which the certificate relates.
- (6) The conditions may, in particular, require that, where there is an incident relating to the use of the product—
  - (a) the incident must be reported to the licensing authority; and
  - (b) such other action as may be specified in the conditions must be taken.
- (7) The licensing authority must keep under review—
  - (a) the conditions to which a certificate of registration is subject; and
  - (b) the holder's compliance with those conditions.
- (8) The licensing authority must consider those matters no less frequently than—
  - (a) at the end of the period of one year beginning with the date on which the certificate was granted; and
  - (b) at the end of each subsequent period of one year.
- (9) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to proposals to vary or remove a condition to which a certificate of registration is subject.

### **Classification of certificate of registration**

**106.**—(1) A certificate of registration must include a term that the product to which the certificate relates is to be available—

- (a) only from a pharmacy; or
- (b) on general sale.

(2) A certificate of registration may include a term that the product to which the certificate relates is to be available on general sale only if the licensing authority considers that the product can with reasonable safety be sold or supplied otherwise than by, or under the supervision of, a pharmacist.

### **Validity of certificate of registration**

**107.**—(1) Subject to the following paragraphs, a certificate of registration remains in force—

- (a) for an initial period of five years beginning with the date on which it is granted; and
- (b) if the authorisation is renewed under regulation 108 for an unlimited period after its renewal.

(2) The licensing authority may, on the first application for renewal of a certificate, determine on grounds relating to pharmacovigilance, including exposure of an insufficient number of patients to the medicinal product concerned, that it should be necessary for the holder to make one further application for renewal.

(3) In that event, the certificate remains in force—

- (a) for a further period of five years beginning with the date on which it is first renewed; and
- (b) if the authorisation is further renewed under regulation 108 for an unlimited period after its further renewal.

(4) If an application for the renewal or further renewal of a certificate is made in accordance with regulation 108 the certificate remains in force until the licensing authority notifies the applicant of its decision on the application.

- (5) This regulation is subject to—
  - (a) regulation 109 (failure to place on the market etc); and
  - (b) regulation 110 (revocation etc of certificate of registration).

### **Application for renewal of certificate**

**108.**—(1) An application for the renewal of a certificate of registration must be made to the licensing authority.

- (2) The applicant must be established in the European Union.
- (3) The application must be—
  - (a) made in writing;
  - (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
  - (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(4) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (3)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(5) The application must be made so that it is received by the licensing authority before the beginning of the period of nine months ending with the expiry of the period mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) or (as the case may be) (3)(a) of regulation 107 (initial and further period of validity).

(6) The holder must provide a consolidated version of the file in respect of quality, safety and efficacy (including all amendments made since the authorisation was granted).

(7) The licensing authority may renew a certificate only if, having considered the application and the material accompanying it, the authority thinks that the risks to the health of patients or of the public associated with the homoeopathic medicinal product to which the certificate relates do not outweigh any beneficial effects of the product.

(8) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to an application for the renewal of a certificate of registration.

### **Failure to place on the market etc**

**109.**—(1) A certificate of registration ceases to be in force if the product to which it relates is not placed on the market in the United Kingdom during the period of three years beginning immediately after the day on which it was granted.

(2) A certificate of registration for a product which has been placed on the market ceases to be in force if the product to which it relates is not sold or supplied in the United Kingdom for a period of three years.

(3) This regulation does not apply if the licensing authority grants an exemption from its operation.

- (4) An exemption may be granted—
  - (a) in response to an application in writing by the holder of the certificate of registration; or
  - (b) by the licensing authority of its own motion.
- (5) An exemption may be granted only—
  - (a) in exceptional circumstances; and
  - (b) on public health grounds.
- (6) An exemption—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) has effect for the period determined by the licensing authority, which may not exceed three years beginning with the day on which it is granted; and
- (b) may be renewed or further renewed.

### *Revocation, variation and suspension of certificate of registration*

#### **Revocation, variation and suspension of certificate of registration**

**110.**—(1) The licensing authority may revoke, vary or suspend a certificate of registration if any of the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the licensing authority thinks that—

- (a) the product to which the certificate relates is harmful;
- (b) the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public outweigh any beneficial effects of the product; or
- (c) the product's qualitative or quantitative composition is not as described in the application for the certificate or the material supplied with it.

(3) Condition B is that the licensing authority thinks that the application or the material accompanying it is incorrect.

(4) Condition C is that the licensing authority thinks that there has been a breach of—

- (a) a term of the certificate; or
- (b) a requirement imposed by Chapter 1 of Part 13 (packaging and leaflets).

(5) Condition D is that the licensing authority thinks that a condition to which the certificate is subject by virtue of regulation 105 (conditions of certificate or registration) has not been fulfilled.

(6) Condition E is that the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the certificate has not complied with regulation 115(1) to (3) (requirements to provide information).

(7) Condition F is that the holder of the certificate has ceased to be established in the European Union.

(8) Condition G is that—

- (a) the holder applies to vary the certificate; and
- (b) the licensing authority thinks that the application should be granted.

[<sup>F127</sup>(8A) Condition H is that the manufacture and control of the product to which the certificate relates is not in compliance with the particulars provided under regulation 103(8)(c) and (d).]

(9) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to a proposal to revoke, vary or suspend a certificate of registration, other than a proposal to vary a certificate on the application of its holder.

(10) This regulation is subject to regulation 111 (certificates granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F127** Reg. 110(8A) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **19**

### **Certificates granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive**

**111.**—(1) Regulation 110 does not apply in relation to a certificate of registration that was granted in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure).

(2) A proposal by the licensing authority to vary, suspend or revoke a certificate of registration within paragraph (1), or an application by the holder of such a certificate to vary or revoke it, is to be determined in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

### **Withdrawal of homoeopathic medicinal product from the market**

**112.**—(1) This regulation applies if under regulation 110 or regulation 111(2) the licensing authority revokes or suspends a certificate of registration.

(2) The licensing authority may give written notice to the person who is, or immediately before its revocation was, the holder of the certificate requiring the holder to comply with the following requirement.

(3) That requirement is to take all reasonably practicable steps to withdraw from the market in the United Kingdom and recover possession of—

- (a) the product to which the certificate relates; or
- (b) the batches of the product specified in the notice,

within the time and for the period specified in the notice.

(4) The notice must specify the grounds for giving the notice.

#### *Obligations of holder of certificate of registration*

### **Obligation to notify placing on the market etc**

**113.**—(1) The holder of a certificate of registration must notify the licensing authority of the date on which the product to which the certificate relates is placed on the market in the United Kingdom taking account of the various presentations authorised.

(2) A notification under paragraph (1) must be given before the end of the period of two months beginning with the date on which the product is placed on the market.

(3) The holder of a certificate of registration must notify the licensing authority if the product to which the certificate relates is to be withdrawn from the market in the United Kingdom (whether temporarily or permanently).

[<sup>F128</sup>(3A) A notification under paragraph (3) must include the reasons for the withdrawal in accordance with article 123(2) of the 2001 Directive.]

(4) A notification under paragraph (3) must be given before the beginning of the period of two months ending with the date on which the product is to be withdrawn from the market unless it is not reasonably practicable to do so.

(5) In that event, the notification must be given as far as is reasonably practicable in advance of the date on which the product is withdrawn from the market.

(6) The licensing authority may require the holder of a certificate of registration to provide information relating to the volume of sales in the United Kingdom of the product to which the certificate relates.

(7) The holder of a certificate of registration must provide the licensing authority with information that it requires under paragraph (6)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the licensing authority, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

#### Textual Amendments

**F128** Reg. 113(3A) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), 5

#### Obligation to take account of scientific and technical progress

**114.**—(1) The holder of a certificate of registration must keep under review the methods of manufacture and control of the product to which the certificate relates, taking account of scientific and technical progress.

(2) As soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the need to do so, the holder must apply to vary the certificate of registration to make any changes to those methods that are required to ensure they are generally accepted scientific methods.

#### Obligation to provide information relating to safety etc

**115.**—(1) The holder of a certificate of registration must provide the licensing authority with any new information that might entail the variation of the certificate.

(2) The holder must, in particular, provide the licensing authority with the following information—

- (a) information about any prohibition or restriction imposed in relation to the product to which the certificate relates by the competent authority of any country in which the product is on the market;
- (b) positive and negative results of clinical trials or other studies in all indications and populations, whether or not included in the certificate of registration;
- (c) data on the use of the product where such use is outside the terms of the certificate of registration; and
- (d) any other information that the holder considers might influence the evaluation of the benefits and risks of the product.

(3) Information within paragraph (1) or (2) must be provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the holder becomes aware of it.

(4) The licensing authority may require the holder of a certificate of registration to provide the authority with information that—

- (a) is specified by the licensing authority; and
- (b) demonstrates that the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public do not outweigh any beneficial effects of the product to which the certificate relates.

(5) The information that may be required under paragraph (4) includes information arising from use of the product—

- (a) in a country which is not an EEA State; or
- (b) outside the terms of the certificate of registration.

(6) If the information supplied under paragraph (1), (2) or (4) entails the variation of the certificate of registration, the holder must make an application to the licensing authority to that effect as soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the information.



(7) The licensing authority may require the holder of a certificate of registration to provide the authority with proof of the control methods employed by the manufacturer of the product to which the certificate relates.

(8) The licensing authority may notify the holder of a certificate of registration that it requires the holder to provide to the licensing authority information of any description specified in the notice, within the period specified in the notice, subject to paragraph (9).

(9) A notice under paragraph (8) must not be served unless it appears to the licensing authority, or it is represented to the licensing authority by the Commission or by an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority—

- (a) that circumstances exist by reason of which it is necessary to consider whether the certificate of registration should be varied, suspended or revoked; and
- (b) that the information required by the notice is needed to consider that question.

(10) The holder of a certificate of registration must provide the licensing authority with information that it requires under paragraphs (4) or (7)—

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the licensing authority, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

### **Obligation in relation to product information**

**116.**—(1) The holder of the certificate of registration for a medicinal product must ensure that the product information relating to the product is kept up to date with current scientific knowledge.

(2) In this regulation “current scientific knowledge” includes the conclusions of the assessment and recommendations made public by means of the European medicines web-portal established in accordance with Article 26 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

### **Record-keeping obligation**

**117.** The holder of a certificate of registration must keep any documents or information that will facilitate the withdrawal or recall from sale or supply of the product to which the certificate relates.

### **Obligation to ensure appropriate and continued supplies**

**118.** The holder of a certificate of registration must take all reasonable steps to ensure appropriate and continued supplies of the product to which the certificate relates to pharmacies and persons authorised to supply the product so that the needs of patients in the United Kingdom are met.

### *Provisions relating to offences*

### **Offences in connection with applications**

**119.** A person is guilty of an offence if, in the course of an application for the grant, renewal or variation of a certificate of registration for a registrable homeopathic medicinal product, the person—

- (a) fails to provide the licensing authority with any information that is relevant to an evaluation of the quality of the product; or
- (b) provides to the licensing authority any information that is relevant to an evaluation of the quality of the product that is false or misleading in a material particular.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Provision of false or misleading information**

**120.**—(1) The holder of a certificate of registration for a medicinal product is guilty of an offence if the person provides the licensing authority with any information that is relevant to the quality of the product but that is false or misleading in a material particular.

(2) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the operation of regulation 119.

### **General offence of breach of provision of this Part**

**121.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person commits a breach of a provision in this Part.

(2) A breach of a provision in this Part includes any—

- (a) failure by the holder of a certificate of registration to comply with any requirement or obligation in this Part;
- (b) contravention by any person of any prohibition in this Part; or
- (c) failure to comply with any requirement imposed on a person by the licensing authority pursuant to this Part.

(3) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to any offence established by any other provision in this Part.

### **Penalties**

**122.** A person guilty of an offence under this Part is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

### **Persons liable**

**123.** If an offence under regulation 119 (offences in connection with applications) is committed by a person acting as employee or agent, the employer or principal of that person is guilty of the same offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

### **Defences**

**124.**—(1) Paragraph (2) applies if the holder of a certificate of registration is charged with an offence under this Part in respect of anything that—

- (a) has been manufactured or assembled to the holder's order by another person; and
- (b) has been so manufactured or assembled as not to comply with the terms of the certificate.

(2) It is a defence for the holder to prove that—

- (a) the holder communicated the terms of the certificate to the other person; and
- (b) the holder did not know and could not by the exercise of reasonable care have known that those terms had not been complied with.

(3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence consisting of a breach of regulation 113(3) or 118 or an offence under regulation 119 or 120 to prove that the person took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid commission of that offence.

(4) Where evidence is adduced that is sufficient to raise an issue with respect to the defence in paragraph (3), the court or jury must presume that the defence is satisfied unless the prosecution proves beyond reasonable doubt that it is not.

## PART 7

### Traditional herbal registrations

#### *Application of Part*

#### **Traditional herbal medicinal products**

**125.**—(1) This Part applies to a herbal medicinal product (a “traditional herbal medicinal product”) if the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is met if by virtue of its composition and indications the product is appropriate for use without the need for a medical practitioner to—

- (a) diagnose the condition to be treated by the product;
- (b) prescribe the product; or
- (c) monitor the product's use.

(3) Condition B is met if the product is intended to be administered at a particular strength and in accordance with a particular posology.

(4) Condition C is met if the product is intended to be administered externally, orally or by inhalation.

(5) Condition D is met if—

- (a) the product has been in medicinal use for a continuous period of at least 30 years, and
- (b) the product has been in medicinal use in the European Union for a continuous period of at least 15 years.

(6) It is immaterial for the purposes of condition D whether or not during a period mentioned in that condition—

- (a) the sale or supply of the product has been based on a specific authorisation; or
- (b) the number or quantity of the ingredients (or any of them) has been reduced.

(7) Condition E is met if there is sufficient information about the use of the product as mentioned in condition D (referred to in this Part as its “traditional use”), so that (in particular)—

- (a) it has been established that the traditional use of the product is not harmful; and
- (b) the pharmacological effects or efficacy of the product are plausible on the basis of long-standing use and experience.

#### **Addition of vitamins or minerals**

**126.** The addition to a traditional herbal medicinal product of a vitamin or mineral does not prevent a traditional herbal registration from being granted for the product if—

- (a) there is well-documented evidence of the safety of the vitamin or mineral; and
- (b) the action of the vitamin or mineral is ancillary to the action of the product's active herbal ingredients in connection with the use authorised by the traditional herbal registration.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Application for traditional herbal registration*

#### **Application for grant of traditional herbal registration**

**127.**—(1) The licensing authority may, subject to regulation 130, grant an application for a traditional herbal registration for a traditional herbal medicinal product in response to an application made in accordance with this Part.

(2) A registration granted under paragraph (1) shall contain terms approved by the licensing authority.

(3) The applicant must be established in the European Union.

(4) The application must be—

- (a) made in writing;
- (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
- (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(5) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (4)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(6) The application and any accompanying material must be in English.

(7) The application must include a statement indicating whether the product to which the application relates should be available—

- (a) only from a pharmacy; or
- (b) on general sale.

(8) The application must include a statement indicating—

- (a) whether any terms of the registration are proposed relating to the method of sale or supply of the product (including, in particular, any proposed restrictions affecting the circumstances of the use or promotion of the product); and
- (b) if so, what terms are proposed.

#### **Accompanying material**

**128.**—(1) The applicant for the grant of a traditional herbal registration must provide the material specified in Schedule 12 in relation to the product.

(2) The applicant must also, if requested by the licensing authority to do so, provide the licensing authority with material or information that the licensing authority reasonably considers necessary for considering the application.

(3) If the application relates to a product that is contained in the list referred to in Article 16f(1) of the 2001 Directive—

- (a) the applicant does not need to provide the material referred to in paragraphs 16 to 20 of Part 1 of Schedule 12; and
- (b) paragraph (2) of this regulation does not apply.

(4) Material that is submitted under this regulation must be submitted in accordance with Annex I to the 2001 Directive, so far as applicable to traditional herbal medicinal products.

### **Obligation to update information supplied in connection with application**

**129.**—(1) The applicant for a traditional herbal registration must update information supplied in connection with the application to include any further information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product concerned.

(2) Updated information within paragraph (1) must be provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the applicant becomes aware of it.

### *Consideration of application*

### **Consideration of application**

**130.**—(1) The licensing authority must take all reasonable steps to ensure that it makes a decision to grant or refuse a traditional herbal registration before the end of the period of 210 days beginning immediately after the day on which an application for the registration is submitted in accordance with regulation 128.

(2) If the licensing authority requests the applicant to provide any further information or material, the period referred to in paragraph (1) is suspended for the period—

- (a) beginning with the date on which the request is made; and
- (b) ending with the date on which the information or material is provided.

(3) If the licensing authority requests the applicant to give an oral or written explanation of the application, the period referred to in paragraph (1) is suspended for the period—

- (a) beginning with the date on which the request is made; and
- (b) ending with the date on which the explanation is provided.

(4) The licensing authority may grant the application only if, having considered the application and the accompanying material, the authority thinks that—

- (a) the product complies with conditions A to E of regulation 125 (conditions for a product to be a traditional herbal medicinal product);
- (b) the product to which the application relates is not harmful under normal conditions of use;
- (c) the application and the accompanying material complies with the requirements of this Part;
- (d) the product's qualitative and quantitative composition is as described in the application and the accompanying material; and
- (e) the product's pharmaceutical quality has been satisfactorily demonstrated.

(5) The licensing authority need not take into account any updated information supplied in connection with the application under regulation 129 (obligation to update information supplied in connection with application), unless it thinks that the information is unfavourable in respect of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product concerned

(6) The licensing authority may refuse the application on the ground that it is more appropriate to consider whether to authorise the placing of the product on the market in response to an application for a marketing authorisation or certificate of registration for the product.

(7) Paragraph (4)(a) is subject to Article 16c(4) of the 2001 Directive (procedure where product has been used in the European Union for less than 15 years).

(8) If the application relates to a herbal medicinal product that is contained in the list referred to Article 16f(1) of the 2001 Directive—

- (a) paragraph (4)(a) applies as if it referred to conditions A to D of regulation 125; and
- (b) paragraph (4)(b) does not apply.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(9) Where Article 16d(1) of the 2001 Directive (products to which the mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure apply) does not apply to the product, the licensing authority must, in considering the application, take into account any registrations granted by other member States in accordance with Chapter 2a of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

(10) The licensing authority must take into account—

- (a) any herbal monograph of the kind referred to in Article 16h(3) of the 2001 Directive that the authority thinks relevant to the application; or
- (b) if no relevant monograph within sub-paragraph (a) has been established, such other monographs, publications or data as the authority thinks relevant.

(11) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to an application for the grant of a traditional herbal registration.

(12) This regulation does not apply where Article 16d(1) applies to the product and the application—

- (a) has been submitted to the licensing authority in accordance with Article 28 of the 2001 Directive; or
- (b) has been referred to the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products for the application of the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive.

(13) An application to which paragraph (12) applies is to be determined by the licensing authority in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

### **Classification of traditional herbal registration**

**131.**—(1) A traditional herbal registration must include a term that the product to which the registration relates is to be available—

- (a) only from a pharmacy; or
- (b) on general sale.

(2) A traditional herbal registration may include a term that the product to which the registration relates is to be available on general sale only if the licensing authority considers that the product can with reasonable safety be sold or supplied otherwise than by, or under the supervision of, a pharmacist.

### *Validity of traditional herbal registration*

#### **Validity of traditional herbal registration**

**132.**—(1) Subject to the following paragraphs, a traditional herbal registration remains in force—

- (a) for an initial period of five years beginning with the date on which it is granted; and
- (b) if the registration is renewed under regulation 133 for an unlimited period after its renewal.

(2) The licensing authority may on the first application for renewal of a registration determine on grounds relating to pharmacovigilance, including exposure of an insufficient number of patients to the medicinal product concerned, that it should be necessary for the holder to make one further application for renewal.

(3) In that event, the registration remains in force—

- (a) for a further period of five years beginning with the date on which it is first renewed; and
- (b) if the registration is further renewed under regulation 133 for an unlimited period after its further renewal.

(4) If an application for the renewal or further renewal of a registration is made in accordance with regulation 133 the certificate remains in force until the licensing authority notifies the applicant of its decision on the application.

(5) This regulation is subject to—

- (a) regulation 134 (failure to place on the market); and
- (b) regulation 135 (revocation etc of traditional herbal registration).

### **Application for renewal of registration**

**133.**—(1) An application for the renewal of a traditional herbal registration must be made to the licensing authority.

(2) The applicant must be established in the European Union.

(3) The application must be—

- (a) made in writing;
- (b) signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
- (c) unless the licensing authority directs otherwise, accompanied by any fee payable in connection with the application.

(4) An application is treated as signed for the purposes of paragraph (3)(b) if it is signed with an electronic signature.

(5) The application must be made so that it is received by the licensing authority before the beginning of the period of nine months ending with the expiry of the period mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) or (3)(a) of regulation 132 (initial and further period of validity), as the case may be.

(6) The holder must provide a consolidated version of the file in respect of quality, safety and efficacy including—

- (a) the evaluation of data contained in suspected adverse reaction reports and periodic safety update reports submitted in accordance with Part 11; and
- (b) all variations introduced since the traditional herbal registration was granted.

(7) The licensing authority may renew a traditional herbal registration only if, having considered the application and the material accompanying it, the authority thinks that the positive therapeutic effects of the product to which the registration relates outweigh the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public.

(8) Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to an application for the renewal of a traditional herbal registration.

### **Failure to place on the market etc**

**134.**—(1) A traditional herbal registration ceases to be in force if the product to which it relates is not placed on the market in the United Kingdom during the period of three years beginning immediately after the day on which it was granted.

(2) A traditional herbal registration for a product which has been placed on the market ceases to be in force if the product to which it relates is not sold or supplied in the United Kingdom for a period of three years.

(3) This regulation does not apply if the licensing authority grants an exemption from its operation.

(4) An exemption may be granted—

- (a) in response to an application in writing by the holder of the traditional herbal registration;
- or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) by the licensing authority of its own motion.
- (5) An exemption may only be granted only—
  - (a) in exceptional circumstances; and
  - (b) on public health grounds.
- (6) An exemption—
  - (a) has effect for the period determined by the licensing authority, which may not exceed three years beginning with the day on which it is granted; and
  - (b) may be renewed or further renewed.

#### *Revocation, variation and suspension of traditional herbal registration*

### **Revocation, variation and suspension of traditional herbal registration**

**135.**—(1) The licensing authority may revoke, vary or suspend a traditional herbal registration if any of the following conditions are met.

- (2) Condition A is that the licensing authority thinks that—
  - (a) the product to which the registration relates is harmful;
  - (b) the pharmacological effects or efficacy of the product are no longer plausible; or
  - (c) the product's qualitative or quantitative composition is not as described in the application for the registration or the material accompanying it.
- (3) Condition B is that the licensing authority thinks that the application or the material supplied with it is incorrect.
- (4) Condition C is that the licensing authority thinks that there has been a breach of—
  - (a) a term of the registration; or
  - (b) a requirement imposed by Chapter 1 of Part 13 (packaging and leaflets).
- (5) Condition D is that the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the registration has not complied with regulation 145(1) to (3) (requirement to provide information that may entail amendment of authorisation).
- (6) Condition E is that the holder of the registration has ceased to be established in the United Kingdom.
- (7) Condition F is that—
  - (a) the product to which the registration relates is manufactured in the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the manufacturer's licence for the product has failed to comply in relation to the product with regulations 37 (manufacturing and assembly), 38 (imports from states other than EEA States), 39 (further requirements for manufacturer's licence), 40 (obligation to provide information relating to control methods) or 41 (requirements as to qualified persons).
- (8) Condition G is that—
  - (a) the product to which the registration relates is manufactured in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) the licensing authority thinks that the holder of the manufacturer's licence for the product has failed to comply in relation to the product with provision giving effect to Article 41 of the 2001 Directive (requirements relating to manufacturing authorisations) in that member State.



(9) Condition H is that the licensing authority thinks that urgent action to protect public health is necessary, in which case it—

- (a) may suspend the registration; and
- (b) must notify the suspension to the EMA, the European Commission, and all other member States by the end of the next working day following the day on which the suspension comes into force.

(10) Condition I is that—

- (a) the holder applies to vary the registration; and
- (b) the licensing authority thinks that the application should be granted.

[<sup>F129</sup>(10A) Condition J is that the manufacture of the product to which registration relates is not carried out in compliance with the particulars provided under paragraphs 5 and 9 of Schedule 12.]

(11) This regulation is subject to regulation 139 (registrations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive).

#### Textual Amendments

**F129** Reg. 135(10A) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 20

#### Revocation by licensing authority: further provisions

**136.**—(1) The licensing authority must revoke a traditional herbal registration if—

- (a) the application for the registration was submitted in accordance with regulation 128(3) on the basis that the herbal medicinal product to which it relates was contained in the list referred to Article 16f(1) of the 2001 Directive; and
- (b) the product ceases to be contained in that list.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply if within the period of three months beginning immediately after the day on which product ceases to be contained on the list the holder—

- (a) submits to the licensing authority the material specified in Schedule 12 (including that referred to in paragraphs 16 to 20 of Part 1 of that Schedule) in relation to the product; and
- (b) provides the licensing authority with any material or information that the licensing authority reasonably considers necessary for considering the application and requests the holder to provide.

(3) This regulation is subject to regulation 139 (registrations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive).

#### Procedures for revocation, variation or suspension

**137.** Schedule 11 makes provision about advice and representations in relation to a proposal to revoke, vary or suspend a traditional herbal registration, other than a proposal to vary a registration on the application of its holder.

#### Suspension of use etc of traditional herbal medicinal product

**138.**—(1) The licensing authority may suspend the use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply within the United Kingdom of a product to which a traditional herbal registration relates if any of the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the licensing authority thinks that—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the product is harmful;
  - (b) the pharmacological effects or efficacy of the product are no longer plausible; or
  - (c) the product's qualitative or quantitative composition is not as described in the application for the registration or the material accompanying it.
- (3) Condition B is that the licensing authority thinks that the holder has not complied with regulation 145(7) (requirements to provide proof of controls on manufacturing process).
- (4) Condition C is that the licensing authority thinks that there has been a breach of—
- (a) a term of the registration; or
  - (b) a requirement imposed by Chapter 1 of Part 13 (packaging and leaflets).
- (5) Condition D is that the licensing authority thinks that paragraph (4) or (5) of regulation 23 (power to revoke, suspend or vary manufacturers' licences) applies in relation to the manufacturer's licence for the product.
- (6) A suspension under this regulation may relate to batches of the product.
- (7) The licensing authority must give notice in writing of a suspension under this regulation to the holder of the registration.
- (8) The licensing authority must provide in the notice that the suspension—
- (a) is to take effect immediately or from a date specified in the notice; and
  - (b) is to apply for the period specified in the notice.
- (9) Where a medicinal product is the subject of a suspension under this regulation, the licensing authority may—
- (a) in exceptional circumstances; and
  - (b) for such a transitional period as the licensing authority may determine,
- allow the supply of the medicinal product to patients who are already being treated with the medicinal product.
- (10) This regulation is subject to regulation 139 (registrations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive).

#### **Registrations granted under Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive**

- 139.**—(1) Regulations 135 to 138 do not apply in relation to a traditional herbal registration that—
- (a) was granted in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure); or
  - (b) was subject to the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive following a referral under Article 30 or 31 of that Directive, unless the procedure was limited to certain specific parts of the registration.
- (2) A proposal by the licensing authority to vary, suspend or revoke a traditional herbal registration within paragraph (1), or an application by the holder of such a registration to vary or revoke it, is to be determined in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III of the 2001 Directive.

#### **Withdrawal of traditional herbal medicinal product from the market**

- 140.**—(1) This regulation applies if—
- (a) under regulation 135, 136, 139(2) or Article 34(3) of the 2001 Directive the licensing authority revokes or suspends a traditional herbal registration; or

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) under regulation 138 the licensing authority suspends the use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply within the United Kingdom of a product to which a traditional herbal registration relates.

(2) The licensing authority may give written notice to the person who is, or immediately before its revocation was, the holder of the registration requiring the holder to comply with both of the following requirements.

(3) Requirement A is to take all reasonably practicable steps to inform wholesalers, retailers, medical practitioners, patients and others who may be in possession of the product to which the registration relates of—

- (a) the revocation or suspension;
- (b) the reasons for the revocation or suspension; and
- (c) any action to be taken to restrict or prevent further use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply of the product.

(4) Requirement B is to take all reasonably practicable steps to withdraw from the market in the United Kingdom and recover possession of—

- (a) the product; or
- (b) the batches of the product specified in the notice,

within the time and for the period specified in the notice.

#### **Sale etc of suspended traditional herbal medicinal product**

**141.**—(1) This regulation applies if the use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply of a traditional herbal medicinal product is suspended in accordance with regulation 138 or 139(2).

(2) A person must not—

- (a) sell, supply or offer to sell or supply the product; or
- (b) procure the sale, supply or offer for sale or supply of the product,

knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that such use, sale, supply or offer for sale or supply is suspended.

#### *Obligations of holder of traditional herbal registration*

#### **Obligation to notify placing on the market etc**

**142.**—(1) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must notify the licensing authority of the date on which the product to which the registration relates is placed on the market in the United Kingdom taking account of the various presentations authorised.

(2) A notification under paragraph (1) must be given before the end of the period of two months beginning with the date on which the product is placed on the market.

(3) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must notify the licensing authority if the product to which the registration relates is to be withdrawn from the market in the United Kingdom (whether temporarily or permanently).

(4) A notification under paragraph (3) must be given before the beginning of the period of two months ending with the date on which the product is to be withdrawn from the market unless it is not reasonably practicable to do so.

(5) In that event, the notification must be given as far as is reasonably practicable in advance of the date on which the product is withdrawn from the market.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F130</sup>(5A) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must notify the licensing authority forthwith if the holder takes action to—

- (a) request the cancellation of the registration;
- (b) not apply for the renewal of the registration; or
- (c) withdraw the product to which the registration relates from the market in a third country (whether temporarily or permanently) and the action is based on any of the grounds set out in Article 116 or 117(1) of the 2001 Directive.

(5B) A notification under paragraph (3) or (5A) must include the reasons for the action, in particular declaring if the action is based on any of the grounds set out in Article 116 or 117(1) of the 2001 Directive.

(5C) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must notify the EMA forthwith where the action which is the subject of a notification by the holder under paragraph (3) or (5A) is based on any of the grounds set out in Article 116 or 117(1) of the 2001 Directive.]

(6) The licensing authority may require the holder of a traditional herbal registration to provide information relating to the volume of sales in the United Kingdom of the product to which the registration relates.

(7) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must provide the licensing authority with information that it requires under paragraph (6)—

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the licensing authority, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

#### Textual Amendments

**F130** Reg. 142(5A)-(5C) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), 6

#### Obligation to take account of scientific and technical progress

**143.**—(1) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must keep under review the methods of manufacture and control of the product to which the registration relates, taking account of scientific and technical progress.

(2) As soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the need to do so, the holder must apply to vary the traditional herbal registration to make any changes to those methods that are required to ensure they are generally accepted scientific methods.

#### Obligation following new herbal monograph

**144.** Where a new herbal monograph of the kind referred to in Article 16h(3) of the 2001 Directive is established the holder of a traditional herbal registration for a product to which the monograph relates must as soon as is reasonably practicable—

- (a) consider whether to modify the registration dossier; and
- (b) notify any modification to the licensing authority.

#### Obligation to provide information relating to safety etc

**145.**—(1) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must provide the licensing authority with any new information that might entail the variation of the registration.

(2) The holder must, in particular, provide the licensing authority with the following information—

- (a) information about any prohibition or restriction imposed in relation to the product to which the registration relates by the competent authority of any country in which the product is on the market;
- (b) positive and negative results of clinical trials or other studies in all indications and populations, whether or not included in the traditional herbal registration;
- (c) data on the use of the product where such use is outside the terms of the traditional herbal registration; and
- (d) any other information that the holder considers might influence the evaluation of the benefits and risks of the product.

(3) Information within paragraph (1) or (2) must be provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the holder becomes aware of it.

(4) The licensing authority may require the holder of a traditional herbal registration to provide the authority with information that—

- (a) is specified by the licensing authority; and
- (b) demonstrates that the positive therapeutic effects of the product to which the registration relates outweigh the risks of the product to the health of patients or of the public.

(5) The information that may be required under paragraph (4) includes information arising from use of the product—

- (a) in a country which is not an EEA State; or
- (b) outside the terms of the traditional herbal registration,

including use in clinical trials.

(6) If the information supplied under paragraph (1), (2) or (4) entails the variation of the traditional herbal registration, the holder must make an application to the licensing authority to that effect as soon as is reasonably practicable after becoming aware of the information.

(7) The licensing authority may require the holder of a traditional herbal registration to provide the authority with proof of the control methods employed by the manufacturer of the product to which the registration relates.

(8) The holder of a traditional herbal registration must provide the licensing authority with information that it requires under paragraph (4) or (7)—

- (a) where the period within which the information must be provided is specified in a written notice given to the holder by the licensing authority, before the end of that period; or
- (b) otherwise, as soon as is reasonably practicable after receipt of the request.

### **Obligation in relation to product information**

**146.**—(1) The holder of the traditional herbal registration for a medicinal product must ensure that the product information relating to the product is kept up to date with current scientific knowledge.

(2) In this regulation “current scientific knowledge” includes the conclusions of the assessment and recommendations made public by means of the European medicines web-portal established in accordance with Article 26 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Record-keeping obligations**

**147.** The holder of a traditional herbal registration must keep any documents or information that will facilitate the withdrawal or recall from sale or supply of any product to which the registration relates.

### **Obligation to ensure appropriate and continued supplies**

**148.** The holder of a traditional herbal registration must take all reasonable steps to ensure appropriate and continued supplies of the product to which the registration relates to pharmacies and persons authorised to supply the product so that the needs of patients in the United Kingdom are met.

### *Offences relating to traditional herbal registrations*

### **Urgent safety restrictions**

- 149.** The holder of a traditional herbal registration is guilty of an offence if the holder—
- (a) fails to inform the licensing authority or the European Commission in accordance with Article 22(1) of Regulation (EC) No. 1234/2008 that the holder has taken urgent safety restrictions on the holder's own initiative;
  - (b) fails to implement an urgent safety restriction imposed on the holder by the licensing authority or the European Commission under Article 22(2) of that Regulation; or
  - (c) fails to submit an application for variation of the traditional herbal registration to the licensing authority or the European Commission in accordance with Article 22(3) of that Regulation before the end of a period of fifteen days beginning on the day after—
    - (i) the taking under Article 22(1) or, as the case may be,
    - (ii) the imposition under Article 22(2),of that Regulation of an urgent safety restriction.

### **Offences in connection with applications**

- 150.** A person is guilty of an offence if in the course of an application for the grant, renewal or variation of a traditional herbal registration for a traditional herbal medicinal product the person—
- (a) fails to provide the licensing authority with any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product; or
  - (b) provides to the licensing authority any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product that is false or misleading in a material particular.

### **Provision of false or misleading information**

**151.—(1)** The holder of a traditional herbal registration is guilty of an offence if the holder provides to the licensing authority any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of a traditional herbal medicinal product but that is false or misleading in a material particular.

- (2) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to regulation 150.

### **General offence of breach of provision of this Part**

**152.—(1)** A person is guilty of an offence if that person commits a breach of a provision in this Part.

- (2) A breach of a provision in this Part includes any—
- (a) failure by the holder of a traditional herbal registration to comply with any requirement or obligation in this Part;
  - (b) contravention by any person of any prohibition in this Part; or
  - (c) failure to comply with any requirement imposed on a person by the licensing authority pursuant to this Part.
- (3) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to any offence established by any other provision in this Part.

### **Penalties**

- 153.** A person guilty of an offence under this Part is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

### **Persons liable**

**154.** If an offence under regulation 150 (offences in connection with applications) is committed by a person acting as employee or agent, the employer or principal of that person is guilty of the same offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

### **Defences**

- 155.—**(1) Paragraph (2) applies if the holder of a traditional herbal registration is charged with an offence under this Part in respect of anything that—
- (a) has been manufactured or assembled to the holder's order by another person; and
  - (b) has been so manufactured or assembled as not to comply with the terms of the authorisation.
- (2) It is a defence for the holder to prove that—
- (a) the holder communicated the terms of the registration to the other person; and
  - (b) the holder did not know and could not by the exercise of reasonable care have known that those terms had not been complied with.
- (3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence consisting of a breach of regulation 142(3) or 148 or an offence under regulation 150 or 151 to prove that the person took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid commission of that offence.
- (4) Where evidence is adduced that is sufficient to raise an issue with respect to the defence in paragraph (3), the court or jury must presume that the defence is satisfied unless the prosecution proves beyond reasonable doubt that it is not.

## **PART 8**

### **Article 126a authorisations**

#### **Article 126a authorisations**

**156.—**(1) The licensing authority may grant an Article 126a authorisation for a medicinal product if the following conditions are met.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) Condition A is that no United Kingdom marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force for the product.

(3) Condition B is that no application is pending in the United Kingdom for a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration for the product.

(4) Condition C is that the licensing authority considers that the placing of the product on the market in the United Kingdom is justified for public health reasons.

(5) Condition D is that the product is imported from another member State that has, in accordance with the 2001 Directive, authorised the placing on the market of the product in that member State.

(6) Condition E is that the person to whom the authorisation is granted is established in the European Union.

(7) Before granting an Article 126a authorisation, the licensing authority must notify the authorisation holder in the member State mentioned in paragraph (5) of the proposal to grant the Article 126a authorisation.

(8) Before granting an Article 126a authorisation, the licensing authority may request the competent authority in the member State mentioned in paragraph (5) to provide in accordance with Article 126a(3)(b) of the 2001 Directive a copy of—

- (a) the assessment report for that product as mentioned in Article 21(4) of the 2001 Directive; and
- (b) the authorisation in force for that product.

(9) An Article 126a authorisation remains in force for the period specified in it unless revoked before the end of that period.

(10) That period may be specified by reference to the occurrence or non-occurrence of a particular event or events.

### **Requests from other member States**

**157.**—(1) Paragraph (2) applies where the licensing authority is requested by the competent authority of another member State to provide in accordance with Article 126a(3)(b) of the 2001 Directive a copy of—

- (a) the assessment report for a medicinal product as mentioned in regulation 64(5) (duties of licensing authority in connection with determination); and
- (b) the marketing authorisation in force for that product.

(2) The licensing authority must supply those documents to the competent authority before the end of the period of thirty days beginning on the day after the request is received.

### **Application of these Regulations**

**158.** The following provisions of Part 5 (marketing authorisations) apply to an Article 126a authorisation as they apply to a marketing authorisation—

- (a) regulation 62 (classification of marketing authorisation);
- (b) regulation 63 (frequency of periodic safety update reports);
- (c) regulation 68 (revocation etc of marketing authorisation) and Schedule 11 (advice and representations in connection with revocations etc) so far as relating to that regulation;
- (d) regulation 69 (suspension of use etc of medicinal product);
- (e) regulation 71 (withdrawal of medicinal products from the market);
- (f) regulation 72 (sale etc of suspended medicinal product);



- (g) regulation 80 (urgent safety restrictions); and
- (h) regulations 98 (general offence of breach of provision of this Part), 99 (penalties) and 101(1) and (2) (defences), so far as relating to the regulations mentioned in sub-paragraphs (a) and (e) to (f).

## PART 9

### Borderline products

#### Provisional determination

**159.**—(1) This regulation applies if the licensing authority thinks that a product without a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration, certificate of registration or Article 126a authorisation is a medicinal product.

(2) The licensing authority may give a notice in writing (a “provisional determination notice”) to any person (the “recipient”)—

- (a) who has sold or supplied the product, or has offered to sell or supply it; or
- (b) whom the licensing authority thinks may sell or supply the product.

(3) The provisional determination notice must—

- (a) advise the recipient that the licensing authority has made a provisional determination that the product is a medicinal product;
- (b) give reasons for the provisional determination;
- (c) advise the recipient of the recipient's rights to challenge the provisional determination in accordance with regulation 160 and
- (d) specify a period of at least six weeks beginning immediately after the date on which the provisional determination notice is given to the recipient (in this Part “the determination date”) within which any written representations in accordance with regulation 160(2)(a) must be made to the licensing authority.

#### Challenge to provisional determination

**160.**—(1) A recipient of a provisional determination notice may, within the period of four weeks beginning immediately after the determination date, give notice in writing to the licensing authority requesting the authority to submit the provisional determination to review.

(2) If the recipient gives such notice the recipient must—

- (a) within the period specified in the provisional determination notice, make written representations to the licensing authority explaining why the recipient thinks the product is not a medicinal product; or
- (b) within the period of four weeks beginning immediately after the determination date, inform the licensing authority in writing that the recipient wants to make oral representations explaining why the recipient thinks the product is not a medicinal product.

(3) If—

- (a) the recipient has informed the licensing authority that the recipient wants to make written representations in accordance with paragraph (2)(a); and
- (b) the licensing authority thinks that, because of exceptional circumstances or the nature or complexity of the issues involved, additional time is needed for the preparation of written representations,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

the licensing authority may alter the period for making written representations.

(4) The licensing authority must inform the recipient in writing of an alteration under paragraph (3) and of the reasons for it.

### Written representations procedure

**161.**—(1) If a recipient makes written representations in accordance with regulation 160(2)(a) the licensing authority must appoint a panel of at least two persons (“the reviewers”) to advise on the provisional determination.

(2) The licensing authority must provide the reviewers with—

- (a) the recipient's written representations; and
- (b) any written representations of the licensing authority.

(3) The reviewers must advise the licensing authority on the authority's provisional determination taking account of—

- (a) the written representations; and
- (b) any other evidence submitted to them.

(4) The licensing authority must take into account the reviewers' advice and make a final determination as to whether the product is a medicinal product.

(5) The licensing authority must—

- (a) inform the recipient in writing of its final determination and of the reasons for it; and
- (b) if the licensing authority disagrees with the reviewers' advice, inform the recipient in writing of the reasons for that disagreement.

### Oral representations procedure

**162.**—(1) If a recipient informs the licensing authority in accordance with regulation 160(2)(b) that the recipient wants to make oral representations, the licensing authority must—

- (a) appoint a panel of at least two persons (“the reviewers”) to conduct the review; and
- (b) after consultation with the recipient set a date for the hearing.

(2) The licensing authority may alter the date of the hearing at the request of the recipient or of its own motion if it thinks that because of exceptional circumstances or the nature or complexity of the issues involved additional time is needed for preparation for the hearing.

(3) The licensing authority must inform the recipient in writing of any alteration under paragraph (2) and of the reasons for it.

(4) The recipient and the licensing authority may make oral representations at the hearing.

(5) The reviewers must advise the licensing authority on the authority's provisional determination, taking account of—

- (a) the oral representations made and any other evidence submitted by the recipient at the hearing;
- (b) any oral representations made or other evidence submitted by the licensing authority at the hearing; and
- (c) any other evidence heard by the review panel.

(6) The licensing authority must take into account the reviewers' advice and make a final determination as to whether the product is a medicinal product.

(7) The licensing authority must—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) inform the recipient in writing of its final determination and of the reasons for it; and
- (b) if the licensing authority disagrees with the reviewers' advice, inform the recipient in writing of the reasons for that disagreement.

### Final determination without representations

**163.**—(1) This regulation applies if the recipient—

- (a) does not give notification to the licensing authority that the recipient wishes to challenge its provisional determination within the period of four weeks beginning immediately after the determination date;
- (b) gives such notification, but fails to make written representations to the licensing authority within the period for making those representations; or
- (c) gives such notification, but fails to make oral representations at a hearing before the reviewers appointed for the purposes of advising on the provisional determination.

(2) The licensing authority must—

- (a) make a final determination as to whether the product is a medicinal product; and
- (b) inform the recipient in writing of its final determination and of the reasons for it.

### Effect of final determination

**164.**—(1) If the licensing authority makes a final determination that a product is a medicinal product, it may give a notice to any person—

- (a) who has sold or supplied the product, or has offered to sell or supply it; or
- (b) whom the licensing authority thinks may sell or supply the product.

(2) The notice must require the person—

- (a) to cease to sell, supply or offer to sell or supply the product from the date specified in the notice until a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration, certificate of registration or Article 126a authorisation is granted in respect of the product; or
- (b) not to sell, supply or offer to sell or supply the product unless a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration, certificate of registration or Article 126a authorisation is granted in respect of the product.

### Determination in other cases

**165.** Nothing in this Part prevents the licensing authority from determining that a product is a medicinal product [<sup>F131</sup>in relation to these Regulations] without following the procedures in this Part when it thinks it appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F131** Words in reg. 165 inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3 and words in reg. 165 inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), 3

### Offences relating to borderline products

**166.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person sells or supplies, or offers to sell or supply a product in breach of a notice under regulation 164(1) imposing a requirement under—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) regulation 164(2)(a); or
  - (b) regulation 164(2)(b).
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

## PART 10

### Exceptions to requirement for marketing authorisation etc

#### *Exceptions*

#### **Supply to fulfil special patient needs**

**167.**—(1) The prohibitions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not apply in relation to a medicinal product (a “special medicinal product”) if—

- (a) the medicinal product is supplied in response to an unsolicited order;
  - (b) the medicinal product is manufactured and assembled in accordance with the specification of a person who is a doctor, dentist, nurse independent prescriber, pharmacist independent prescriber or supplementary prescriber;
  - (c) the medicinal product is for use by a patient for whose treatment that person is directly responsible in order to fulfil the special needs of that patient; and
  - (d) the following conditions are met.
- (2) Condition A is that the medicinal product is supplied—
- (a) to a doctor, dentist, nurse independent prescriber, pharmacist independent prescriber or supplementary prescriber; or
  - (b) for use under the supervision of a pharmacist in a registered pharmacy, a hospital or a health centre.
- (3) Condition B is that no advertisement relating to the medicinal product is published by any person.
- (4) Condition C is that—
- (a) the manufacture and assembly of the medicinal product are carried out under such supervision; and
  - (b) such precautions are taken,
- as are adequate to ensure that the medicinal product meets the specification of the doctor, dentist, nurse independent prescriber, pharmacist independent prescriber or supplementary prescriber who requires it.
- (5) Condition D is that written records of the manufacture or assembly of the medicinal product in accordance with condition C are maintained and are available to the licensing authority or to the enforcement authority on request.
- (6) Condition E is that if the medicinal product is manufactured or assembled in the United Kingdom or imported into the United Kingdom from a country other than an EEA State—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) it is manufactured, assembled or imported by the holder of a manufacturer's licence that relates specifically to the manufacture, assembly or importation of special medicinal products; or
  - (b) it is manufactured, assembled or imported as an investigational medicinal product by the holder of a manufacturing authorisation granted by the licensing authority for the purposes of regulation 36 of the Clinical Trials Regulations.
- (7) Condition F is that if the product is imported from an EEA State—
- (a) it is manufactured or assembled in that State by a person who is the holder of an authorisation in relation to its manufacture or assembly in accordance with the provisions of the 2001 Directive as implemented in that State; or
  - (b) it is manufactured or assembled as an investigational medicinal product in that State by the holder of an authorisation in relation to its manufacture or assembly in accordance with Article 13 of the Clinical Trials Directive as implemented in that State<sup>[F132,]</sup>
- [<sup>F133</sup>and it is imported by the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence in relation to the product in question.]
- (8) Condition G is that if the product is distributed by way of wholesale dealing by a person (“P”), who has not, as the case may be, manufactured, assembled or imported the product in accordance with paragraph (6)(a) or (7)(a), P must be the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence in relation to the product in question.
- (9) In this regulation “publish” has the meaning given in regulation 277(1) (interpretation: Part 14 advertising).

#### Textual Amendments

- F132** Punctuation in reg. 167(7)(b) substituted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(a)** and punctuation in reg. 167(7)(b) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(a)**
- F133** Words in reg. 167(7)(b) inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)** and words in reg. 167(7)(b) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)**

#### Use of non-prescription medicines in the course of a business

- 168.**—(1) The prohibitions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not apply to anything done in relation to a medicinal product if the following conditions are met.
- (2) Condition A is that the medicinal product is not a prescription only medicine.
- (3) Condition B is that the medicinal product is sold or supplied to a person who is a health care professional (“P”) exclusively for use by P—
- (a) in the course of a business carried on by P, and
  - (b) for the purposes of administering it or causing it to be administered otherwise than by selling it.
- (4) Condition C is that the medicinal product is—
- (a) manufactured and assembled in accordance with the specification of P; and
  - (b) for use by a patient for whose treatment P is directly responsible in order to fulfil the special needs of that patient

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(5) Condition D is that if sold or supplied through the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence the medicinal product is sold or supplied to such a person and for such use as mentioned in condition B.

(6) Condition E is that no advertisement relating to the medicinal product is published by any person.

(7) Condition F is that the sale or supply of the medicinal product is in response to an unsolicited order.

(8) Condition G is that if the medicinal product is —

(a) manufactured or assembled in the United Kingdom or imported into the United Kingdom from a country other than an EEA State, it is manufactured, assembled or imported by the holder of a manufacturer's licence that relates specifically to the manufacture, assembly or importation of special medicinal products; or

(b) imported from an EEA State, it is manufactured or assembled in that State by a person who is the holder of an authorisation in relation to its manufacture or assembly in accordance with the provisions of the 2001 Directive as implemented in that State.

(9) In this regulation “publish” has the meaning given in regulation 277(1) (interpretation: Part 14 advertising).

### **Mixing of general sale medicinal products**

**169.**—(1) The prohibitions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not apply to a medicinal product (“the product”) in respect of which the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the product is manufactured by the mixing of authorised medicinal products with other authorised medicinal products, or with substances that are not medicinal products.

(3) Condition B is that any authorised medicinal product that is so mixed is subject to general sale.

(4) Condition C is that the product is manufactured by a person (“H”) who is the holder of a manufacturer's licence that—

(a) relates specifically to the manufacture of medicinal products in accordance with this regulation; and

(b) was granted or renewed not more than five years before the date on which the product is sold or supplied in accordance with paragraphs (5) and (6),

and that the product is manufactured in accordance with the terms of that licence.

(5) Condition D is that the product is sold or supplied by H to a person (“P”) for administration to P or to a member of P's household.

(6) Condition E is that P is present and asks H to use H's judgment as to the treatment required.

(7) Condition F is that no advertisement relating to the product is published by any person.

(8) Condition G is that written records of the manufacture of the product and of the sale or supply of the product are maintained and are made available to the licensing authority or to the enforcement authority on request.

(9) In this regulation, “authorised medicinal product” means a medicinal product that is the subject of—

(a) a marketing authorisation;

(b) a certificate of registration; or

(c) a traditional herbal registration.

## Record-keeping requirements

**170.**—(1) Where the sale or supply of a medicinal product relies on the exemptions under regulations 167, 168 or, subject to paragraph (4), 169, the person who sells or supplies the product must maintain for at least five years a record showing—

- (a) the source from which and the date on which the person obtained the product;
- (b) the person to whom and the date on which the sale or supply was made;
- (c) the quantity of the sale or supply;
- (d) the batch number of the batch of that product from which the sale or supply was made; and
- (e) details of any suspected adverse reaction to the product so sold or supplied of which the person is aware or subsequently becomes aware.

(2) The person must make the records available for inspection by the licensing authority on request.

(3) The person must notify the licensing authority of any suspected adverse reaction to the medicinal product which is a serious adverse reaction.

(4) In the case of a medicinal product that is sold or supplied in reliance on the exemption in regulation 169—

- (a) the reference in paragraph (1)(a) to “the product” means all the medicinal products that were mixed in the course of the manufacture of the product; and
- (b) paragraph (1)(d) shall not apply.

## Exempt advanced therapy medicinal products

**171.**—(1) The prohibitions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not apply in relation to an advanced therapy medicinal product (an “exempt advanced therapy medicinal product”) if the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the product is prepared—

- (a) on a non-routine basis;
- (b) in the United Kingdom; and
- (c) according to specific quality standards equivalent to those provided for advanced therapy medicinal products authorised under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

(3) Condition B is that the product is used—

- (a) in a hospital in the United Kingdom;
- (b) under the exclusive professional responsibility of a doctor; and
- (c) in order to comply with an individual medical prescription for a product made to order for an individual patient.

(4) Condition C is that no advertisement relating to the medicinal product is published by any person.

(5) Condition D is that the sale or supply of the medicinal product is in response to an unsolicited order.

(6) In this regulation “publish” has the meaning given in regulation 277(1) (interpretation Part 14 advertising).

## Parallel import licences

**172.**—(1) The prohibitions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not prevent—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the holder of a parallel import licence from placing the medicinal product to which the licence relates on the market; or
- (b) the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply, of a medicinal product to which a parallel import licence relates, in accordance with the terms of that licence.

[<sup>F134</sup>(2) In this regulation “parallel import licence” has the same meaning as in regulation 48(2).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F134** Reg. 172(2) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **18** and reg. 172(2) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **18**

#### Exemption for certain radiopharmaceuticals

**173.** Regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) does not apply where a radiopharmaceutical is prepared—

- (a) at the time when it is intended to be administered;
- (b) in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and by the person by whom it is to be administered;
- (c) from radionuclide generators, radionuclide kits and radionuclide precursors in respect of which a marketing authorisation is in force; and

[<sup>F135</sup>(d) for administration—

- (i) in England and Wales and Scotland in accordance with a licence issued under the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2017;
- (ii) in Northern Ireland in accordance with a licence issued under the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2018.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F135** Reg. 173(d) substituted (6.2.2018) by [The Ionising Radiation \(Medical Exposure\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1322\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 4 para. 2(2)** (as substituted (6.2.2018) by [S.I. 2018/121](#), regs. 1(2), **2(4)(b)(i)**)

#### Supply in response to spread of pathogenic agents etc

**174.** The prohibitions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) do not apply where the sale or supply of a medicinal product is authorised by the licensing authority on a temporary basis in response to the suspected or confirmed spread of—

- (a) pathogenic agents;
- (b) toxins;
- (c) chemical agents; or
- (d) nuclear radiation,

which may cause harm to human beings.



## Offences

### Offences relating to exceptions

**175.**—(1) A person to whom this paragraph applies is guilty of an offence if the person provides to the licensing authority any information that is relevant to the evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of a medicinal product that is false or misleading in a material particular.

(2) Paragraph (1) applies to any person who for the purposes of regulation 167 (special patient needs)—

- (a) sells or supplies the product; or
- (b) provides a specification for the product.

(3) A person is guilty of an offence if the person fails to—

- (a) maintain any record required by regulation 170(1) (records in connection with special medicinal products etc);
- (b) make any record available as required by regulation 170(2); or
- (c) notify the licensing authority of any suspected serious adverse reaction as required by regulation 170(3).

### Penalties and supplementary provision about offences

**176.**—(1) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 175 is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

(2) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under regulation 175(1) to prove that the person took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid commission of that offence.

(3) Where evidence is adduced that is sufficient to raise an issue with respect to the defence in paragraph (2), the court or jury must presume that the defence is satisfied unless the prosecution proves beyond reasonable doubt that it is not.

## PART 11

### Pharmacovigilance

#### Application of this Part and interpretation

**177.**—(1) This Part and Schedule 33 apply, except to the extent set out in paragraph (4)(b), in relation to medicinal products that are the subject of—

- (a) a UK marketing authorisation;
- (b) a traditional herbal registration; or
- (c) an Article 126a authorisation.

(2) [<sup>F136</sup>Except in regulation 191A, references in] this Part to a “holder” are to the holder of—

- (a) a UK marketing authorisation;
- (b) a traditional herbal registration; or
- (c) an Article 126a authorisation,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

and, in relation to such references, “product” means the product to which the authorisation or registration relates.

(3) References to an “authorisation or registration” in this Part and in Schedule 33 are references to—

- (a) a UK marketing authorisation;
- (b) a traditional herbal registration; or
- (c) an Article 126a authorisation

and “authorised or registered” is to be read accordingly.

[<sup>F137</sup>(4) The following provisions of this Part and Schedule 33 apply in relation to medicinal products that are the subject of an EU marketing authorisation—

- (a) regulation 206 (infringement notices);
- (b) regulation 210 (offences relating to pharmacovigilance obligations under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004), and paragraphs 2 and 4 of Schedule 33 (transitional arrangements: pharmacovigilance), but that regulation and those paragraphs do not apply in relation to the medicinal products specified in paragraph (1); and
- (c) regulation 210A (offences in relation to pharmacovigilance obligations under the Implementing Regulation).]

(5) In this Part and in Schedule 33—

“co-ordination group” means the group of that name established under Article 27 of the 2001 Directive;

“Eudravigilance database” means the database and data-processing network set up and maintained by the EMA under Article 24 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004;

[<sup>F138</sup>“Implementing Regulation” means Commission Implementing Regulation (EU) No 520/2012 of 19 June 2012 on the performance of pharmacovigilance activities provided for in Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council and Directive 2001/83/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.]

“infringement notice” has the meaning given to it in regulation 206 (infringement notices);

“relevant competent authorities” means the competent authority of each EEA state other than the United Kingdom which has granted in relation to a medicinal product—

- (a) an authorisation in accordance with Chapter 1 of Title III to the 2001 Directive (marketing authorization);
- (b) an authorisation in accordance with Chapter 4 of Title III to the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition and decentralised procedure);
- (c) a registration in accordance with Chapter 2a of Title III to the 2001 Directive (traditional use registration for herbal medicinal products); or
- (d) an authorisation in accordance with Article 126a of the 2001 Directive;

“relevant post-authorisation safety study” means a post-authorisation safety study which—

- (a) is non-interventional;
- (b) is initiated, managed or financed by the holder voluntarily or pursuant to conditions imposed under regulation 59 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation: general) or 61 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation: new obligations post-authorisation); and
- (c) involves the collection of safety data from patients or health care professionals; and

“UK web-portal” has the meaning given in regulation 203 (obligations on licensing authority in relation to national medicines web-portal).

### Textual Amendments

- F136** Words in reg. 177(2) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **19** and words in reg. 177(2) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **19**
- F137** Reg. 177(4) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **21(2)**
- F138** Words in reg. 177(5) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **21(3)**

### *Obligations on licensing authority in relation to pharmacovigilance*

#### **General obligations of the licensing authority**

**178.** The licensing authority must—

- (a) take all appropriate measures to encourage the reporting to it of suspected adverse reactions;
- (b) facilitate reporting through the provision of alternative reporting formats in addition to web-based formats;
- (c) take all appropriate measures to obtain accurate and verifiable data for the scientific evaluation of suspected adverse reaction reports;
- (d) ensure that the public is given important information on pharmacovigilance concerns relating to the use of a medicinal product in a timely manner, through publication on the UK web-portal, and through other means of publicly available information as necessary; and
- (e) ensure that all appropriate measures are taken to identify any biological medicinal product (including name and batch number) prescribed, dispensed or sold in the United Kingdom which is the subject of a suspected adverse reaction report through—
  - (i) the methods for collecting data, and
  - (ii) where necessary, the follow up of suspected adverse reaction reports.

#### **Obligation on licensing authority to operate pharmacovigilance system**

**179.—**(1) The licensing authority must operate a pharmacovigilance system.

(2) The pharmacovigilance system must in particular enable the collection of information on the risks that medicinal products present to patients' health or public health, including information on—

- (a) adverse reactions in humans arising from use of a medicinal product (irrespective of whether the use was within the terms of an authorisation or registration); and
  - (b) adverse reactions associated with occupational exposure.
- (3) The licensing authority must on an ongoing basis—
- (a) evaluate scientifically the information collected under the pharmacovigilance system;
  - (b) consider options for minimising and preventing risks presented by medicinal products; and
  - (c) take appropriate regulatory action, if any.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### **Obligation on licensing authority to audit pharmacovigilance system**

**180.**—(1) The licensing authority must perform a regular audit of its pharmacovigilance system and report the results of that audit to the European Commission.

(2) The results of the audit referred to in paragraph (1) must be reported to the European Commission—

- (a) on the first occasion no later than 21st September 2013; and
- (b) every two years after the first occasion.

### **Delegation of obligations under this Part**

**181.**—(1) The licensing authority may delegate any of its obligations under this Part to another EEA State where the conditions in paragraph (2) are met.

(2) The conditions in this paragraph are that the EEA State to whom the obligations are to be delegated—

- (a) has given its written agreement to the delegation; and
- (b) is not performing delegated obligations under this Part on behalf of another EEA State.

(3) Where the licensing authority has delegated any of its obligations under paragraph (1), it must—

- (a) inform the European Commission, the EMA and all other EEA States in writing of the delegation as soon as is reasonably practicable; and
- (b) make the delegation public as soon as is reasonably practicable.

(4) The licensing authority may agree to carry out any of the obligations of another EEA State under Title IX of the 2001 Directive on a delegated basis, but may carry out obligations under that Title only for one EEA State at any time.

### *Obligations on holders in relation to pharmacovigilance system*

### **Obligation on holder to operate pharmacovigilance system**

**182.**—(1) The holder must operate a pharmacovigilance system.

(2) The holder must (as part of its pharmacovigilance system)—

- (a) have permanently and continuously at its disposal an appropriately qualified person responsible for pharmacovigilance who resides and operates in the EU and is responsible for the establishment and maintenance of the pharmacovigilance system;
- (b) maintain and make available on the request of the licensing authority a pharmacovigilance system master file;
- (c) operate a risk management system for the product in accordance with the risk management plan (if any) for the product (subject to regulation 183);
- (d) monitor the outcome of the risk minimisation measures which are contained in the risk management plan (if any) for the product or which are laid down as conditions of the authorisation of the product under regulations 59 to 61 (conditions of UK marketing authorisation); and
- (e) update the risk management system for the product and monitor pharmacovigilance data to determine whether in relation to the product—
  - (i) there are new risks,
  - (ii) risks have changed, or

(iii) there are changes to the risk-benefit balance.

(3) The holder must keep the licensing authority <sup>F139</sup>... informed of the name and contact details of the appropriately qualified person mentioned in paragraph (2)(a) at all times.

(4) The holder must use its pharmacovigilance system to—

- (a) evaluate scientifically all information relevant to the product;
- (b) consider options for minimising and preventing the risk presented by the use of the product; and
- (c) take appropriate measures as soon as is reasonably practicable to—
  - (i) investigate the potential risks of the product,
  - (ii) communicate the risks, and
  - (iii) implement actions for minimising and preventing the risks, including updating the risk management system for the product.

(5) Where the licensing authority requests that the pharmacovigilance system master file is made available under paragraph (2)(b), the holder must submit a copy of the pharmacovigilance system master file to the licensing authority before the end of the period of 7 days beginning on the day after the day when the request was made.

(6) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

#### Textual Amendments

**F139** Words in reg. 182(3) omitted (20.8.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 22

#### Exception to obligation to operate risk management system

**183.**—(1) The holder is not required to operate a risk management system under regulation 182(2)(c) in relation to a medicinal product which has an authorisation or registration that was granted before 21st July 2012.

(2) The licensing authority may impose an obligation on the holder to operate a risk management system in relation to a medicinal product referred to in paragraph (1) if there are concerns about new or changed risks affecting the risk-benefit balance of that product.

(3) Paragraphs (4) to (6) apply where the licensing authority imposes an obligation to operate a risk management system on the holder under paragraph (2).

(4) The licensing authority must without delay notify the holder in writing of—

- (a) the imposition of the obligation;
- (b) the justification for the obligation;
- (c) the timeframe for submission of the detailed description of the risk management system required under paragraph (8)(a); and
- (d) the opportunity to present written observations in accordance with paragraph (5).

(5) Where the holder so requests before the end of the period of thirty days beginning on the day after the receipt by the holder of the notice referred to in paragraph (4), the licensing authority must provide the holder with an opportunity to present written observations in response to the imposition of the obligation within such a time limit as the licensing authority may specify.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6) Where a holder presents written observations under paragraph (5), the licensing authority must withdraw or confirm the imposition of the obligation under paragraph (2), having regard to the written observations, as soon as is reasonably practicable.

(7) Paragraphs (8) and (9) apply where the licensing authority—

- (a) imposes an obligation under paragraph (2) and the holder does not present written obligations under paragraph (5); or
- (b) confirms the imposition of the obligation under paragraph (2) pursuant to paragraph (6).

(8) The holder must—

- (a) submit to the licensing authority in writing a detailed description of the risk management system which it intends to introduce for the product in accordance with the timeframe set out in the notification under paragraph (4); and
- (b) comply with the obligation to operate a risk management system.

(9) Where the imposition relates to a product with a UK marketing authorisation, the licensing authority must vary the authorisation to include the measures to be taken as part of the risk management system as conditions of the authorisation as if they were conditions imposed under regulation 59 (conditions of UK marketing authorisations: general).

#### **Obligation on holder to audit pharmacovigilance system**

**184.**—(1) The holder must—

- (a) perform a regular audit of its pharmacovigilance system;
- (b) place a note concerning the main findings of each audit on the pharmacovigilance system master file on completion of each audit; and
- (c) ensure that an appropriate corrective action plan is prepared and implemented as soon as is reasonably practicable after completion of each audit.

(2) The holder may remove the note placed on the pharmacovigilance system master file under paragraph (1)(b) when all the measures in the corrective action plan under paragraph (1)(c) have been fully implemented.

#### *Recording, reporting and assessment of pharmacovigilance data*

#### **Recording obligations on the licensing authority**

**185.** The licensing authority must record all suspected adverse reactions to medicinal products that—

- (a) occur in the United Kingdom; and
- (b) are reported to it by a patient or a patient's carer, a health care professional, a coroner or a procurator fiscal.

#### **Reporting obligations on the licensing authority**

**186.**—(1) The licensing authority must—

- (a) when it receives a suspected adverse reaction report from a person mentioned in regulation 185(b), follow up the report with that person as appropriate;
- (b) ensure that reports of suspected adverse reactions in the United Kingdom may be submitted to it, whether by the UK web-portal or by other means;

- (c) collaborate with the EMA and the holders of authorisations or registrations in the detection of duplicates of suspected adverse reaction reports;
  - (d) submit reports of serious suspected adverse reactions that it has recorded under regulation 185 electronically to the Eudravigilance database before the end of the period of 15 days beginning on the day following the day on which the report was received; and
  - (e) submit reports of non-serious suspected adverse reactions it has recorded under regulation 185 electronically to the Eudravigilance database before the end of the period of 90 days beginning on the day following the day on which the report was received.
- (2) Paragraph (3) applies where the licensing authority has received a report of a suspected adverse reaction arising from an error associated with the use of a medicinal product.
- (3) The licensing authority must (in addition to meeting the requirements in paragraph (1) in respect of the report) ensure that the report is made available to any statutory body with functions in relation to patient safety within the United Kingdom.
- (4) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

#### **Recording obligations on holders**

**187.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the holder must record all suspected adverse reactions to the product occurring in the EEA or in third countries which are brought to its attention irrespective of whether the reaction—

- (a) is reported spontaneously by patients or health care professionals; or
- (b) occurred in the context of a post-authorisation study.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply where the suspected adverse reaction occurred in the context of a clinical trial within the meaning of the Clinical Trials Regulations.

(3) The holder must not refuse to consider reports of suspected adverse reactions to the product received electronically or by any other appropriate means from patients or from health care professionals.

(4) The holder must ensure that reports recorded under paragraph (1) are accessible (electronically or physically) at a single point within the EEA.

#### **Reporting obligations on holders**

**188.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the holder must in relation to the product—

- (a) submit electronically to the Eudravigilance database a report on all serious suspected adverse reactions that occur in the EEA and third countries before the end of the period of 15 days beginning on the day following the day on which the holder gained knowledge of the reaction;
- (b) submit electronically to the Eudravigilance database a report on all non-serious suspected adverse reactions that occur in the EEA before the end of the period of 90 days beginning on the day following the day on which the holder gained knowledge of the reaction;
- (c) establish procedures in order to obtain accurate and verifiable data for the scientific evaluation of suspected adverse reaction reports;
- (d) collect follow-up information on reports submitted under sub-paragraphs (a) or (b) and submit it electronically to the Eudravigilance database by way of an update to the original report within the specified time period; and
- (e) collaborate with the EMA and the competent authorities of the EEA States in the detection of duplicates of suspected adverse reaction reports.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The holder is not required to submit a report of a suspected adverse reaction to the product under paragraph (1)(a) or (b), or to provide follow-up information under paragraph (1)(d), where—
- (a) the suspected adverse reaction relates to a medicinal product which contains a monitored active substance; and
  - (b) the suspected adverse reaction is recorded in a monitored publication.
- (3) Paragraph (4) applies to medicinal products containing a monitored active substance.
- (4) The holder must—
- (a) monitor medical literature other than the monitored publications for reports of suspected adverse reactions to the product; and
  - (b) report suspected adverse reactions identified under sub-paragraph (a) in accordance with paragraph (1).
- (5) In this regulation—
- “monitored active substance” means an active substance on the list of active substances being monitored by the EMA published under Article 27 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004;
- “monitored publication” means a publication on the list of publications being monitored by the EMA published under Article 27 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004; and
- “the specified time period” means—
- (a) in the case of serious adverse reactions, the period of 15 days beginning on the day following the day on which the follow up information became known to the holder; and
  - (b) in the case of non-serious adverse reactions, the period of 90 days beginning on the day following the day on which the follow up information became known to the holder.
- (6) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

### *Signal detection*

#### **Signal detection: licensing authority obligations**

- 189.**—(1) The licensing authority must in relation to each medicinal product—
- (a) monitor the data in the Eudravigilance database to determine whether there are any relevant changes;
  - (b) assess updates to the risk management system for the product;
  - (c) monitor the outcome of risk minimisation measures contained in the risk management plan (if any); and
  - (d) monitor the outcome of conditions imposed under regulations 59 to 61 (conditions of UK marketing authorisations) (if any).
- (2) The licensing authority must collaborate with the EMA in carrying out its functions under paragraph (1).
- (3) The licensing authority must inform the bodies specified in paragraph (4) without delay if it detects any relevant changes in relation to a medicinal product.
- (4) The bodies specified in this paragraph are—
- (a) the EMA; and
  - (b) the relevant competent authorities.
- (5) In this regulation “relevant changes” in relation to a medicinal product means—
- (a) new risks;



- (b) risks that have changed; or
- (c) changes to the risk-benefit balance.

### **Signal detection: holder obligation**

**190.**—(1) The holder must inform the EMA and the licensing authority without delay if it detects any relevant changes in relation to the product.

- (2) In this regulation, “relevant changes” has the meaning given in regulation 189(5).

### *Periodic Safety Update Reports*

### **Obligation on holder to submit periodic safety update reports: general requirements**

**191.**—(1) The holder must submit reports known as periodic safety update reports (“PSURs”) in relation to the product to the EMA in accordance with this regulation, or in a case where paragraph (2) applies, in accordance with regulation 192.

- (2) This paragraph applies to—

- (a) a marketing authorisation granted pursuant to regulations 51 (applications for UK marketing authorisations relating to generic medicinal products) or 54 (application relating to products in well-established medicinal use); or
- (b) a traditional herbal registration.

- (3) In the following paragraphs of this regulation—

“authorisation” means a UK marketing authorisation or an Article 126a authorisation;

“the holder” means the holder of a UK marketing authorisation or an Article 126a authorisation; and

“product” means a product to which a UK marketing authorisation or Article 126a authorisation relates.

- (4) Each PSUR must contain—

- (a) summaries of data relevant to the benefits and risks of the product, including results of all studies, with a consideration of their potential impact on the authorisation for the product;
- (b) a scientific evaluation of the risk-benefit balance of the product; and
- (c) all data relating to the volume of sales of the product and any data the holder has relating to the volume of prescriptions, including an estimate of the population exposed to the product.

(5) For the purposes of paragraph (4)(b), the scientific evaluation must be based on all available data, including data from clinical trials conducted outside the terms of the authorisation for the product.

- (6) Each PSUR must be submitted electronically.

(7) PSURs must be submitted to the EMA with the frequency and on the dates as set out in paragraphs (8) to (10).

(8) In the case of an authorisation granted on or after 21st July 2012, the holder must submit PSURs with the frequency as specified in the authorisation for the product, with the dates of submission being calculated from the date of authorisation.

(9) In the case of an authorisation granted before 21st July 2012 which specifies the frequency and dates of submission of PSURs, the holder must submit PSURs with the frequency and on the dates as specified in the authorisation for the product.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (10) In the case of an authorisation granted before 21st July 2012 which does not specify the frequency and dates of submission of PSURs, the holder must submit a PSUR—
- (a) immediately upon the request of the licensing authority;
  - (b) where the product has not yet been placed on the market within the EEA, at least every six months following authorisation until the placing on the market within the EEA; and
  - (c) where the product has been placed on the market within the EEA—
    - (i) at least every six months during the first two years following the initial placing on the market,
    - (ii) once a year for the following two years, and
    - (iii) every three years after that.
- (11) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

**[<sup>F140</sup>Obligation on holder of a parallel import licence to submit periodic safety update reports**

**191A.**—(1) The holder of a parallel import licence must submit reports known as periodic safety update reports (“PSURs”) to the licensing authority if notified to do so by the licensing authority.

- (2) Each PSUR must contain—
- (a) summaries of data relevant to the benefits and risks of the product, including results of all studies, with a consideration of their potential impact on the licence for the product;
  - (b) a scientific evaluation of the risk-benefit balance of the product; and
  - (c) all data relating to the volume of sales of the product and any data the holder of the licence has relating to the volume of prescriptions, including an estimate of the population exposed to the product.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (2)(b), the scientific evaluation must be based on all available data, including data from clinical trials conducted outside the terms of the authorisation for the product.

(4) Each PSUR must be submitted electronically.

(5) The PSUR must be submitted to the licensing authority within the period specified by that authority.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F140** Reg. 191A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **20** and reg. 191A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **20**

**Obligation on holder to submit periodic safety update reports: derogation from general requirements**

- 192.**—(1) This regulation applies in relation to medicinal products granted—
- (a) a marketing authorisation pursuant to regulations 51 (applications for UK marketing authorisations relating to generic medicinal products) or 54 (application relating to products in well-established medicinal use); or
  - (b) a traditional herbal registration.
- (2) In the following paragraphs of this regulation—

“authorisation or registration” means a marketing authorisation to which paragraph (1)(a) applies or a traditional herbal registration;

“the holder” means the holder of a marketing authorisation to which paragraph (1)(a) applies or of a traditional herbal registration; and

“product” means a product to which a marketing authorisation referred to in paragraph (1)(a) or a traditional herbal registration relates.

(3) The holder must submit PSURs in relation to the product to the EMA in accordance with paragraph (5)—

(a) where requested to do so by the licensing authority in accordance with paragraph (4); or

(b) in the case of a product to which paragraph (1)(a) applies, where it is a condition to which the marketing authorisation for the product is subject by virtue of regulations 59 (conditions of UK marketing authorisation: general) or 60 (conditions of UK marketing authorisation: exceptional circumstances) to do so.

(4) The licensing authority may request the holder to submit PSURs where—

(a) it has concerns relating to the product's pharmacovigilance data; or

(b) it considers there is a lack of PSUR data relating to an active substance of the product after the authorisation or registration is granted.

(5) The submission of PSURs under paragraph (3) must be in accordance with—

(a) where the PSUR is submitted pursuant to a request under paragraph (3)(a), the terms of the request; and

(b) where the PSUR is submitted pursuant to a condition under paragraph (3)(b), the terms of the condition.

(6) Each PSUR must contain—

(a) summaries of data relevant to the benefits and risks of the product, including results of all studies, with a consideration of their potential impact on the authorisation or registration for the product;

(b) a scientific evaluation of the risk-benefit balance of the product; and

(c) all data relating to the volume of sales of the product and any data the holder has relating to the volume of prescriptions, including an estimate of the population exposed to the product.

(7) For the purposes of paragraph (6)(b), the scientific evaluation must be based on all available data, including data from clinical trials conducted outside the terms of the authorisation or registration for the product.

(8) Each PSUR must be submitted electronically.

(9) Where the licensing authority requests submission of PSURs under paragraph (3)(a), it must communicate a PSUR assessment report to the EMA as soon as is reasonably practicable after each report is received.

(10) In this regulation “PSUR assessment report” means a report which evaluates the information provided in a PSUR.

(11) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

### **Harmonisation of PSUR frequency or date of submission**

**193.**—(1) Where products that are subject to different authorisations or registrations contain the same active substance or the same combination of active substances, the frequency and dates of submission may be amended and harmonised in accordance with—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) Article 107c(4) of the 2001 Directive; or
  - (b) paragraphs (2) to (4).
- (2) The holder may, where one or more of the grounds in paragraph (3) is met, submit a request in relation to the product to the EMA—
- (a) to determine an EU reference date; or
  - (b) to change the frequency of submission of the PSUR.
- (3) The grounds in this paragraph are—
- (a) reasons relating to public health;
  - (b) in order to avoid duplication of the assessment; or
  - (c) in order to achieve international harmonisation.
- (4) The second paragraph of Article 107c(6) of the 2001 Directive has effect in relation to the submission and determination of a request under paragraph (2).
- (5) Where the frequency or dates of submission of a PSUR are changed in accordance with Article 107c(4) or Article 107c(6) of the 2001 Directive, the holder must apply to vary the product's authorisation or registration to reflect the new frequency or date of submission before the end of the period of six months beginning on the day after the change is made public by the EMA.
- (6) In this regulation, “EU reference date” in relation to a product means—
- (a) the date of the first marketing authorisation in the EEA of a medicinal product containing the same active substance or the same combination of active substances as that product; or
  - (b) if the date referred to in point (a) cannot be ascertained, the earliest of the known dates of the marketing authorisations in the EEA for a medicinal product containing the same active substance or the same combination of active substances as that product.

### **Responding to a single assessment of PSUR under Article 107e of the 2001 Directive**

- 194.**—(1) This regulation applies where PSURs relating to a medicinal product have been assessed under the EU single assessment procedure.
- (2) The licensing authority must implement—
- (a) the necessary measures that are consequent upon any agreement reached under Article 107g(2) of the 2001 Directive as part of the EU single assessment process, in accordance with the implementation timetable determined in the agreement; or
  - (b) any decision adopted under Article 107g(4)(a) of the 2001 Directive before the end of the period of 30 days beginning on the day after the day on which the licensing authority received notification of the decision.
- (3) Paragraph (4) applies where—
- (a) an agreement reached under Article 107g(2) of the 2001 Directive requires a variation to be made to an authorisation or registration; and
  - (b) the terms of the agreement are known to the holder of that authorisation or registration.
- (4) A holder of an authorisation or registration referred to in paragraph (3)(a) must submit to the licensing authority in accordance with the implementation timetable determined in the agreement an appropriate application for a variation, including—
- (a) an updated summary of the product characteristics; and
  - (b) an updated package leaflet.
- (5) In this regulation, “EU single assessment procedure” means the single assessment procedure laid down in Article 107e of the 2001 Directive, which covers—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) medicinal products that are authorised in more than one member State; and
- (b) medicinal products that contain the same active substance or the same combination of active substances and for which a harmonised EU reference date and frequency of submission of PSURs have been established under Article 107c of the 2001 Directive.

### **Obligation on licensing authority to assess PSURs where EU single assessment procedure does not apply**

**195.**—(1) This regulation applies where PSURs relating to a medicinal product have not been assessed under the EU single assessment procedure because—

- [<sup>F141</sup>(a) the medicinal product to which the PSUR relates—
- (i) has not been authorised to be placed on the market in accordance with the 2001 Directive in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom; and
  - (ii) a harmonised EU reference date and frequency of submission of PSURs have not been established for that product under Article 107c of the 2001 Directive; or

(b) the medicinal product is one that is imported into the UK under a parallel import licence.]

(2) The licensing authority must assess the PSURs to determine whether there are any relevant changes.

(3) Where the licensing authority has assessed a PSUR under paragraph (2) it must—

- (a) consider whether any action concerning the authorisation or registration of the product to which the PSUR relates is necessary; and
- (b) vary, suspend, or revoke the authorisation or registration as appropriate.

(4) In this regulation—

“EU reference date” has the meaning given in regulation 193(6);

“EU single assessment procedure” has the meaning given in regulation 194(5); and

“relevant changes” in relation to a medicinal product means—

- (a) new risks,
- (b) risks that have changed, or
- (c) changes to the risk-benefit balance.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F141** Reg. 195(1)(a)(b) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **21** and reg. 195(1)(a)(b) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **21**

### *Urgent action*

#### **Urgent action**

**196.**—[<sup>F142</sup>(1) The licensing authority must initiate the Section 4 procedure by informing the specified bodies where, on the basis of concerns resulting from the evaluation of data from pharmacovigilance activities,—

- (a) it considers suspending or revoking an authorisation or registration of a medicinal product or class of medicinal products;
- (b) it considers prohibiting the supply of a medicinal product or class of medicinal products;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) it considers refusing the renewal of an authorisation or registration of a medicinal product; or
  - (d) it is informed by a holder that, on the basis of safety concerns, the holder has—
    - (i) interrupted the sale or supply, or offer of sale or supply, of the product,
    - (ii) taken action to have the product’s authorisation or registration cancelled or intends to do so, or
    - (iii) not applied for the renewal of the product’s authorisation or registration.
- (2) The licensing authority must inform the specified bodies where, on the basis of concerns resulting from the evaluation of data from pharmacovigilance activities, it considers it necessary to vary an authorisation or registration or a class of authorisations or registrations to include—
- (a) a new contra-indication,
  - (b) a reduction to the recommended dose, or
  - (c) a restriction to the therapeutic indications.
- (2A) The information provided under paragraph (2) must outline the action considered and the reasons for the action.
- (2B) Where the licensing authority considers urgent action is necessary in relation to the information provided under paragraph (2), it must initiate the Section 4 procedure.
- (2C) The information required to be provided under paragraph (1) or (2) must be provided by the end of the day on which the consideration arose under paragraph (1)(a) to (c) or (2) or the information was received under paragraph (1)(d) (as the case may be).]
- (3) When informing the EMA under paragraph [F<sup>143</sup>(1) or] (2), the licensing authority must make available to the EMA in relation to the medicinal product or class of medicinal products—
- (a) all relevant scientific information at its disposal; and
  - (b) any assessment it has carried out.
- (4) Where the EU urgent action procedure does not apply in relation to the medicinal product or class of medicinal products referred to in [F<sup>144</sup>paragraph (1) or (2)], the licensing authority—
- (a) must inform the holder that it has taken action under [F<sup>145</sup>paragraph (1) or (2) (as the case may be)]; and
  - (b) may take such steps as it sees fit to address the safety concerns.
- (5) Where the EU urgent action procedure does apply in relation to the medicinal product or class of medicinal products referred to in [F<sup>146</sup>paragraph (1) or (2)], the licensing authority may where the conditions in paragraph (6) are met—
- (a) suspend the authorisation or registration of the medicinal product or the authorisations and registrations for the class of medicinal products referred to in [F<sup>146</sup>paragraph (1) or (2)] (as the case may be); or
  - (b) prohibit its or their use within the United Kingdom.
- (6) The conditions in this paragraph are that—
- (a) urgent action is necessary to protect public health; and
  - (b) an agreement under Article 107k of the 2001 Directive in respect of the medicinal product or class of medicinal products has not been reached.
- (7) Where the licensing authority takes action under paragraph (5), it must by the end of the next working day after the day on which the action is taken inform [F<sup>147</sup>the specified bodies] of the reasons for the action <sup>F<sup>148</sup></sup>...

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F149</sup>(8) In this regulation—

“EU urgent action procedure” means the procedure under Articles 107j and 107k of the 2001 Directive;

“Section 4 procedure” means the procedure under Section 4 of Chapter 3 of Title IX of the 2001 Directive; and

“specified bodies” means—

- (a) the competent authority of each EEA State other than the United Kingdom,
- (b) the EMA, and
- (c) the European Commission.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F142** Reg. 196(1)-(2C) substituted for reg. 196(1) (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(2)**

**F143** Words in reg. 196(3) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(3)**

**F144** Words in reg. 196(4) substituted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(4)(a)**

**F145** Words in reg. 196(4) substituted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(4)(b)**

**F146** Words in reg. 196(5) substituted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(5)**

**F147** Words in reg. 196(7) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(6)(a)**

**F148** Words in reg. 196(7) omitted (11.11.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(6)(b)**

**F149** Reg. 196(8) substituted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(7)**

#### EU urgent action procedure

**197.**—(1) Where the EU urgent action procedure is initiated in relation to a medicinal product or class of medicinal products, the licensing authority—

- (a) may publicly announce the initiation of the EU urgent action procedure on the UK web-portal; and
- (b) must implement the measures set out in any agreement reached under Article 107k of the 2001 Directive in relation to the medicinal product or class of medicinal products in accordance with the implementation timetable determined in the agreement.

(2) Paragraph (3) applies where an agreement under Article 107k of the 2001 Directive in relation to a medicinal product or class of medicinal products requires a variation to be made to one or more authorisation or registration.

(3) Each holder of an authorisation or registration covered by the agreement referred to in paragraph (2) must submit to the licensing authority in accordance with the terms of the agreement (including its implementation timetable) an application for a variation in respect of the authorisation or registration including—

- (a) an updated summary of the product characteristics; and
- (b) an updated package leaflet.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) In this regulation, “EU urgent action procedure” has the same meaning as it is given in regulation 196(8).

### *Post-authorisation safety studies*

#### **Post-authorisation safety studies: general provisions**

**198.**—(1) A relevant post-authorisation safety study—

- (a) may not be conducted where the act of conducting the study promotes the use of a medicinal product; and
- (b) may not provide for payments to health care professionals for participating in the study except in compensation for time and expenses incurred.

(2) The licensing authority may require the holder for the product which is the subject of a relevant post-authorisation safety study to submit the protocol and progress reports for the study to the competent authorities of the EEA States in which the study is conducted.

(3) The holder for the product which is the subject of a relevant post-authorisation safety study must—

- (a) comply with a requirement imposed by the licensing authority under paragraph (2) (if any);
- (b) while the study is being conducted—
  - (i) monitor the data generated, and
  - (ii) consider its implications for the risk-benefit balance of the product which is the subject of the study;
- (c) communicate to the relevant competent authorities any new information that arises at any point during the study which might influence the evaluation of the risk-benefit balance for that product as soon as is reasonably practicable after it becomes known to the holder; and
- (d) send the final report on the study to the competent authorities of the EEA States in which the study was conducted before the end of the period of 12 months beginning on the day after the day on which data collection for the study ended.

(4) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

#### **Submission of draft study protocols for required studies**

**199.**—(1) This regulation applies to a relevant post-authorisation safety study that is to be conducted pursuant to a condition of a UK marketing authorisation imposed under regulation 59 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation: general) or 61 (conditions of a UK marketing authorisation: new obligations post-authorisation).

(2) The holder for the product which is the intended subject of the study must submit a draft protocol for the study to the body specified in paragraph (3) before the study is commenced.

(3) The body specified in this paragraph is—

- (a) where the study is to be conducted in the United Kingdom only, the licensing authority; or
- (b) in all other cases, the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee.

(4) Paragraph (5) applies where a draft protocol is submitted to the licensing authority under paragraphs (2) and (3)(a).

(5) Where this paragraph applies, the licensing authority, before the end of the period of 60 days beginning on the day after the day on which the draft protocol is submitted, must issue—

- (a) a letter endorsing the draft protocol;



- (b) a letter objecting to the draft protocol on the grounds that—
  - (i) it considers that the conduct of the study promotes the use of a medicinal product, or
  - (ii) it considers that the design of the study does not fulfil the study objectives; or
- (c) a letter notifying the holder for the product which is the intended subject of the study that the study is a clinical trial within the meaning of the Clinical Trials Regulations.
- (6) A study may not commence unless a letter endorsing the draft protocol has been issued by—
  - (a) the licensing authority under paragraph (5)(a); or
  - (b) the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee under Article 107n(2) of the 2001 Directive.
- (7) Paragraph (8) applies where a letter endorsing the draft protocol has been issued by the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee under Article 107n(2) of the 2001 Directive.
- (8) Where this paragraph applies, the holder for the product which is the intended subject of the study must forward the protocol to the competent authorities of the EEA States in which the study is to be conducted before commencing the study.
- (9) In this regulation, “a letter” includes email correspondence.
- (10) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

#### **Amendment to study protocols for required studies**

- 200.**—(1) This regulation applies where a study to which regulation 199 applies has been commenced.
- (2) The holder for the product which is the subject of the study must submit any substantial amendments to the study protocol to the body specified in paragraph (3) before their implementation.
  - (3) The body specified in this paragraph is—
    - (a) where the study is being conducted in the United Kingdom only, the licensing authority; or
    - (b) in all other cases, the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee.
  - (4) Paragraph (5) applies where a proposed amendment to a study protocol is submitted to the licensing authority under paragraphs (2) and (3)(a).
  - (5) Where this paragraph applies, the licensing authority must as soon as is reasonably practicable—
    - (a) assess the amendment; and
    - (b) inform the holder of its endorsement of, or objection to, the proposed amendment.
  - (6) Paragraph (7) applies where the proposed amendment to a study protocol is submitted to the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee under paragraphs (2) and (3)(b).
  - (7) Where this paragraph applies, the holder who submitted the amendment must inform the competent authorities of the EEA States in which the study is being conducted of any amendment to the study protocol approved by the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee as soon as is reasonably practicable.
  - (8) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

#### **Submission and evaluation of final study reports for required studies**

- 201.**—(1) This regulation applies where a study to which regulation 199 applies has been completed.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) Subject to paragraph (4), the holder for the product which is the subject of the study must submit electronically, before the end of the period of 12 months beginning on the day after the day on which data collection for the study ended, to the body specified in paragraph (3)—

- (a) a final study report; and
- (b) an abstract of the study results.

(3) The body specified in this paragraph is—

- (a) where the study was conducted in the United Kingdom only, the licensing authority; or
- (b) in all other cases, the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee.

(4) Paragraph (2) does not apply where a written waiver has been granted by the licensing authority for reports falling under paragraph (3)(a), or by the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee for reports falling under paragraph (3)(b).

(5) The holder must without delay—

- (a) evaluate whether the results of a final study report submitted under paragraph (2) have an impact on the authorisation or registration of the medicinal product to which the report relates; and
- (b) if necessary, submit an application to vary the authorisation or registration for the product.

(6) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

### **Follow-up of final study reports**

**202.**—(1) This regulation applies where—

- (a) the Pharmacovigilance Risk Assessment Committee has made recommendations concerning an authorisation or registration or a class of authorisations or registrations based on a final study report under Article 107q(1) of the 2001 Directive; and
- (b) an agreement on the action to be taken in respect of the authorisation or registration or the class of authorisations or registrations has been reached by the co-ordination group under the procedure laid out in Article 107q(2) of the 2001 Directive (“the agreement”).

(2) The licensing authority must implement the measures set out in the agreement in accordance with the implementation timetable determined in the agreement.

(3) Paragraph (4) applies where—

- (a) the agreement requires a variation to be made to one or more authorisation or registration; and
- (b) the terms of the agreement are known to the holder or holders for the product or products which is, or which are, the subject of the agreement.

(4) Where this paragraph applies, each holder must submit to the licensing authority in accordance with the terms of the agreement (including its implementation timetable) an application for a variation including—

- (a) an updated summary of the product characteristics; and
- (b) an updated package leaflet.

(5) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

## Transparency and communications

### Obligations on licensing authority in relation to national medicines web-portal

**203.**—(1) The licensing authority must set up and maintain a national medicines web-portal (“the UK web-portal”) linked to the European medicines web-portal established in accordance with Article 26 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 (“the EU web-portal”).

(2) The licensing authority must make available publicly by means of the UK web-portal the following (at a minimum)—

- (a) the assessment reports prepared or revised by the licensing authority under regulation 64(5) and (6) (duties of licensing authority in connection with determination), each with a summary;
- (b) the summary of the product characteristics for the medicinal products concerned;
- (c) the package leaflet for the medicinal products concerned;
- (d) a summary of the risk management plan (if any) for the medicinal products concerned;
- (e) the list of medicinal products that are subject to additional monitoring referred to in Article 23 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004; and
- (f) information on the different ways of reporting suspected adverse reactions to medicinal products to the licensing authority by patients or their carers, health care professionals, coroners or procurators fiscal (including by way of the web-based structured forms referred to in Article 25 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004).

### Obligation on licensing authority in relation to public announcements

**204.**—(1) This regulation applies where the licensing authority intends to make a public announcement relating to information on pharmacovigilance concerns.

(2) Subject to paragraph (4), the licensing authority must inform the bodies specified in paragraph (3) not less than 24 hours prior to making the public announcement.

(3) The bodies specified in this paragraph are—

- (a) the EMA;
- (b) the European Commission; and
- (c) the competent authority of each EEA State other than the United Kingdom.

(4) Paragraph (2) does not apply if the information in the announcement needs to be made public urgently for the protection of public health.

### Obligations on holders in relation to public announcements

**205.**—(1) This regulation applies where the holder intends to make a public announcement relating to information on pharmacovigilance concerns in relation to the use of a medicinal product.

(2) The holder must inform the bodies listed in paragraph (3) of its intention to make the public announcement—

- (a) as soon as is practicable once it forms that intention; and
- (b) in any event no later than at the same time as, or before, the public announcement is made.

(3) The bodies listed in this paragraph are—

- (a) the licensing authority;
- (b) the EMA; and
- (c) the European Commission.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The holder must ensure that the information in the public announcement—
- (a) is presented objectively; and
  - (b) is not misleading.

### *Enforcement*

#### **Infringement notices**

**206.**—<sup>F150</sup>(1) If an enforcement authority has objective grounds for considering that any person (“P”) has contravened any relevant provision, it may serve upon P a notice in writing (referred to in this Part as an “infringement notice”)—

- (a) informing P of the authority’s grounds for considering that P has contravened one or more relevant provision;
- (b) specifying the relevant provision;
- (c) specifying the measures which P must take in order to ensure that the contravention does not continue or, as the case may be, does not recur;
- (d) requiring P to take those measures, within such period as may be specified in the notice;
- (e) specifying the further action (if any) that the enforcement authority may take.]

(2) An infringement notice may include directions as to the measures to be taken by P to ensure that the contravention does not continue or, as the case may be, does not recur, including the different ways of securing compliance.

(3) If an enforcement authority serves an infringement notice in accordance with paragraph (1), it shall as soon as is reasonably practicable inform—

- (a) the EMA; and
- (b) the European Commission.

<sup>F151</sup>(4) In this regulation “relevant provision” means a provision of—

- (a) this Part;
- (b) Chapter 3 of Title II of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004; or
- (c) the Implementing Regulation.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F150** Reg. 206(1) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **23(2)**

**F151** Reg. 206(4) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **23(3)**

#### **Offences**

**207.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person commits a breach of a provision in this Part, other than regulation 199(2) or (6) (submission of draft study protocols for required studies).

(2) A breach of a provision in this Part includes any—

- (a) failure by a holder to comply with any requirement or obligation in this Part; or
- (b) contravention by any person of any prohibition in this Part.

## False and misleading information

**208.** A person is guilty of an offence if the person provides information to the licensing authority or the EMA, pursuant to an obligation in this Part, but that information is false or misleading in a material particular.

## Penalties

**209.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), a person guilty of an offence under regulation 207 or 208 is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 207 which relates to a breach of a provision listed in paragraph (3) is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine.

(3) Those provisions are regulations—

- (a) 182(2)(a) and (b), (3) and (5);
- (b) 183(8)(a);
- (c) 184(1)(a) and (b);
- (d) 187(4);
- (e) 188(1)(c) and (e);
- (f) 193(5);
- (g) 198(1) and (3)(a) and (d);
- (h) 199(8); and
- (i) 200(7).

## Offences relating to pharmacovigilance obligations under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004

**210.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person—

- (a) commits a breach of a provision of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 listed in paragraph (3); or
- (b) provides information which is false or misleading in a material particular to the licensing authority or the EMA pursuant to an obligation in Chapter 3 of Title II of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

(2) A breach of a provision listed in paragraph (3) includes any—

- (a) failure to comply with any requirement or obligation contained in any of those provisions;
- (b) contravention of any prohibition contained in any of those provisions; or
- (c) failure to comply with any requirement imposed by the licensing authority or the EMA pursuant to any of those provisions.

(3) Those provisions are—

- (a) Article [F<sup>152</sup>16(3a)], second paragraph<sup>M43</sup>;
- (b) Article 20(8)<sup>M44</sup>;
- (c) Article 21(1) and (2)<sup>M45</sup>;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) Article 22<sup>M46</sup>;
  - (e) Article 28(1), (2) and (5)<sup>M47</sup>;
  - (f) Article 28a(3)<sup>M48</sup>; and
  - (g) Article 28b(1)<sup>M49</sup>, except insofar as it imposes an obligation under Article 107n(1), or the first paragraph of Article 107n(3), of the 2001 Directive.
- (4) Subject to paragraph (5), a person guilty of an offence under this regulation is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.
- (5) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation in relation to a provision of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 listed in paragraph (6) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine.
- (6) Those provisions are—
- (a) Article [<sup>F153</sup>16(3a)], second paragraph;
  - (b) Article 21(1) insofar as it relates to obligations set out in—
    - (i) the second paragraph of Article 104(2) of the 2001 Directive save the obligation regarding preparing and implementing a corrective action plan,
    - (ii) Article 104(3)(a) of the 2001 Directive,
    - (iii) Article 104(3)(b) of the 2001 Directive, or
    - (iv) the second paragraph of Article 104(3) of the 2001 Directive;
  - (c) Article 21(2) insofar as it relates to the obligation to submit a detailed description of a risk management system;
  - (d) Article 28(1) insofar as it relates to obligations set out in—
    - (i) the second paragraph of Article 107(1) of the 2001 Directive,
    - (ii) the first sentence of Article 107(4) of the 2001 Directive, or
    - (iii) Article 107(5) of the 2001 Directive;
  - (e) Article 28(2) insofar as it relates to the obligation set out in the third paragraph of Article 107c(4) of the 2001 Directive; and
  - (f) Article 28b(1) insofar as it relates to prohibitions or obligations set out in—
    - (i) Article 107m(3) to (6) of the 2001 Directive,
    - (ii) the second paragraph of Article 107n(3) of the 2001 Directive, or
    - (iii) the last sentence of Article 107o of the 2001 Directive.
- (7) This regulation is subject to regulation 212 (transitional arrangements).

#### Textual Amendments

**F152** Word in reg. 210(3)(a) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 24

**F153** Word in reg. 210(6)(a) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 24

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

- M43** Article 16(4), second paragraph, of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 (“the Regulation”) imposes an obligation identical to that set out in Article 23(4), second paragraph, of the 2001 Directive; Article 23(4), second paragraph, of the 2001 Directive is transposed at regulation 182(5).
- M44** Article 20(8) of the Regulation applies Article 107i of the 2001 Directive, which in turn applies Articles 107j and 107k of the 2001 Directive; Article 107k(2) second paragraph is implemented in regulation 197(3).
- M45** Article 21(1) of the Regulation, first paragraph, cross-refers to obligations set out in Article 104 of the 2001 Directive, implemented in regulation 182 and 185; Article 21(1), second paragraph, and 21(2) of the Regulation are similar in effect to Article 104a of the 2001 Directive, implemented in regulation 183.
- M46** Article 22 of the Regulation cross-refers to obligations set out in Article 106a(1) of the 2001 Directive; Article 106a(1) is implemented in regulation 205.
- M47** Article 28(1) and (2) of the Regulation cross-refers to obligations set out in Articles 107, 107a, 107b and 107c of the 2001 Directive; those Articles are implemented in regulations 185, 186, 187, 188, 191, 192 and 193; Article 28(5) of the Regulation applies Articles 107e to 107g of the 2001 Directive; Article 107g of the 2001 Directive is implemented in regulation 194.
- M48** Article 28a(3) of the Regulation imposes an obligation identical to that set out in the first sentence of Article 107h(3) of the 2001 Directive; Article 107h(3) first sentence is implemented in regulation 190.
- M49** Article 28b(1) of the Regulation cross-refers to prohibitions and obligations set out in Articles 107m, 107n, 107o, 107p and 107q of the 2001 Directive; those Articles are implemented in regulations 198, 199, 200, 201 and 202; Article 107n(1) and the first paragraph of Article 107n(3), implemented in regulation 199(2) and (6), are excluded as they are enforced otherwise than by way of criminal offence.

### <sup>F154</sup>Offences in relation to pharmacovigilance obligations under the Implementing Regulation

- 210A.**—(1) A holder is guilty of an offence if the holder—
- (a) fails to comply with any requirement or obligation contained in a provision of the Implementing Regulation listed in paragraph (2); or
  - (b) provides information which is false or misleading in a material particular to the licensing authority or the EMA pursuant to an obligation in the Implementing Regulation.
- (2) The provisions mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) are—
- (a) Chapter I (pharmacovigilance system master file);
  - (b) Sections 1 and 2 of Chapter II (minimum requirements for the quality systems for the performance of pharmacovigilance activities);
  - (c) Chapter III (minimum requirements for the monitoring of data in the Eudravigilance database);
  - (d) Chapter V (transmission of reports of suspected adverse reactions);
  - (e) Article 32 of Chapter VI (updates of risk management plans);
  - (f) Chapter VII (periodic safety update reports); and
  - (g) Chapter VIII (post-authorisation safety studies).
- (3) Subject to paragraph (4), a person guilty of an offence under this regulation is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation which relates to a breach of Article 34(5) or 36(3) of the Implementing Regulation is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.]

**Textual Amendments**  
**F154** Reg. 210A inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **25**

**Persons liable**

**211.** If an offence under regulation 207(1) (offences) or regulation 210(1)(a) (offences relating to pharmacovigilance obligations under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004) is committed by a person acting as employee or agent, the employer or principal of that person is guilty of the same offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

*Transitional arrangements*

**Transitional arrangements**

**212.** Regulations 182, 186, 188, 191, 192, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202 and 210 are subject to the transitional provisions set out in Schedule 33 (transitional arrangements: pharmacovigilance).

**PART 12**

Dealings with medicinal products

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**  
**C4** Pt. 12 modified (E.W.) (1.10.2015) by [The Nicotine Inhaling Products \(Age of Sale and Proxy Purchasing\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/895\)](#), regs. 1(3), **4(2)**

CHAPTER 1

Interpretation

**Interpretation**

**213.—(1)** In this Part—

[<sup>F155</sup>“clinical commissioning group” means a body established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006;]

“the Common Services Agency” means the Common Services Agency for the Scottish Health Service established under section 10 of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M50</sup>;

<sup>F156</sup> . . . . .

“the dental care professionals register” means the register established and maintained under section 36B of the Dentists Act 1984 <sup>M51</sup>;



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F157</sup>“Council Directive 2005/36/EC” means Council Directive 2005/36/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 7 September 2005 on the recognition of professional qualifications;]

[<sup>F158</sup>“EEA health professional” means [<sup>F159</sup>a person in a relevant European State who is]—

- (a) a doctor of medicine, a nurse responsible for general care, a dental practitioner, a midwife or a pharmacist as those professionals are defined within the meaning of Council Directive 2005/36/EC;
- (b) a professional exercising activities in the health care sector which are restricted to a regulated profession as defined in Article 3(1)(a) of Directive 2005/36/EC; or
- (c) a person of equivalent professional status to a health care professional within the meaning of regulation 8;]

<sup>F160</sup> .....

<sup>F161</sup> .....

“food” includes—

- (a) beverages;
- (b) confectionery;
- (c) articles and substances used as ingredients in the preparation of food; and
- (d) any manufactured substance—
  - (i) to which there has been added any vitamin, and
  - (ii) which is advertised as available and for sale to the general public as a dietary supplement;

“health authority” means—

- (a) <sup>F162</sup> .....
- (b) in relation to Wales, a Local Health Board established under section 11 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 <sup>M52</sup>;
- (c) in relation to Scotland, a Health Board constituted under section 2(1)(a) of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M53</sup>; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, the Regional Health and Social Care Board established under section 7 of the Health and Social Care (Reform) Act (Northern Ireland) 2009 <sup>M54</sup>;

“health care” means services for or in connection with the prevention, diagnosis or treatment of disease;

“health prescription” means a prescription issued by a doctor, dentist, supplementary prescriber, nurse independent prescriber, optometrist independent prescriber, [<sup>F163</sup>pharmacist independent prescriber, physiotherapist independent prescriber, podiatrist independent prescriber, therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber][<sup>F164</sup>, paramedic independent prescriber] or community practitioner nurse prescriber under—

- (a) in England, the National Health Service Act 2006;
- (b) in Wales, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
- (c) in Scotland, the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978; and
- (d) in Northern Ireland, the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 <sup>M55</sup>;

<sup>F165</sup> .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“independent clinic”—

- (a) in relation to England, means an establishment of either of the following kinds—
  - (i) a walk-in centre, in which one or more medical practitioners provides services of a kind which, if provided in pursuance of the National Health Services Act 2006, would be provided as primary medical services under Part 4 of that Act, or
  - (ii) a surgery or consulting room in which a medical practitioner who provides no services in pursuance of the National Health Services Act 2006 provides medical services of any kind (including psychiatric treatment), except where such medical services are provided only under arrangements made on behalf of the patients by—
    - (aa) their employer,
    - (bb) a government department or any executive agency of any government department,
    - (cc) a prison or other establishment in which patients are held under custody, other than pursuant to any provision under the Mental Health Act 1983 <sup>M56</sup>, or
    - (dd) an insurance provider with whom the patients hold an insurance policy, other than an insurance policy which is solely or primarily intended to provide benefits in connection with the diagnosis or treatment of physical or mental illness, disability or infirmity,

and where two or more medical practitioners use different parts of the same premises as a surgery or consulting room, or use the same surgery or consulting room at different times, each of the medical practitioners shall be regarded as carrying on a separate independent clinic unless they practise together;
- (b) in relation to Wales, has the meaning given by section 2(4) of the Care Standards Act 2000 <sup>M57</sup>;
- (c) in relation to Scotland, has the meaning given by section 10F(2) of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M58</sup>; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, has the meaning given by article 2(2) of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 <sup>M59</sup>;

“independent hospital”—

- (a) in relation to England, means a hospital as defined by section 275 of the National Health Service Act 2006 that is not a health service hospital as defined by that section;
- (b) in relation to Wales, has the meaning given by section 2(2) of the Care Standards Act 2000;
- (c) in relation to Scotland, has the meaning given by section 10F(2) of the National Health Act 1978; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, has the meaning given by article 2(2) of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;

“independent medical agency”—

- (a) in relation to England, means an undertaking (not being an independent hospital) which consists of or includes the provision of services by medical practitioners, and the term “undertaking” in this definition includes any business or profession and—
  - (i) in relation to a public or local authority includes the exercise of any functions of that authority, and

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) in relation to any other body of persons, whether corporate or unincorporated, includes any of the activities of that body;
- (b) in relation to Wales, has the meaning given by section 2(5) of the Care Standards Act 2000;
- (c) in relation to Scotland means an undertaking which is neither an independent clinic nor an undertaking comprised in a hospital and which consists of or includes the provision of services, other than in pursuance of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978, by a medical practitioner; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, has the meaning given by article 2(2) of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;

[<sup>F166</sup>“local authority” has the same meaning as in section 2B of the National Health Service Act 2006;]

[<sup>F167</sup>“Maritime and Coastguard Agency” means the executive agency of that name of the Department for Transport;]

“maximum daily dose” or “MDD”, in relation to a product for internal use, means the maximum quantity of the substance contained in the amount of the product that it is recommended should be taken or administered in any period of 24 hours;

“maximum dose” or “MD”, in relation to a product for internal use, means the maximum quantity of the substance contained in the amount of the product that it is recommended should be taken or administered at any one time;

“NHS body” means—

- (a) the Common Services Agency;
- (b) a health authority;
- (c) a special health authority;
- (ca) [<sup>F168</sup>a clinical commissioning group;
- (cb) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;]
- (d) <sup>F169</sup> .....
- (e) an NHS trust; or
- (f) an NHS foundation trust;

“NHS foundation trust” has the meaning given by section 30(1) of the National Health Service Act 2006;

“NHS trust”—

- (a) in relation to England, means an NHS trust established under section 25(1) of the National Health Service Act 2006;
- (b) in relation to Wales, means an NHS trust established under section 18(1) of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
- (c) in relation to Scotland, means an NHS trust established under section 12A of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M60</sup>; and
- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, means a Health and Social Care trust established under Article 10 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 <sup>M61</sup>;

“nursing home” has the meaning given by article 11 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 <sup>M62</sup>;

“parenteral administration” means administration by breach of the skin or mucous membrane;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“patient group direction” or “PGD” means a written direction that relates to the sale or supply and to the administration of a description or class of medicinal product and that—

- (a) is signed—
  - (i) by a doctor or dentist and by a pharmacist, and
  - (ii) by any other person who may be required to sign it in the circumstances specified for its use in any provision of this Part; and
- (b) relates to sale or supply and to administration to persons generally (subject to any exclusions that may be specified in the PGD);

F170 .....  
.....

“prison service” means—

- (a) in relation to England and Wales, a Minister of the Crown exercising functions in relation to prisons (within the meaning of the Prison Act 1952 <sup>M63</sup>);
- (b) in relation to Scotland, the Scottish Ministers exercising functions in relation to prisons (within the meaning of the Prisons (Scotland) Act 1989 <sup>M64</sup>); and
- (c) in relation to Northern Ireland, the Department of Justice exercising functions in relation to prisons (within the meaning of the Prison Act (Northern Ireland) 1953 <sup>M65</sup>);

[<sup>F171</sup>“product subject to special medical prescription” means a prescription only medicine that has been designated as subject to special medical prescription in accordance with paragraph (3);]

[<sup>F172</sup>“Public Health Agency” means the Regional Agency for Public Health and Social Well-being established by section 12 of the Health and Social Care (Reform) Act (Northern Ireland) 2009;

“Public Health England” means the executive agency of that name of the Department of Health;]

“registered chiropodist” means a person who is registered in Part 2 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;

“registered dental hygienist” means a person registered under that title in the dental care professionals register;

“registered dental therapist” means a person registered under that title in the dental care professionals register;

F173 .....  
.....

“registered dispensing optician” means a person whose name is entered in the register of dispensing opticians maintained under section 7(b) of the Opticians Act 1989 <sup>M66</sup> or the register of visiting dispensing opticians from relevant European States maintained under section 8B(1) (b) <sup>M67</sup> of that Act;

“registered occupational therapist” means a person who is registered in Part 6 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;

“registered orthoptist” means a person who is registered in Part 7 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;

“registered orthotist and prosthetist” means a person who is registered in Part 10 of the Health and Care Professions Council register;

F174 .....  
.....

F175 .....  
.....

F176

“registered provider”—

- (a) in England, in relation to an independent hospital, independent clinic, an independent medical agency, a dental clinic or a dental practice means the person who is registered as a service provider under Chapter 2 of Part 1 of the Health and Social Care Act 2008<sup>M68</sup> in respect of regulated activities (within the meaning of that Part) carried on in that hospital, clinic, agency, dental clinic or dental practice;
- (b) in Wales, in relation to an independent hospital, an independent clinic or an independent medical agency, means the person who is registered under Part 2 of the Care Standards Act 2000 as the person who carries on the hospital, clinic or agency;
- (c) in Scotland, in relation to an independent hospital, an independent clinic or an independent medical agency, means the person who is registered under section 10P of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978<sup>M69</sup>; and
- (d) in Northern Ireland, in relation to an independent hospital, an independent clinic, a nursing home or an independent medical agency, means the person who is registered under Part 3 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 as the person who carries on the hospital, clinic, nursing home or agency;

F177

“registered speech and language therapist” means a person who is registered in Part 12 of Health and Care Professions Council register;

“relevant manager”—

- (a) in England, means—
  - (i) a person, other than the registered provider, who is registered under Chapter 2 of Part 1 of the Health and Social Care Act 2008 as the manager of an independent hospital, independent clinic, an independent medical agency, a dental clinic or a dental practice, or
  - (ii) if there is no such person, but the registered provider has appointed a person to manage the hospital, clinic, agency, dental clinic or dental practice, that person;
- (b) in Wales, means—
  - (i) a person, other than the registered provider, who is registered under Part 2 of the Care Standards Act 2000 as the manager of an independent hospital, an independent clinic or an independent medical agency, or
  - (ii) if there is no such person, but the registered provider has appointed a person to manage the hospital, clinic or agency, that person;
- (c) in Scotland, means a person, other than the registered provider, who was identified as an individual who is to manage an independent hospital, an independent clinic or an independent medical agency on the application for registration of that clinic, hospital or agency under section 10P of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978; and
- (d) in Northern Ireland, means—
  - (i) a person, other than the registered provider, who is registered under Part 3 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 as the manager of an independent hospital, an independent clinic, a nursing home or an independent medical agency, or
  - (ii) if there is no such person, but the registered provider has appointed a person to manage the hospital, clinic, nursing home or agency, that person;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“relevant prescriber” means any of the following—

- (a) a doctor;
- (b) a dentist;
- (c) a supplementary prescriber;
- (d) a nurse independent prescriber;
- (e) a pharmacist independent prescriber;
- (f) a community practitioner nurse prescriber;
- (fa) [<sup>F178</sup>a physiotherapist independent prescriber;
- (fb) a podiatrist independent prescriber;
- (fc) a therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber;]
- (fd) [<sup>F179</sup>a paramedic independent prescriber;]
- (g) an optometrist independent prescriber; and
- (h) an EEA health professional;

“repeatable prescription” means a prescription that contains a direction that it may be dispensed more than once;

[<sup>F180</sup>“school” means—

- (a) a maintained school (as defined in section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998);
- (b) a maintained nursery school (as defined in section 22(9) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998);
- (c) an independent school (as defined in section 463 of the Education Act 1996) entered on a register of independent schools kept under section 158 of the Education Act 2002;
- (d) an independent educational institution (as defined in section 92(1) of the Education and Skills Act 2008) entered on a register of independent educational institutions kept under section 95 of that Act;
- (e) a school approved under section 342 of the Education Act 1996 (non-maintained special schools);
- (f) a pupil referral unit (as defined in section 19 of the Education Act 1996);
- (g) an alternative provision Academy (as defined in section 1C(3) of the Academies Act 2010);
- (h) a school as defined in section 135(1) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980; and
- (i) a school as defined in Article 2(2) of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986.]

“sell” means sell by retail (and “sale” has a corresponding meaning);

“special health authority” means—

- (a) in relation to England, a Special Health Authority established under section 28 of the National Health Service Act 2006;
- (b) in relation to Wales, a Special Health Authority established under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
- (c) in relation to Scotland, a Special Health Board constituted under section 2(1)(b) of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978<sup>M70</sup>; and

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) in relation to Northern Ireland, a special health and social care agency established under Article 3 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Special Agencies) (Northern Ireland) Order 1990<sup>M71</sup>;

“supply” means supply in circumstances corresponding to retail sale;

“unit preparation” means a preparation, including a mother tincture, that—

- (a) is prepared by a process of—
- (i) solution,
  - (ii) extraction, or
  - (iii) trituration,
- with a view to being diluted tenfold or one hundredfold, either once or repeatedly, in an inert diluent; and
- (b) is used—
- (i) in that diluted form, or
  - (ii) where applicable, by impregnating tablets, granules, powders or other inert substances,
- for the purpose of being administered to human beings.

(2) In this Part—

- (a) a reference to a product being sold or supplied for the purpose of being administered in accordance with the written directions of a doctor or dentist relating to a person includes a reference to it being supplied in accordance with such directions; and
- (b) a reference to a product being sold or supplied for the purpose of being administered in accordance with a patient group direction includes a reference to it being supplied in accordance with a patient group direction.

[<sup>F181</sup>(3) In this Part any substance or product for the time being specified in Schedule 1, 2 or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 or in Schedule 1, 2 or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002 is designated as a product subject to special medical prescription.]

### Textual Amendments

- F155** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(a)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F156** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(i)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(i)**
- F157** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(ii)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(ii)**
- F158** Words in reg. 213(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(iii)** and words in reg. 213(1) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(iii)**
- F159** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **22(a)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **22(a)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F160** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/490), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(iv)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2014 (S.R. 2014/323), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(iv)**
- F161** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (1.10.2017) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/715), regs. 1, **6** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2017 (S.R. 2017/241), regs. 1, **6**
- F162** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(b)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F163** Words in reg. 213(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)** and words in reg. 213(1) substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)**
- F164** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **5(2)(a)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **5(2)(a)**
- F165** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(c)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F166** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(d)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F167** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/323), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.R. 2015/178), regs. 1, **3(2)(a)**
- F168** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2013) by The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(e)(i)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F169** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(e)(ii)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F170** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(2)(f)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F171** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/490), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(v)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2014 (S.R. 2014/323), regs. 1(2), **4(a)(v)**
- F172** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/323), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.R. 2015/178), regs. 1, **3(2)(b)**
- F173** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **8(2)(b)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **8(2)(b)**
- F174** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (1.4.2018) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **5(2)(b)**
- F175** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **8(2)(c)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **8(2)(c)**
- F176** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **8(2)(d)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **8(2)(d)**



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F177** Words in reg. 213(1) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(e)** and words in reg. 213(1) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(e)**
- F178** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(f)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(f)**
- F179** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(c)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)(c)**
- F180** Words in reg. 213(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **22(b)** and words in reg. 213(1) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **22(b)**
- F181** Reg. 213(3) inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(b)** and reg. 213(3) inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **4(b)**

### Marginal Citations

- M50** 1978 c.29. Section 10(1) was amended by the [Health Services Act 1980 \(1980 c.53\)](#), [Schedule 6 paragraph 2](#). There are other amendments not relevant to these Regulations.
- M51** 1984 c.24. Section 36B was inserted by [S.I. 2005/2011](#), [articles 2\(1\)](#) and 29.
- M52** 2006 c.42.
- M53** 1978 c.29. Section 2(1)(a) was amended by section 28(a)(i) of the [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(1990 c.19\)](#) and section 14(2) of, and paragraph 1 of Schedule 7 to, the [Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 \(1983 c.41\)](#).
- M54** 2009 c.1 (N.I.).
- M55** [S.I. 1972/1265 \(N.I. 14\)](#).
- M56** 1983 c.20.
- M57** 2000 c.14.
- M58** 1978 c.29. Section 10F was inserted by section 108 of the [Public Services Reform \(Scotland\) Act 2010 \(2010 asp 8\)](#).
- M59** [S.I. 2003/431 \(N.I. 9\)](#).
- M60** 1978 c.29. Section 12A was inserted by section 31 of the [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(1990 c.19\)](#), and amended by section 46(1)(a) of the [Health Act 1999 \(1999 c.8\)](#).
- M61** [S.I. 1991/194 \(N.I. 1\)](#), Health and Social Services trusts were renamed Health and Social Care trusts by section 1(3) of the [Health and Social Care \(Reform\) Act \(Northern Ireland\) 2009 \(2009 c.1 \(N.I.\)\)](#). There are other amendments not relevant to this regulation.
- M62** References to a nursing home in these Regulations concern Northern Ireland only.
- M63** 1952 c.52.
- M64** 1989 c.45.
- M65** 1953 c.18 (N.I.). Functions transferred by article 6(1) of, and Schedule 4 to, [S.I. 2010/976](#).
- M66** 1989 c.44; section 7 was amended by [S.I. 2005/848](#), [articles 2](#) and 7(1).
- M67** Section 8B was inserted by [S.I. 2007/3101](#), [regulations 178](#) and 180.
- M68** 2008 c.14.
- M69** 1978 c.29. Section 10P was inserted by section 108 of the [Public Services Reform \(Scotland\) Act 2010 \(2010 asp 8\)](#).
- M70** Section 2(1)(b) was inserted by section 28(a) of the [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(1990 c.19\)](#).
- M71** [S.I. 1990/247 \(N.I. 3\)](#). Special Health and Social Services Agencies were renamed Special Health and Social Care Agencies by section 1(4) of the [Health and Social Care \(Reform\) Act \(Northern Ireland\) 2009 \(2009 c.1 \(N.I.\)\)](#).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER 2

### Sale and supply of medicines

#### *Prescription only medicines*

#### **Sale or supply of prescription only medicines**

**214.**—(1) A person may not sell or supply a prescription only medicine except in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner.

(2) A person may not parenterally administer (otherwise than to himself or herself) a prescription only medicine unless the person is—

- (a) an appropriate practitioner other than an EEA health professional; or
- (b) acting in accordance with the directions of such an appropriate practitioner.

(3) The following are appropriate practitioners in relation to any prescription only medicine—

- (a) a doctor;
- (b) a dentist;
- (c) a supplementary prescriber;
- (d) a nurse independent prescriber; and
- (e) a pharmacist independent prescriber.

(4) A community practitioner nurse prescriber is an appropriate practitioner in relation to a prescription only medicine specified in Schedule 13.

(5) An optometrist independent prescriber is an appropriate practitioner in relation to any prescription only medicine other than—

- (a) a medicinal product that is a <sup>F182</sup>product subject to special medical prescription]; or
- (b) a medicinal product that is for parenteral administration.

<sup>F183</sup>(5A) A podiatrist independent prescriber is an appropriate practitioner in relation to any prescription only medicine unless that medicinal product contains a <sup>F184</sup>product subject to special medical prescription] other than—

- (a) Dihydrocodeine; or
- (b) Temazepam.

(5B) A physiotherapist independent prescriber is an appropriate practitioner in relation to any prescription only medicine unless that medicinal product contains a <sup>F185</sup>product subject to special medical prescription] other than—

- (a) Dihydrocodeine;
- (b) Fentanyl;
- (c) Morphine;
- (d) Oxycodone; or
- (e) Temazepam.]

<sup>F186</sup>(5C) A therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber is an appropriate practitioner in relation to any prescription only medicine unless that medicinal product contains a product subject to special medical prescription other than—

- (a) Codeine;
- (b) Fentanyl;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) Midazolam;
- (d) Morphine;
- (e) Oxycodone;
- (f) Temazepam; or
- (g) Tramadol.]

[<sup>F187</sup>(5D) A paramedic independent prescriber is an appropriate practitioner in relation to any prescription only medicine unless that medicinal product contains a product subject to special medical prescription other than—

- (a) Codeine;
- (b) Fentanyl;
- (c) Midazolam; or
- (d) Morphine.]

(6) An EEA health professional is an appropriate practitioner in relation to any prescription only medicine other than a [<sup>F188</sup>product subject to special medical prescription].

(7) This regulation is subject to Chapter 3 (exemptions).

#### Textual Amendments

- F182** Words in reg. 214(5)(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)** and words in reg. 214(5)(a) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)**
- F183** Reg. 214(5A)(5B) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **26**
- F184** Words in reg. 214(5A) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)** and words in reg. 214(5A) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)**
- F185** Words in reg. 214(5B) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)** and words in reg. 214(5B) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)**
- F186** Reg. 214(5C) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **9** and reg. 214(5C) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **9**
- F187** Reg. 214(5D) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **6** and reg. 214(5D) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **6**
- F188** Words in reg. 214(6) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)** and words in reg. 214(6) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(a)**

#### Prescribing and administration by supplementary prescribers

**215.**—(1) A supplementary prescriber (“S”) may not give a prescription for a prescription only medicine unless S meets conditions A and C.

(2) A supplementary prescriber (“S”) may not—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) parenterally administer a prescription only medicine; or
  - (b) give directions for the parenteral administration of a prescription only medicine,
- unless S meets conditions B and C.
- (3) Condition A is that S is acting in accordance with the terms of a clinical management plan that—
- (a) relates to the patient to whom the product is prescribed;
  - (b) has effect when the prescription is given; and
  - (c) includes the particulars specified in Schedule 14.
- (4) Condition B is that S is acting in accordance with the terms of a clinical management plan that—
- (a) relates to the patient to whom the product is, or is to be, administered;
  - (b) has effect when the product is administered or (as the case may be) the direction is given; and
  - (c) includes the particulars specified in Schedule 14.
- (5) Condition C is that S has access to health records that—
- (a) are the health records of the patient to whom the plan relates; and
  - (b) are used by any doctor or dentist who is a party to the plan.
- (6) This regulation is subject to regulation 216.
- (7) In this regulation—
- “clinical management plan” means a written plan (which may be amended from time to time) relating to the treatment of an individual patient agreed by—
- (a) the patient to whom the plan relates;
  - (b) the doctor or dentist who is a party to the plan; and
  - (c) any supplementary prescriber who is to prescribe, give directions for administration or administer under the plan;
- “health record” has the meaning given by section 68(2) of the Data Protection Act 1998<sup>M72</sup>.

#### Marginal Citations

M72 1998 c.29.

### Exceptions to regulation 215

**216.**—(1) Regulation 215 does not apply if—

- (a) S is a community practitioner nurse prescriber; and
- (b) the prescription only medicine prescribed or administered, or in respect of which S gives directions for administration, is specified in Schedule 13.

(2) Regulation 215(2) does not apply if S is acting in accordance with the directions of another person who is an appropriate practitioner (other than a supplementary prescriber or an EEA health professional) in relation to the prescription only medicine in question.

## Requirements for prescriptions: general

**217.**—(1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a prescription only medicine is not sold or supplied in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner unless the following conditions are met.

- (2) Condition A is that the prescription is signed in ink by the appropriate practitioner giving it.
- (3) Condition B is that the prescription—
  - (a) is written in ink or otherwise so as to be indelible; or
  - (b) in the case of a health prescription which is not for a <sup>F189</sup>product subject to special medical prescription], is written as described in sub-paragraph (a) or by means of carbon paper or similar material.
- (4) Condition C is that the prescription contains the following particulars—
  - (a) the address of the appropriate practitioner giving it;
  - (b) the appropriate date;
  - (c) an indication of the kind of appropriate practitioner giving it;
  - (d) the name and address of the person for whose treatment it is given; and
  - (e) if that person is under 12, that person's age.
- (5) Condition D is that the prescription—
  - (a) is not dispensed after the end of the period of six months beginning with the appropriate date; or
  - (b) in the case of a repeatable prescription—
    - (i) it is not dispensed for the first time after the end of that period, and
    - (ii) it is dispensed in accordance with the directions contained in the prescription.
- (6) Condition E is that, in the case of a repeatable prescription that does not specify the number of times it may be dispensed—
  - (a) it is not dispensed on more than two occasions, or
  - (b) in the case of a prescription for an oral contraceptive, it is not dispensed on more than six occasions or after the end of the period of six months beginning with the appropriate date.
- (7) In this regulation “appropriate date” means, subject to paragraph (8)—
  - (a) in the case of a health prescription, whichever is the later of—
    - (i) the date on which it was signed by the appropriate practitioner giving it, or
    - (ii) a date indicated by the appropriate practitioner as the date before which it should not be dispensed; and
  - (b) otherwise, the date on which the prescription was signed by the appropriate practitioner giving it.
- (8) This regulation—
  - (a) does not apply to a prescription given by an EEA health professional (as to which see regulation 218); and
  - (b) is subject to regulation 219 (electronic prescriptions).

### Textual Amendments

**F189** Words in reg. 217(3)(b) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(b)** and words in reg. 217(3)(b) substituted (N.I.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), 5(2)(b)

**[<sup>F190</sup>Requirements for prescriptions to be dispensed in an EEA state other than the UK**

**217A.—**(1) In this regulation—

“B” means a person who is an appropriate practitioner for the purposes of regulation 214(3) to (5B);

“P” means a person who is the patient of B.

(2) The information specified in paragraph (3) is to be included in any prescription where—

- (a) P requests a prescription that is to be dispensed in an EEA state other than UK; and
- (b) B determines that such a prescription is appropriate.

(3) The specified information is—

- (a) the patient’s—
  - (i) surname,
  - (ii) first names written out in full, and
  - (iii) date of birth;
- (b) the issue date of the prescription;
- (c) B’s—
  - (i) surname,
  - (ii) first names written out in full,
  - (iii) professional qualification,
  - (iv) direct contact details including—
    - (aa) email address,
    - (bb) telephone or fax number with the appropriate international prefix,
  - (v) work address,
  - (vi) confirmation that B works as a health professional in the UK, and
  - (vii) electronic signature or a signature written in ink;
- (d) details about the prescribed product, including where applicable the—
  - (i) common name of the product as defined by Article 1 of the 2001 Directive,
  - (ii) brand name if—
    - (aa) the prescribed product is a biological medicinal product, or
    - (bb) B deems it medically necessary for that product to be dispensed and B’s reasons justifying the use of the branded product,
  - (iii) pharmaceutical formulation (tablet, solution, etc.),
  - (iv) quantity,
  - (v) strength of the medicinal product as defined in Article 1 of the 2001 Directive, and
  - (vi) dosage regimen.

(4) A prescription under this regulation may only be issued by B in relation to those products that B is authorised to prescribe under regulation 214(3) to (5B).]

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F190** Reg. 217A inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), 6 and reg. 217A inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), 6

### Requirements for prescriptions: EEA health professionals

**218.**—(1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a prescription only medicine is not sold or supplied in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner who is an EEA health professional unless the following conditions are met.

[<sup>F191</sup>(2) Condition A is that—

- (a) the prescription is issued in a relevant European State except the United Kingdom; and
- (b) the prescribing EEA health professional is legally entitled to issue a prescription of that kind in the country in which the prescription is issued.]

[<sup>F192</sup>(3) Condition B is that the prescription is signed in ink by the prescribing EEA health professional.]

(4) Condition C is that the prescription is written in ink or otherwise so as to be indelible.

[<sup>F193</sup>(5) Condition D is that the prescription contains—

- (a) the patient's—
  - (i) surname,
  - (ii) first names written out in full, and
  - (iii) date of birth;
- (b) the issue date of the prescription;
- (c) the prescribing EEA health professional's—
  - (i) surname,
  - (ii) first names written out in full,
  - (iii) professional qualification,
  - (iv) direct contact details including—
    - (aa) email address, and
    - (bb) telephone or fax number with the appropriate international prefix,
  - (v) work address, and
  - (vi) name of the relevant member State in which that EEA health professional works; and
- (d) details about the prescribed product, including where applicable the—
  - (i) common name of the product,
  - (ii) brand name if—
    - (aa) the prescribed product is a biological medicinal product, or
    - (bb) the prescribing EEA health professional deems it medically necessary for that product to be dispensed and the EEA health professional's reasons justifying the use of the branded product,
  - (iii) pharmaceutical formulation (tablet, solution, etc.),
  - (iv) quantity,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (v) strength of the medicinal product as defined in Article 1 of the 2001 Directive, and
- (vi) dosage regimen.]
- (6) Condition E is that the prescription—
  - (a) is not dispensed after the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which it is signed by the EEA health professional; or
  - (b) in the case of a repeatable prescription—
    - (i) it is not dispensed for the first time after the end of that period, and
    - (ii) it is dispensed in accordance with the directions contained in the prescription.
- (7) Condition F is that, in the case of a repeatable prescription that does not specify the number of times it may be dispensed—
  - (a) it is not dispensed on more than two occasions; or
  - (b) in the case of a prescription for an oral contraceptive, it is not dispensed on more than six occasions or after the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which it is signed by the EEA health professional.
- (8) This regulation is subject to regulation [<sup>F194</sup>219A (electronic prescriptions: EEA health professionals)].

#### Textual Amendments

- F191** Reg. 218(2) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **23** and reg. 218(2) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **23**
- F192** Reg. 218(3) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(3)** and reg. 218(3) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(3)**
- F193** Reg. 218(5) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(4)** and reg. 218(5) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **7(4)**
- F194** Words in reg. 218(8) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, **3** and words in reg. 218(8) substituted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, **3**

#### Electronic prescriptions

**219.**—(1) This regulation applies to a prescription that is not a health prescription for a [<sup>F195</sup>substance or product for the time being specified in Schedule 1 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 or in Schedule 1 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002].

(2) A prescription only medicine is also sold or supplied in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner other than an EEA health professional if—

- (a) conditions A and B in regulation 217 are not met; but
- (b) the conditions in paragraph (4) of this regulation and conditions C to E in regulation 217 are met.

<sup>F196</sup>(3) .....

(4) The conditions mentioned in [<sup>F197</sup>paragraph (2)(b)] are that the prescription is—

- (a) created in electronic form;



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [<sup>F198</sup>(b) signed with an advanced electronic signature; and
- (c) sent to the person by whom it is dispensed—
- (i) as an electronic communication (whether or not through one or more intermediaries), and
  - (ii) via the electronic prescription service, if it is for a substance or product for the time being specified in Schedule 2 or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 or in Schedule 2 or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002.]

[<sup>F199</sup>(5) In this regulation—

[<sup>F200</sup>“advanced electronic signature” has the meaning given within Article 3(11) of Regulation (EU) No 910/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council on electronic identification and trust services for electronic transactions in the internal market;]

“electronic prescription service” means the service of that name which is managed by the Health and Social Care Information Centre established under section 252 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (the Health and Social Care Information Centre).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F195** Words in reg. 219(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(2\)](#) and words in reg. 219(1) substituted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(2\)](#)
- F196** Reg. 219(3) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(3\)](#) and reg. 219(3) omitted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(3\)](#)
- F197** Words in reg. 219(4) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(4\)\(a\)](#) and words in reg. 219(4) substituted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F198** Reg. 219(4)(b)(c) substituted (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(4\)\(b\)](#) and reg. 219(4)(b)(c) substituted (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- F199** Reg. 219(5) substituted (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(5\)](#) and reg. 219(5) substituted (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(5\)](#)
- F200** Words in reg. 219(5) substituted (22.7.2016) by [The Electronic Identification and Trust Services for Electronic Transactions Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/696\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 3 para. 8\(2\)](#)

#### [<sup>F201</sup>Electronic Prescriptions: EEA health professionals

**219A.**—(1) This regulation applies to a prescription that is not a health prescription for a product subject to special medical prescription.

(2) A prescription only medicine is also sold or supplied in accordance with a prescription given by an EEA health professional if—

- (a) conditions B and C in regulation 218 are not met; but
- (b) the conditions in paragraph (3) of this regulation and conditions A and D to F in regulation 218 are met.

(3) The conditions mentioned in paragraph (2)(b) are that the prescription is—

- (a) created in electronic form;
- (b) signed with an electronic signature; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) sent to the person by whom it is dispensed as an electronic communication (whether or not through one or more intermediaries).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F201** Reg. 219A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, 5 and reg. 219A inserted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, 5

#### *Medicines not subject to general sale*

##### **Sale or supply of medicinal products not subject to general sale**

**220.**—(1) Unless paragraph (2) applies, a person (“P”) may not sell or supply, or offer for sale or supply, a medicinal product that is not subject to general sale.

(2) This paragraph applies if—

- (a) P is a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business;
- (b) the product is sold, supplied, or offered for sale or supply, on premises that are a registered pharmacy; and
- (c) P or, if the transaction is carried out on P's behalf by another person, that other person is, or acts under the supervision of, a pharmacist.

(3) This regulation is subject to Chapter 3.

#### *General sale medicines*

##### **Sale or supply of medicinal products subject to general sale**

**221.**—(1) A person (“P”) may not sell or supply, or offer for sale or supply, a medicinal product that is subject to general sale elsewhere than at a registered pharmacy unless the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the place at which the medicinal product is sold, supplied, or offered for sale or supply, consists of premises of which P is the occupier and which P is able to close so as to exclude the public.

(3) Condition B is that—

- (a) the medicinal product was made up for sale in its immediate and outer packaging elsewhere than at the place at which it is sold, supplied, or offered for sale or supply; and
- (b) the immediate and outer packaging has not been opened since the product was made up for sale in it.

(4) Condition C is that, if the medicinal product is of a kind specified in Schedule 15, it is presented for sale in accordance with the requirements specified in that Schedule for a product of that kind.

(5) This regulation is subject to Chapter 3.

##### **Sale of medicinal products from automatic machines**

**222.** A person may not sell or offer for sale a medicinal product by means of an automatic machine if the product is not subject to general sale.

## CHAPTER 3

### Exemptions

#### *Exemptions relating to supply in specific circumstances*

#### **Exemptions for doctors and dentists etc**

**223.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a doctor or dentist to a patient of that doctor or dentist.

(2) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale, offer for sale, or supply of a medicinal product by a doctor or dentist—

- (a) to a patient of the doctor or dentist, or
- (b) to a person under whose care such a patient is.

(3) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale, offer for sale or supply of a medicinal product in the course of the business of a hospital or health centre, where—

- (a) the product is sold, offered for sale or supplied for the purposes of being administered to a person (whether in the hospital or health centre or elsewhere) in accordance with directions relating to that person; and
- (b) those directions have been given by—
  - (i) a doctor,
  - (ii) a dentist,
  - (iii) a supplementary prescriber,
  - (iv) a pharmacist independent prescriber,
  - (v) an optometrist independent prescriber,
  - [<sup>F202</sup>(vi) a nurse independent prescriber,
  - (vii) a community practitioner nurse prescriber,
  - (viii) a podiatrist independent prescriber, <sup>F203</sup> ...
  - (ix) a physiotherapist independent prescriber] <sup>F204</sup> ...
  - [<sup>F205</sup>(x) a therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber] [<sup>F206</sup>, or
  - (xi) a paramedic independent prescriber.]

(4) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale or supply of a medicinal product to which paragraph (5) applies where—

- (a) the product is sold or supplied by a registered midwife in the course of the registered midwife's professional practice; or
- (b) the product is delivered or administered by a registered midwife on being supplied the product under arrangements made by the Secretary of State or the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety.

(5) The products to which this paragraph applies are—

- (a) medicinal products that are not prescription only medicines;
- (b) prescription only medicines which by virtue of an exemption conferred under regulation 235(1) and 235(3) and Part 1 of Schedule 17 may be sold or supplied by a registered midwife otherwise than in accordance with a prescription given by a doctor or a dentist; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) prescription only medicines which by virtue of an exemption conferred under regulation 235(3) and Part 3 of Schedule 17 may be administered by a registered midwife or a student midwife otherwise than in accordance with a prescription given by a doctor or a dentist.

#### Textual Amendments

- F202** Reg. 223(3)(b)(vi)-(ix) substituted for reg. 223(3)(b)(vi)(vii) (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **27**
- F203** Word in reg. 223(3)(b)(viii) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)(a)** and word in reg. 223(3)(b)(viii) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)(a)**
- F204** Word in reg. 223(3)(b)(ix) omitted (1.4.2018) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(a)** and word in reg. 223(3)(b)(ix) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(a)**
- F205** Reg. 223(3)(b)(x) and preceding word inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)(b)** and reg. 223(3)(b)(x) and preceding word inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)(b)**
- F206** Reg. 223(3)(b)(xi) and preceding word inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(b)** and reg. 223(3)(b)(xi) and preceding word inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(b)**

#### Emergency sale etc by pharmacist: prescriber unable to provide prescription

**224.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business if conditions A to E are met.

(2) Condition A is that the pharmacist by or under whose supervision the prescription only medicine is to be sold or supplied is satisfied that the sale or supply has been requested by a relevant prescriber who by reason of an emergency is unable to provide a prescription immediately.

(3) Condition B is that the relevant prescriber has undertaken to provide the person lawfully conducting the retail pharmacy business with a prescription within the period of 72 hours beginning with the sale or supply.

(4) Condition C is that the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied in accordance with the directions of the relevant prescriber.

(5) Condition D is that the prescription only medicine is not a [F207 product subject to special medical prescription], other than a prescription only medicine that—

- (a) consists of or contains phenobarbital or phenobarbital sodium; and
- (b) is sold or supplied for use in the treatment of epilepsy.

(6) Condition E is that an entry is made in the record kept under regulation 253 within the time specified in that regulation stating the particulars required under paragraph 2 of Schedule 23.

#### Textual Amendments

- F207** Words in reg. 224(5) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(d)** and words in reg. 224(5) substituted (N.I.)

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), 5(2)(d)

### Emergency sale etc by pharmacist: at patient's request

**225.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business if conditions A to E are met.

(2) Condition A is that the pharmacist by or under whose supervision the prescription only medicine is to be sold or supplied has interviewed the person requesting it and is satisfied—

- (a) that there is an immediate need for the prescription only medicine to be sold or supplied and that it is impracticable in the circumstances to obtain a prescription without undue delay;
- (b) that treatment with the prescription only medicine has on a previous occasion been prescribed by a relevant prescriber for the person requesting it; and
- (c) as to the dose which in the circumstances it would be appropriate for that person to take.

(3) Condition B is that for a prescription only medicine shown in column 1 of the following table, the quantity of the product that is sold or supplied does not exceed that shown in column 2 for that prescription only medicine—

<i>Prescription only medicine</i>	<i>Maximum quantity</i>
A prescription only medicine that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) is a preparation of insulin, an aerosol for the relief of asthma, an ointment or cream, and</li> <li>(b) has been made up for sale in a package elsewhere than at the place of sale or supply.</li> </ul>	The smallest pack that the pharmacist has available for sale or supply.
An oral contraceptive.	A quantity sufficient for a full treatment cycle.
An antibiotic for oral administration in liquid form.	The smallest quantity that will provide a full course of treatment.
A controlled drug within the meaning of Schedule 4 or 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 or Schedule 4 or 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002.	Five days' treatment.
Any other prescription only medicine.	30 days' treatment.

(4) Condition C is that the prescription only medicine—

- (a) does not consist of or contain a substance specified in Schedule 18; and
- (b) is not a <sup>F208</sup>product subject to special medical prescription], other than a prescription only medicine that—
  - (i) consists of or contains phenobarbital or phenobarbital sodium, and
  - (ii) is sold or supplied for use in the treatment of epilepsy.

(5) Condition D is that an entry is made in the record kept under regulation 253 within the time specified in that regulation stating the particulars required under paragraph 4 of Schedule 23.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6) Condition E is that the inner or outer packaging of the prescription only medicine is labelled to show—

- (a) the date on which the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied;
- (b) the name, quantity and (unless apparent from the name) the pharmaceutical strength of the prescription only medicine;
- (c) the name of the person requesting the prescription only medicine;
- (d) the name and address of the registered pharmacy from which the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied; and
- (e) the words “Emergency Supply”.

(7) In this regulation “aerosol” means a product that is dispersed from its container by a propellant gas or liquid.

#### Textual Amendments

**F208** Words in [reg. 225\(4\)\(b\)](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [5\(2\)\(e\)](#) and words in [reg. 225\(4\)\(b\)](#) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [5\(2\)\(e\)](#)

#### Emergency sale etc by pharmacist: pandemic diseases

**226.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business if conditions A and B are met.

(2) Condition A is that the supply is made whilst a disease is, or in anticipation of a disease being imminently,—

- (a) pandemic; and
- (b) a serious risk, or potentially a serious risk, to human health.

(3) Condition B is that the pharmacist by or under whose supervision the prescription only medicine is to be sold or supplied is satisfied—

- (a) that treatment with the prescription only medicine has on a previous occasion been prescribed by a relevant prescriber for the person to be treated with it; and
- (b) as to the dose which in the circumstances it would be appropriate for that person to take.

#### Exemption for sale or supply in hospitals

**227.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine—

- (a) in the course of the business of a hospital; and
- (b) for the purpose of being administered (in the hospital or elsewhere) to a particular person in accordance with directions that meet the conditions in paragraph (2).

(2) Those conditions are that the directions—

- (a) are in writing;
- (b) relate to the particular person to whom the prescription only medicine is to be administered; and
- (c) are given by a person who is an appropriate practitioner in relation to that prescription only medicine.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) But such directions may be given by a supplementary prescriber only where the supplementary prescriber complies with regulations 215 (prescribing and administration by supplementary prescribers) and 216 (exceptions to regulation 215) in relation to the directions as if they were a prescription.

(4) This regulation applies regardless of whether the directions comply with regulation 217 (requirements for prescriptions).

### Exemptions relating to prescriptions given by certain health professionals

**228.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a pharmacist where—

- (a) the sale or supply is in accordance with a prescription given by a person listed in paragraph (2) who is not an appropriate practitioner in relation to that prescription only medicine; but
- (b) the pharmacist, having exercised all due diligence, believes on reasonable grounds that the person is such a practitioner.

(2) Those persons are—

- (a) another pharmacist;
- (b) a registered nurse;
- (c) a registered midwife;
- (d) a person whose name is entered in the part of the Health and Care Professions Council register relating to—
  - (i) chiropodists and podiatrists,
  - (ii) physiotherapists, <sup>F209</sup> ...
  - (iii) radiographers: diagnostic or therapeutic; or
  - [<sup>F210</sup>(iv) paramedics; or]
- (e) a registered optometrist.

(3) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a pharmacist where—

- (a) the sale or supply is in accordance with a prescription given by a supplementary prescriber; and
- (b) the pharmacist, having exercised all due diligence, believes on reasonable grounds that the supplementary prescriber has complied with regulation 215.

#### Textual Amendments

**F209** Word in reg. 228(2)(d)(ii) omitted (1.4.2018) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)** and word in reg. 228(2)(d)(ii) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)**

**F210** Reg. 228(2)(d)(iv) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(b)** and reg. 228(2)(d)(iv) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(b)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Exemption for supply by national health service bodies <sup>F211</sup>and local authorities]**

**229.**—(1) Regulations 214(1), 220 and 221 do not apply to the supply of a medicinal product in accordance with condition A or B by—

- (a) the Common Services Agency;
- (b) a health authority or special health authority;
- (c) an NHS trust;
- (d) an NHS foundation trust;
- <sup>F212</sup>(da) a local authority in the exercise of public health functions (within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006); <sup>F213</sup>...
- <sup>F214</sup>(db) Public Health England;
- (dc) Public Health Agency; or]
- <sup>F215</sup>(e) .....
- (f) a person who is not a doctor, dentist or person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business, where the person supplies the product pursuant to an arrangement with <sup>F216</sup>a clinical commissioning group, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or] one of the persons specified in paragraphs (a) <sup>F217</sup>to <sup>F218</sup>(dc)].

(2) Condition A is that the product is supplied for the purpose of being administered to a person in accordance with the written directions of a doctor, dentist, nurse independent prescriber, optometrist independent prescriber<sup>F219</sup>, physiotherapist independent prescriber, podiatrist independent prescriber, therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber]<sup>F220</sup>, paramedic independent prescriber] or pharmacist independent prescriber relating to that person, regardless of whether the directions comply with regulation 217 (requirements for prescriptions).

(3) Condition B is that—

- (a) the product is supplied for the purpose of being administered to a person in accordance with a patient group direction (“PGD”);
- (b) the PGD relates to the supply of a description or class of medicinal product by the person by whom the medicinal product is supplied and has effect at the time at which it is supplied;
- (c) the PGD contains the particulars specified in Part 1 of Schedule 16;
- (d) the PGD is signed on behalf of the person specified in column 2 of the table in Part 2 of that Schedule (“the authorising person”) against the entry in column 1 of that table for the class of person by whom the product is supplied;
- (e) the individual who supplies the product—
  - (i) belongs to one of the classes of individual specified in Part 4 of that Schedule, and
  - (ii) is designated in writing, on behalf of the authorising person, for the purpose of the supply or administration of products under the PGD; and
- (f) when the product is supplied, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in relation to it.

**Textual Amendments**

**F211** Words in reg. 229 heading inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(3)(a)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F212** Reg. 229(1)(da) inserted (1.4.2013) by The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(3)(b)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F213** Word in reg. 229(1)(da) omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/323), regs. 1, **4(2)(a)** and word in reg. 229(1)(da) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.R. 2015/178), regs. 1, **4(2)(a)**
- F214** Reg. 229(1)(db)(dc) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/323), regs. 1, **4(2)(b)** and reg. 229(1)(db)(dc) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.R. 2015/178), regs. 1, **4(2)(b)**
- F215** Reg. 229(1)(e) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(3)(c)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F216** Words in reg. 229(1)(f) inserted (1.4.2013) by The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(3)(d)(i)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F217** Words in reg. 229(1)(f) substituted (1.4.2013) by The National Treatment Agency (Abolition) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/235), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(3)(d)(ii)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F218** Word in reg. 229(1)(f) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/323), regs. 1, **4(2)(c)** and word in reg. 229(1)(f) substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2015 (S.R. 2015/178), regs. 1, **4(2)(c)**
- F219** Words in reg. 229(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/186), regs. 1, **11** and words in reg. 229(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2016 (S.R. 2016/407), regs. 1, **11**
- F220** Words in reg. 229(2) inserted (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/199), regs. 1, **9** and words in reg. 229(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by The Human Medicines (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.R. 2018/64), regs. 1, **9**

### Exemption for supply etc under a PGD to assist doctors or dentists

**230.**—(1) Regulations 214, 220 and 221 do not apply to the supply or administration of a medicinal product by an individual belonging to one of the classes specified in Part 4 of Schedule 16 where—

- (a) the individual supplies or (as the case may be) administers the product to assist a doctor in the provision of NHS primary medical services or a dentist in the provision of NHS primary dental services;
- (b) the product is supplied for the purpose of being administered to a person in accordance with a patient group direction (“PGD”); and
- (c) the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the PGD relates to the supply or (as the case may be) administration of a description or class of medicinal product in order to assist the doctor or dentist in providing the services (whether or not it relates to such supply in order to assist any other doctor or dentist).

(3) Condition B is that the PGD has effect at the time at which the product is supplied or (as the case may be) administered.

(4) Condition C is that the PGD contains the particulars specified in Part 1 of Schedule 16 (but with the omission of paragraph 4 in the case of a PGD relating to administration only).

(5) Condition D is that the PGD is signed—

- (a) by the doctor or dentist; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) where it also relates to supply or administration to assist one or more other doctors or dentists, by one of those doctors or dentists.
- (6) Condition E is that the PGD is signed—
- (a) in the case of—
- (i) NHS primary medical services, or
- (ii) NHS primary dental services in England or Wales,
- on behalf of the health authority<sup>F221</sup>, local authority or National Health Service Commissioning Board] with which a contract or agreement for the provision of those services has been made or which provides those services;
- (b) in the case of dental services in Scotland under the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978<sup>M73</sup>, or general dental services in Northern Ireland, on behalf of the health authority with which an arrangement for the provision of those services has been made; and
- (c) in the case of personal dental services provided under a pilot scheme in Scotland or Northern Ireland, on behalf of the health authority which is a party to the pilot scheme.
- (7) Condition F is that the individual supplying the product is designated in writing for the purpose of the supply or (as the case may be) administration of medicinal products under the PGD—
- (a) by the doctor or dentist; or
- (b) where it also relates to supply to assist one or more other doctors or dentists, by one of those doctors or dentists.
- (8) Condition G is that when the product is supplied or (as the case may be) administered, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in relation to it.

#### Textual Amendments

**F221** Words in reg. 230(6)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 176\(4\)](#) (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

#### Marginal Citations

**M73** 1978 c.29.

### Exemption for supply etc under a PGD by independent hospitals etc

**231.**—(1) Regulations 214, 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale or supply, or administration, of a medicinal product in accordance with the following conditions by—

- (a) an independent hospital;
- (b) an independent clinic;
- (c) an independent medical agency; or
- (d) a nursing home (in Northern Ireland).

(2) Condition A, which applies only to England, is that the registered provider at the hospital, clinic or agency is registered in compliance with section 10 of the Health and Social Care Act 2008<sup>M74</sup> in respect of one or more of the following regulated activities<sup>M75</sup>—

- (a) treatment of disease, disorder or injury;
- (b) assessment or medical treatment of persons detained under the Mental Health Act 1983;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) surgical procedures;
  - (d) diagnostic and screening procedures;
  - (e) maternity and midwifery services; and
  - (f) family planning.
- (3) Condition B is that the product is sold or supplied for the purpose of being administered to a person in accordance with a patient group direction (“PGD”).
- (4) Condition C is that the PGD—
- (a) relates to the sale or supply or (as the case may be) administration of a description or class of medicinal product by the person by whom the medicinal product is sold or supplied or administered; and
  - (b) has effect at the time at which it is sold or supplied.
- (5) Condition D is that the PGD contains the particulars specified in Part 1 of Schedule 16 (but with the omission of paragraph 4 in the case of a PGD relating to administration only).
- (6) Condition E is that the PGD is signed—
- (a) by or on behalf of the registered provider; and
  - (b) if there is a relevant manager for the independent hospital, clinic or medical agency, or nursing home, by that manager.
- (7) Condition F is that the individual who sells or supplies or (as the case may be) administers the product—
- (a) belongs to one of the classes of individual specified in Part 4 of Schedule 16; and
  - (b) is designated in writing for the purpose of the sale or supply or (as the case may be) administration of products under the PGD—
    - (i) by or on behalf of the registered provider, or
    - (ii) if there is a relevant manager for the independent hospital, clinic or medical agency, or nursing home, by that manager.
- (8) Condition G is that when the product is supplied, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in relation to it.

#### Marginal Citations

**M74** [2008 c.14](#).

**M75** Regulated activities for the purposes of section 10 are defined in section 8 of that Act and set out in regulation 3 of, and Schedule 1 to, [S.I. 2010/781](#).

#### Exemption for supply etc under a PGD by dental practices and clinics: England and Wales

**232.**—(1) Regulations 214, 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale or supply, or administration, of a medicinal product in accordance with the following conditions by—

- (a) a dental practice in England and Wales to which paragraph (2) applies; or
  - (b) a dental clinic in England and Wales to which paragraph (2) applies.
- (2) This paragraph applies to a dental practice or dental clinic —
- (a) in England, in respect of which the registered provider is registered in compliance with section 10 of the Health and Social Care Act 2008 in respect of one or both of the following regulated activities—
    - (i) treatment of disease, disorder or injury, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) diagnostic and screening procedures;
- (b) in Wales, in which dental services are provided by private dentists and those dentists are registered with Healthcare Inspectorate Wales in accordance with the Private Dentistry (Wales) Regulations 2008 <sup>M76</sup>, in relation to the services provided by those dentists.
- (3) Condition A is that the product is sold or supplied for the purpose of being administered to a person in accordance with a patient group direction (“PGD”).
- (4) Condition B is that the PGD—
  - (a) relates to the sale or supply or (as the case may be) administration of a description or class of medicinal product by the person by whom the medicinal product is sold or supplied or administered; and
  - (b) has effect at the time at which it is sold or supplied.
- (5) Condition C is that the PGD contains the particulars specified in Part 1 of Schedule 16 (but with the omission of paragraph 4 in the case of a PGD relating to administration only).
- (6) Condition D is that the PGD is signed—
  - (a) in England—
    - (i) by or on behalf of the registered provider, and
    - (ii) if there is a relevant manager for the practice or clinic, by that manager;
  - (b) in Wales—
    - (i) by the private dentist who is treating the person, and
    - (ii) if there is a manager for the practice or clinic, by that manager.
- (7) Condition E is that the individual who sells or supplies or (as the case may be) administers the product—
  - (a) belongs to one of the classes of individual specified in Part 4 of Schedule 16; and
  - (b) is designated in writing for the purpose of the sale or supply or (as the case may be) administration of products under the PGD—
    - (i) in England—
      - (aa) by or on behalf of the registered provider, or
      - (bb) if there is a relevant manager for the practice or clinic, by that manager, or
    - (ii) in Wales, by the private dentist who is treating the person.
- (8) Condition F is that when the product is supplied, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in relation to it.
- (9) In relation to Wales, in this regulation “manager” means—
  - (a) a person who carries on the dental practice or dental clinic; or
  - (b) if there is no such person, a person who manages the practice or clinic.

#### Marginal Citations

M76 2008 No. 1976 (W. 185).

#### Exemption for supply etc under a PGD by person conducting a retail pharmacy business

**233.**—(1) Regulation 214 does not apply to the sale or supply, or administration, of a prescription only medicine by a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business where—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the person sells, supplies or (as the case may be) administers the prescription only medicine pursuant to an arrangement for the supply or administration of prescription only medicines with—
- (i) the Common Services Agency,
  - (ii) a health authority or special health authority,
  - (iii) an NHS trust,
  - (iv) an NHS foundation trust,
  - [<sup>F222</sup>(iva) a clinical commissioning group,
  - (ivb) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
  - (ivc) a local authority in the exercise of public health functions (within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006),]
  - [<sup>F223</sup>(ivd) Public Health England,
  - (ive) Public Health Agency,]
  - <sup>F224</sup>(v) . . . . .
  - (vi) a police force in England, Wales or Scotland,
  - (vii) the Police Service of Northern Ireland,
  - (viii) a prison service,
  - (ix) Her Majesty's Forces, or
  - (x) an authority or person carrying on the business of an independent hospital, an independent clinic, an independent medical agency or, in Northern Ireland, a nursing home;
- (b) the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied for the purpose of being supplied or (as the case may be) is administered to a person in accordance with a patient group direction (“PGD”); and
- (c) the following conditions are met.
- (2) Condition A is that the PGD relates to the sale or supply or (as the case may be) administration of a description or class of medicinal product by the person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business who sells or supplies or (as the case may be) administers the prescription only medicine.
- (3) Condition B is that the PGD has effect at the time at which the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied or (as the case may be) administered.
- (4) Condition C is that the PGD contains the particulars specified in Part 1 of Schedule 16 (but with the omission of paragraph 4 in the case of a PGD relating to administration only).
- (5) Condition D is that the PGD is signed—
- (a) in the case of an arrangement with a body referred to in paragraph (1)(a)(i) [<sup>F225</sup>to (ive) (health bodies), by or on behalf of the person specified in column 2 of Part 2 of Schedule 16 against the entry in column 1 for that body];
  - (b) in the case of an arrangement with a police force in England, Wales or Scotland or with the Police Service of Northern Ireland—
    - (i) by or on behalf of a person specified in column 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 16 against the entry in column 1 for that body, and
    - (ii) by a doctor who is not employed or engaged by, and does not provide services under arrangements made with, any police force or the Police Service of Northern Ireland;
  - (c) in the case of an arrangement with a prison service, by or on behalf of a person specified in column 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 16 against the entry in column 1 for that body;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) in the case of an arrangement with Her Majesty's Forces, by or on behalf of a person specified in column 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 16 against the entry in column 1 for Her Majesty's Forces;
- (e) in the case of an arrangement with an authority or person referred to in paragraph (1)(a)(x) (independent hospitals etc)—
- (i) by or on behalf of the registered provider, and
  - (ii) if there is a relevant manager for the establishment or agency in question, by that manager.
- (6) Condition E is that, where the prescription only medicine is administered by the person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business, the person belongs to one of the classes of individual specified in Part 4 of Schedule 16 and is designated in writing for the purpose of the administration of medicinal products under the PGD—
- (a) in the case of an arrangement with a body referred to in paragraph (1)(a)(i) to (v) (health bodies), on behalf of that body;
  - (b) in the case of an arrangement with a body referred to in paragraph (1)(a)(vi) to (ix) (a police force, the Police Service of Northern Ireland, a prison service and Her Majesty's Forces), by or on behalf of a person specified in column 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 16 against the entry in column 1 for that body; and
  - (c) in the case of an arrangement with an authority or person referred to in paragraph (1)(a)(x) (independent hospitals etc)—
- (i) by or on behalf of the registered provider, or
  - (ii) if there is a relevant manager for the establishment or agency in question, by that manager.
- (7) Condition F is that when the prescription only medicine is supplied or (as the case may be) administered, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in relation to it.

#### Textual Amendments

- F222** Reg. 233(1)(a)(iva)-(ivc) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(5)(a)(i)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F223** Reg. 233(1)(a)(ivd)(ive) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)** and reg. 233(1)(a)(ivd)(ive) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)**
- F224** Reg. 233(1)(a)(v) omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(5)(a)(ii)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F225** Words in reg. 233(5)(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **7(3)** and words in reg. 233(5)(a) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **7(3)**

#### Exemption for supply etc of products under a PGD to assist the police etc

**234.**—(1) Regulations 214, 220 and 221 do not apply to the supply or administration of a medicinal product by an individual belonging to one of the classes specified in Part 4 of Schedule 16 in accordance with the following conditions.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) Condition A is that the individual supplies or (as the case may be) administers the product to assist the provision of health care by, on behalf of, or under arrangements made by, one of the following bodies (“the relevant body”)—

- (a) a police force in England and Wales or in Scotland;
- (b) the Police Service of Northern Ireland;
- [<sup>F226</sup>(c) a prison service;
- (d) Her Majesty’s Forces; or
- (e) a contractor carrying out helicopter search and rescue operations on behalf of the Maritime and Coastguard Agency.]

(3) Condition B is that the product is supplied for the purpose of being administered to a person in accordance with a patient group direction (“PGD”).

(4) Condition C is that the PGD relates to the supply or (as the case may be) the administration of a description or class of medicinal product to assist the provision of health care by, on behalf of, or under arrangements made by, the relevant body.

(5) Condition D is that the PGD has effect at the time at which the product is supplied or (as the case may be) administered.

(6) Condition E is that the PGD contains the particulars specified in Part 1 of Schedule 16 (but with the omission of paragraph 4 in the case of a PGD relating to administration only).

(7) Condition F is that the PGD is signed—

- (a) by or on behalf of a person specified in column 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 16 against the entry in column 1 for the relevant body; and
- (b) where the relevant body is a police force or the Police Service of Northern Ireland, by a doctor who is not employed or engaged by, and does not provide services under arrangements made with, any police force or the Police Service of Northern Ireland.

(8) Condition G is that the individual who supplies the product is designated in writing by or on behalf of the relevant body for the purpose of the supply or (as the case may be) the administration of medicinal products under the PGD.

(9) Condition H is that when the product is supplied, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is in force in relation to it.

#### Textual Amendments

**F226** Reg. 234(2)(c)-(e) substituted for reg. 234(2)(c)(d) (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)** and reg. 234(2)(c)-(e) substituted for reg. 234(2)(c)(d) (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **5(2)**

#### Exemption for sale, supply or administration by certain persons

**235.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply by a person of a prescription only medicine if—

- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 1 of Schedule 17;
- (b) the prescription only medicine is listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
- (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the supply by a person of a prescription only medicine if—
- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 2 of Schedule 17;
  - (b) the prescription only medicine is listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
  - (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.
- (3) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the administration by a person of a prescription only medicine if—
- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 3 of Schedule 17;
  - (b) the product is a prescription only medicine for parenteral administration listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
  - (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.
- (4) Regulation 220 does not apply to the sale, supply or offer for sale or supply by a person of a medicinal product if—
- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 4 of Schedule 17;
  - (b) the product is a prescription only medicine or pharmacy medicine listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
  - (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.
- (5) Regulation 220 does not apply to the supply by a person of a medicinal product if—
- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 5 of Schedule 17;
  - (b) the product is a prescription only medicine or pharmacy medicine listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
  - (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.
- (6) Regulation 221 does not apply to the sale, supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person of a medicinal product if—
- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 4 of Schedule 17;
  - (b) the product is a medicinal product subject to general sale that is listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
  - (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.
- (7) Regulation 221 does not apply to the sale, supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person of a medicinal product if—
- (a) the person is listed in column 1 of Part 5 of Schedule 17;
  - (b) the product is a medicinal product subject to general sale that is listed in the corresponding paragraph in column 2 of that Part; and
  - (c) the condition specified in the corresponding paragraph in column 3 of that Part is met.

*Exemptions in relation to specific kinds of product*

**Products consisting of or containing aloxiprin, aspirin or paracetamol**

**236.** Regulation 214(1) does not apply to a medicinal product that is a prescription only medicine by virtue of paragraph 1(e) of Schedule 1 (non-effervescent aloxiprin, aspirin or paracetamol) if the quantity of the product sold or supplied to a person at any one time does not exceed 100 tablets or capsules.



### **Products consisting of or containing pseudoephedrine salts or ephedrine base or salts**

**237.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to a medicinal product that is a prescription only medicine by virtue of paragraph 1(f) of Schedule 1 (products consisting of or containing pseudoephedrine salts or ephedrine base or salts) if conditions A and B are met.

(2) Condition A is that the product is not sold or supplied at the same time as another medicinal product that consists of or contains—

- (a) in the case of pseudoephedrine salts, ephedrine base or salts; or
- (b) in the case of ephedrine base or salts, pseudoephedrine salts.

(3) Condition B is that the medicinal products sold or supplied to a person at any one time do not in total contain more than—

- (a) in the case of pseudoephedrine salts, 720mg pseudoephedrine salts; or
- (b) in the case of ephedrine base or salts, 180mg ephedrine base or salts.

### **Administration of certain medicines in an emergency**

**238.** Regulation 214(2) does not apply to the administration of a prescription only medicine specified in Schedule 19 where this is for the purpose of saving life in an emergency.

### **Administration of smallpox vaccine**

**239.**—(1) Regulation 214(2) does not apply to the administration of smallpox vaccine if condition A or B is met.

(2) Condition A is that—

- (a) the vaccine has been supplied by, on behalf of, or under arrangements made by—
  - (i) the Secretary of State,
  - (ii) the Scottish Ministers,
  - (iii) the Welsh Ministers,
  - (iv) the Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety, or
  - (v) an NHS body; and
- (b) the vaccine is administered for the purpose of providing protection against smallpox virus in the event of a suspected or confirmed case of smallpox in the United Kingdom.

(3) Condition B is that—

- (a) the vaccine has been supplied by, on behalf of, or under arrangements made by, Her Majesty's Forces; and
- (b) the vaccine is administered for the purpose of providing protection against smallpox virus to members of Her Majesty's Forces or other persons employed or engaged by them.

### **[<sup>F227</sup>Radioactive medicinal products**

**240.**—(1) Regulation 214(2) does not apply to—

- (a) a radioactive substance, administration of which results in a medical exposure; or
- (b) any other prescription only medicine if it is being administered in connection with a medical exposure,

if Conditions A to E are met.

(2) Condition A is that the prescription only medicine is administered by an operator acting in accordance with the procedures and protocols referred to—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in England and Wales and Scotland, in regulation 6(1) and (4) of the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2017 which apply to the exposure;
  - (b) in Northern Ireland, in regulation 6(1) and (4) of the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2018 which apply to the exposure.
- (3) Condition B is that the medical exposure has been authorised by—
- (a) an IRME practitioner; or
  - (b) where it is not practical for an IRME practitioner to authorise the exposure, an operator acting in accordance with written guidelines issued by an IRME practitioner.
- (4) Condition C is that—
- (a) in England and Wales and Scotland, the IRME practitioner mentioned in sub-paragraph (a) or (b) of paragraph (3) is the holder of a licence issued under the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2017;
  - (b) in Northern Ireland, the IRME practitioner mentioned in sub-paragraph (a) or (b) of paragraph (3) is the holder of a licence issued under the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2018.
- (5) Condition D is that the prescription only medicine is not a product subject to special medical prescription.
- (6) Condition E is that, in the case of a prescription only medicine that is not a radioactive substance, it is specified in the protocols referred to in paragraph (2).
- (7) In this regulation—
- “IRME practitioner” means—
- (a) in relation to a medical exposure in England and Wales and Scotland, a practitioner for the purposes of the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2017;
  - (b) in relation to a medical exposure in Northern Ireland, a practitioner for the purposes of the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2018;
- “medical exposure” has the same meaning—
- (a) in England and Wales and Scotland as in the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2017;
  - (b) in Northern Ireland as in the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2018;
- “radioactive substance” has the same meaning—
- (a) in England and Wales and Scotland as in the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2017;
  - (b) in Northern Ireland as in the Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2018.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Reg. 240 substituted (6.2.2018) by [The Ionising Radiation \(Medical Exposure\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1322\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 4 para. 2\(3\)](#) (as substituted (6.2.2018) by [S.I. 2018/121](#), regs. 1(2), [2\(4\)\(b\)](#) (ii))

#### Exemptions in respect of certain herbal remedies

**241.**—(1) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person (“A”) of a herbal medicinal product if—

- (a) the product does not contain a substance listed in Part 1 of Schedule 20;
  - (b) the product does not contain a substance listed in column 1 of Part 2 of that Schedule, unless the product is sold or supplied—
    - (i) in the case of a product for which there is a corresponding entry in column 2 of that Part, in or from containers or packages labelled to show a dose not exceeding the maximum dose or maximum daily dose specified in that entry, and
    - (ii) in the case of a product for which there is a corresponding entry in column 3 of that Part, with the percentage of the substance in the product not exceeding that specified in that entry;
  - (c) the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply, takes place on premises occupied by A and from which A can exclude the public; and
  - (d) the product is for administration to a person (“B”) and A has been requested by or on behalf of B and in B's presence to use A's judgment as to the treatment required.
- (2) A reference in this regulation to a substance listed in either Part of Schedule 20 is a reference to a substance that is obtained from any botanical source listed in either Part.

#### **Exemption for medicinal products at high dilution**

**242.**—(1) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person (“P”) of a medicinal product if—

- (a) the medicinal product is neither for parenteral administration nor a [F228] product subject to special medical prescription];
- (b) paragraph (2) applies to the medicinal product; and
- (c) P has been requested by or on behalf of a particular person and in that person's presence to use P's own judgment as to the treatment required.

(2) This paragraph applies to a medicinal product that consists solely of one or more unit preparations of—

- (a) any substance where the unit preparation has been diluted to at least one part in a million (6x);
- (b) any substance that is listed in Part 1 of Schedule 21 where the unit preparation has been diluted to at least one part in a thousand (3x); or
- (c) any substance that—
  - (i) is the active substance of a medicine that is subject to general sale;
  - (ii) is listed in Part 3 of Schedule 21; or
  - (iii) in the case of a medicinal product for external use only, is listed in Part 4 of Schedule 21,

where the unit preparation has been diluted to at least one part in ten (1x).

(3) Regulation 220 does not apply to the sale, supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person of a medicinal product if—

- (a) the medicinal product is neither for parenteral administration nor a [F229] product subject to special medical prescription];
- (b) paragraph (4) applies to the medicinal product; and
- (c) the conditions in regulation 221 are met.

(4) This paragraph applies to a medicinal product that consists solely of one or more unit preparations of—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) any substance where the unit preparation has been diluted to at least one part in a million million (6c);
- (b) any substance that is listed in Part 2 of Schedule 21 where the unit preparation has been diluted to at least one part in a million (6x); or
- (c) any substance that—
  - (i) is the active substance of a medicine that is subject to general sale;
  - (ii) is listed in Part 3 of Schedule 21; or
  - (iii) in the case of a medicinal product for external use only, is listed in Part 4 of Schedule 21,
 where the unit preparation has been diluted to at least one part in ten (1x).

#### Textual Amendments

- F228** Words in reg. 242(1)(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(g)** and words in reg. 242(1)(a) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(g)**
- F229** Words in reg. 242(3)(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(g)** and words in reg. 242(3)(a) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(g)**

#### Exemption for certain homoeopathic medicinal products

**243.**—(1) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person (“P”) of a medicinal product if—

- (a) a certificate of registration is in force in relation to the product;
- (b) the product is not an excluded product; and
- (c) P has been requested by or on behalf of a particular person and in that person's presence to use P's own judgment as to the treatment required.

(2) Regulation 220 does not apply to the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply by a person (“P”) of a medicinal product if—

- (a) a certificate of registration is in force in relation to the product;
- (b) the product is not an excluded product; and
- (c) the conditions in regulation 221 are met.

(3) In this regulation “excluded product” means a product that is promoted, recommended or marketed—

- (a) for use as an anthelmintic;
- (b) for parenteral administration;
- (c) for use as eye drops;
- (d) for use as an eye ointment;
- (e) for use as an enema;
- (f) for use wholly or mainly for irrigation of wounds or of the bladder, vagina or rectum; or
- (g) for administration wholly or mainly to children being a preparation of aloxiprin or aspirin.

### Other exemptions

#### Exemption in cases involving another's default

**244.**—(1) Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a person if the person, having exercised all due diligence, believes on reasonable grounds that the product is not a prescription only medicine.

(2) Regulation 220 does not apply to the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply of a medicinal product by a person if—

- (a) the person, having exercised all due diligence, believes on reasonable grounds that the product is subject to general sale;
- (b) that belief is due to the act or default of another person; and
- (c) the conditions in regulation 221 are met in relation to the sale or supply, or offer for sale or supply of the product.

#### Exemption in case of forged prescription

**245.** Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine by a pharmacist in accordance with a forged prescription if the pharmacist, having exercised all due diligence, believes on reasonable grounds that the prescription is genuine.

#### Exemption where requirements for prescriptions not met

**246.** Regulation 214(1) does not apply to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine otherwise than in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner if—

- (a) the sale or supply is otherwise than in accordance with such a prescription because a condition in regulation 217, 218<sup>F230</sup>, 219 or 219A] is not met; and
- (b) the person selling or supplying the prescription only medicine, having exercised all due diligence, believes on reasonable grounds that the condition is met.

#### Textual Amendments

**F230** Words in reg. 246(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, 6 and words in reg. 246(a) substituted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, 6

#### Exemption for supply in the event or anticipation of pandemic disease

**247.**—(1) Regulations 214(1), 220 and 221 do not apply to the supply of a medicinal product that meets the following conditions.

(2) Condition A is that the supply is made whilst a disease is, or in anticipation of a disease being imminently—

- (a) pandemic; and
- (b) a serious risk, or potentially a serious risk, to human health.

(3) Condition B is that the supply is accordance with a protocol that—

- (a) is approved by the Ministers [<sup>F231</sup>or an NHS body];
- (b) specifies the symptoms of and treatment for the disease; and
- (c) contains requirements as to the recording of—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) the name of the person who supplies the product to the person to be treated (“the patient”) or to a person acting on the patient's behalf, and
- (ii) evidence that the product was supplied to the patient or to a person acting on the patient's behalf.

[<sup>F232</sup>(4) A function of the Ministers under this regulation may be exercised by either of them acting alone or both of them acting jointly (and the reference in this regulation to “the Ministers” is to be read accordingly).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F231** Words in reg. 247(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(6)(a)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

**F232** Reg. 247(4) inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(6)(b)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

#### Exemption for certain collection and delivery arrangements

**248.**—(1) Regulations 220 and 221 do not apply to the supply of a medicinal product on premises that are not a registered pharmacy where the supply—

- (a) is in accordance with a prescription issued by a doctor, dentist, nurse independent prescriber, pharmacist independent prescriber<sup>F233</sup>, physiotherapist independent prescriber, podiatrist independent prescriber, therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber<sup>F234</sup>, paramedic independent prescriber] or optometrist independent prescriber; and
- (b) forms part of a collection and delivery arrangement used by a person who lawfully conducts a retail pharmacy business.

(2) In this regulation “collection and delivery arrangement” means an arrangement whereby a person may—

- (a) take or send a prescription given by a doctor, dentist, nurse independent prescriber, pharmacist independent prescriber<sup>F235</sup>, physiotherapist independent prescriber, podiatrist independent prescriber, therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber<sup>F236</sup>, paramedic independent prescriber] or optometrist independent prescriber to premises other than a registered pharmacy and which are capable of being closed by the occupier to exclude the public; and
- (b) collect or have collected on his or her behalf from such premises a medicinal product prepared or dispensed in accordance with such a prescription at a registered pharmacy by or under the supervision of a pharmacist.

#### Textual Amendments

**F233** Words in reg. 248(1)(a) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **12(2)** and words in reg. 248(1)(a) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **12(2)**

**F234** Words in reg. 248(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)** and words in reg. 248(1)(a) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)**

- F235** Words in reg. 248(2)(a) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **12(3)** and words in reg. 248(2)(a) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **12(3)**
- F236** Words in reg. 248(2)(a) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **10(3)** and words in reg. 248(2)(a) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **10(3)**

## CHAPTER 4

### Miscellaneous provisions, offences and disqualification

#### *Miscellaneous provisions*

#### **Restrictions on persons to be supplied with medicinal products**

**249.**—(1) The holder of an authorisation of the kind referred to in paragraph (2) may not sell a prescription only medicine or a pharmacy medicine by way of wholesale dealing to a person who does not fall within a class specified in Schedule 22.

(2) Those authorisations are—

- (a) a marketing authorisation;
- (b) a certificate of registration;
- (c) a traditional herbal registration; and
- (d) an Article 126a authorisation.

(3) A person may not, in the course of a business consisting (wholly or partly) of manufacturing medicinal products or of selling medicinal products by way of wholesale dealing, sell a prescription only medicine or a pharmacy medicine by way of wholesale dealing to a person who does not fall within a class specified in Schedule 22.

(4) This regulation is subject to regulation 250.

#### **Exceptions to regulation 249**

**250.**—(1) This regulation makes provision for exceptions to regulation 249.

(2) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing a pharmacy medicine which is for the purpose of being administered to human beings in the course of a business to any person carrying on such a business.

(3) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing a pharmacy medicine to which a general sale exemption applies to any person who by virtue of that exemption may sell the pharmacy medicine by retail, or supply it in circumstances corresponding to retail sale, otherwise than by or under the supervision of a pharmacist.

(4) In paragraph (3) “general sale exemption” means an exemption from regulation 220 conferred by a provision of Chapter 3.

(5) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing to a person specified in column 1 of Parts 1 to 3 of Schedule 17 a prescription only medicine specified in relation to that person in column 2 of Parts 1 to 3 of that Schedule.

(6) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing to a registered optometrist a product that is a prescription only medicine by reason only that it contains one or more of the following substances—

- (a) amethocaine hydrochloride;
- (b) lidocaine hydrochloride;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) oxybuprocaine hydrochloride; or
  - (d) proxymetacaine hydrochloride.
- (7) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing to an additional supply optometrist a product that is a prescription only medicine by reason only that it contains thymoxamine hydrochloride.
- (8) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing to a registered dispensing optician a prescription only medicine that—
- (a) is required for use by a registered optometrist or doctor attending the optician's practice; and
  - (b) contains one or more of the following substances—
    - (i) amethocaine hydrochloride,
    - (ii) chloramphenicol,
    - (iii) cyclopentolate hydrochloride,
    - (iv) fusidic acid,
    - (v) lidocaine hydrochloride,
    - (vi) oxybuprocaine hydrochloride,
    - (vii) proxymetacaine hydrochloride, and
    - (viii) tropicamide.
- (9) A person may sell by way of wholesale dealing to a registered dispensing optician a prescription only medicine that—
- (a) is required for use by the optician in the course of a professional practice as a contact lens specialist; and
  - (b) contains one or more of the following substances—
    - (i) lidocaine hydrochloride,
    - (ii) oxybuprocaine hydrochloride, and
    - (iii) proxymetacaine hydrochloride.
- (10) In this regulation—
- “additional supply optometrist” means a person who is registered as an optometrist, and against whose name particulars of the additional supply speciality have been entered in the relevant register;
- “contact lens specialist” means a person who is a registered dispensing optician and against whose name particulars of the contact lens speciality have been entered in—
- (a) the register of dispensing opticians maintained under section 7(b) of the Opticians Act 1989; or
  - (b) the register of visiting dispensing opticians from relevant European States maintained under section 8B(1)(b) of that Act.

### **Compliance with standards specified in certain publications**

**251.—**(1) A person may not sell a medicinal product that has been demanded by the purchaser by, or by express reference to, a particular name if—

- (a) the name is a name at the head of the relevant monograph; and
- (b) the product does not comply with the standard specified in that monograph.



(2) A person may not sell or supply a medicinal product in pursuance of a prescription given by a doctor or dentist in which the product required is described by, or by express reference to, a particular name if—

- (a) the name is a name at the head of the relevant monograph; and
- (b) the product does not comply with the standard specified in that monograph.

(3) A person may not sell or supply a medicinal product that has been offered or exposed for sale by, or by express reference to, a particular name if—

- (a) the name is a name at the head of the relevant monograph; and
- (b) the product does not comply with the standard specified in that monograph.

(4) If the particular name referred to in paragraph (1), (2) or (3) is that of an active ingredient of the product, the product does not comply with the standard specified in the relevant monograph if, in so far as it consists of that ingredient, it does not comply with that standard.

(5) See regulation 252 for the meaning of certain expressions used in this regulation.

#### **Compliance with standards specified in certain publications: supplementary**

**252.**—(1) Where, together with the particular name specified as described in paragraph (1), (2) or (3) of regulation 251, there was specified a particular edition of a particular publication, “the relevant monograph” in that paragraph means—

- (a) the monograph (if any) headed by the name in that edition; or
- (b) if there is no such monograph, the appropriate current monograph (if any) headed by that name.

(2) Where, together with the particular name specified as described in paragraph (1), (2) or (3) of regulation 251, there was specified a particular publication, but not an edition of that publication, “the relevant monograph” in that paragraph means—

- (a) the monograph (if any) headed by the name in the current edition; or
- (b) if there is no monograph of the kind mentioned in sub-paragraph (a), the appropriate current monograph (if any) headed by that name; or
- (c) if there is no monograph of the kinds mentioned in sub-paragraphs (a) or (b), the monograph headed by that name in the latest edition of the specified publication that contained a monograph headed by that name.

(3) Where no publication was specified with the particular name specified as described in paragraph (1), (2) or (3) of regulation 251, “the relevant monograph” in that paragraph means the appropriate current monograph (if any).

(4) In this regulation “publication” means—

- (a) the British Pharmacopoeia; or
- (b) a compendium published under Part 15 (British Pharmacopoeia).

(5) In this regulation “current” means current at the time when the medicinal product is demanded, described in a prescription or offered or exposed for sale (as the case may be).

(6) In this regulation “the appropriate current monograph”, in relation to a particular name, means—

- (a) the monograph (if any) headed by that name in the current edition of the British Pharmacopoeia; or
- (b) if there is no such monograph, the monograph (if any) headed by that name in the current edition of a compendium published under Part 15 (British Pharmacopoeia).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(7) For the purposes of regulation 251 and this regulation, any monograph in an edition of a publication must be construed in accordance with any general monograph or notice, or any appendix, note or other explanatory material, that is contained in that edition and applies to that monograph.

### Pharmacy records

**253.**—(1) A person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business must, in respect of every sale or supply of a prescription only medicine, make or cause to be made an entry in a written or computerised record kept for that purpose.

(2) An entry required by paragraph (1)—

(a) must state the particulars specified in Schedule 23; and

(b) subject to paragraph (3), must be made—

(i) on the day of the sale or supply, or

(ii) if that is not reasonably practicable, on the day following that day.

(3) Where the sale or supply is made under regulation 224 (emergency sale etc by pharmacist: prescriber unable to provide prescription), the particulars specified in paragraph 2(e) and (f) of Schedule 23 may be entered on the day that the prescription is received.

(4) Paragraphs (1) to (3) do not apply if any of the following apply—

(a) the sale or supply is in pursuance of a health prescription or a prescription for oral contraceptives;

(b) a separate record of the sale or supply is made in accordance with the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 or the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002;

(c) the sale is by way of wholesale dealing and the order or invoice relating to the sale or a copy of the order or invoice is retained by the person lawfully conducting the retail pharmacy business who makes the sale;

(d) in Scotland, the sale or supply is to a doctor for use in the circumstances referred to in paragraph 45 of Schedule 5 to the National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) (Scotland) Regulations 2004<sup>M77</sup> (provision of drugs, medicines and appliances for immediate treatment or personal administration);

(e) in Northern Ireland, the sale or supply is to a doctor for use in the circumstances referred to in paragraph 47 of Schedule 5 to the Health and Personal Social Services (General Medical Services Contracts) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004<sup>M78</sup> (provision of drugs, medicines and appliances for immediate treatment or personal administration).

(5) A person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business must preserve for a period of two years beginning immediately after the relevant date—

(a) the record kept under paragraphs (1) to (3);

(b) a prescription in pursuance of which a prescription only medicine has been sold or supplied other than—

(i) a health prescription, or

(ii) a prescription for a [<sup>F237</sup>product subject to special medical prescription];

(c) an order or invoice referred to in paragraph (4)(c) or a copy of the order or invoice; and

(d) orders referred to in column 3 of Parts 1 to 3 of Schedule 17, except orders referred to in paragraph 3 of Part 1 of that Schedule.

(6) In paragraph (5) “the relevant date” means—

(a) in relation to sub-paragraph (a), the date on which the last entry is made in the record;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in relation to sub-paragraphs (b), (c) and (d)—
- (i) where the prescription only medicine was sold or supplied in accordance with a repeatable prescription, the date of the final sale or supply pursuant to that prescription, and
  - (ii) otherwise, the date on which the prescription only medicine was sold or supplied.

#### Textual Amendments

**F237** Words in reg. 253(5)(b)(ii) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(h)** and words in reg. 253(5)(b)(ii) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(2)(h)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M77** [S.S.I. 2004/115](#)

**M78** [S.R. \(NI\) 2004 No. 140.](#)

### Prohibitions concerning traceability of treatment with advanced therapy medicinal products

**254.**—(1) A person may not treat a patient with an advanced therapy medicinal product if there is not a system in place for patient and product traceability in relation to such treatment containing sufficient detail to enable the linking of the product to the patient who received it and vice versa.

(2) A person may not treat a patient with an advanced therapy medicinal product if the treatment involves a product which contains human cells or tissues and the traceability system referred to in paragraph (1) is not complementary to, and compatible with, the requirements laid down in—

- (a) Articles 8 and 14 of Directive [2004/23/EC](#), as regards human cells and tissues other than blood cells; and
- (b) Articles 14 and 24 of Directive [2002/98/EC](#), as regards blood cells.

(3) It is a defence to an offence of breach of paragraph (1) or, as the case may be, paragraph (2) if the person who treats a patient was assured in writing before the treatment was given that a system of traceability as described in paragraph (1) or, as the case may be, paragraph (2) was in place in relation to the treatment given by that person.

(4) A person may not give an assurance in writing to a person (“P”) who treats a patient with an advanced therapy medicinal product that a system of traceability as described in paragraph (1) or paragraph (2) is in place in relation to treatment with an advanced therapy medicinal product given by P if no such system is in place.

### Offences relating to dealings with medicinal products

**255.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person breaches any of the following provisions of this Part—

- (a) regulation 214(1) (prohibition on sale etc of prescription only medicine otherwise than in accordance with prescription from appropriate practitioner);
- (b) regulation 214(2) (prohibition on parenteral administration of prescription only medicine otherwise than by or under directions of appropriate practitioner);
- (c) regulation 220 (prohibition on sale etc of medicinal product not subject to general sale otherwise than by or under supervision of pharmacist);
- (d) regulation 249 (prohibition on sale of prescription only medicine or pharmacy medicine by way of wholesale dealing to person not within Schedule 22);

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) regulation 251 (compliance with standards specified in certain publications); or
  - (f) regulation 254 (prohibitions concerning traceability of treatment with advanced therapy medicinal products).
- (2) A person is guilty of an offence if the person—
- (a) is an appropriate practitioner by virtue of regulation 214; and
  - (b) gives a prescription or directions in respect of a medicinal product in relation to which the person is not an appropriate practitioner.
- (3) A person is guilty of an offence if the person gives a prescription or directions or administers a medicinal product without meeting the conditions for doing so that apply to that person by virtue of regulation 215 (conditions to be met by supplementary prescriber).
- (4) A person (“P”) is guilty of an offence if—
- (a) P has in P's possession a medicinal product to which regulation 214(1) applies; and
  - (b) P intends to supply it otherwise than in accordance with a prescription of an appropriate practitioner.
- (5) A person guilty of an offence under any of paragraphs (1) to (4) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.
- (6) A person is guilty of an offence if the person breaches—
- (a) regulation 221 (prohibition on sale of medicinal product subject to general sale otherwise than in accordance with that regulation); or
  - (b) regulation 222 (prohibition on sale by automatic machine of medicinal product not subject to general sale).
- (7) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph (6) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.
- (8) A person is guilty of an offence if the person breaches regulation 253 (record-keeping requirements for persons carrying on a retail pharmacy business).
- (9) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph (8) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding £400.

### *Disqualification*

#### **Disqualification on conviction**

**256.**—(1) A court before which a person (“P”) is convicted of any offence under regulation 255(8) may order that P is disqualified from using the premises where that offence was committed for a period not exceeding 2 years if the following conditions are met.

- (2) Condition A is that the offence was committed in a retail pharmacy business.
- (3) Condition B is that the period of disqualification relates to the future use of the premises as a retail pharmacy business.
- (4) Condition C is that the enforcement authority has made an application to the court for such an order.
- (5) Condition D is that the court thinks it appropriate to grant an order having regard—
  - (a) to the gravity of the offence of which P has been convicted as mentioned in the preceding subsection;

- (b) to the unsatisfactory nature of the premises; or
  - (c) to any offences under regulation 255(8) of which P has previously been convicted.
- (6) Condition E is that the enforcement authority has not less than 14 days before the date of the hearing given P notice in writing of their intention to apply for such an order.
- (7) If P uses the premises in respect of which an order under this regulation is in force for the purposes of a retail pharmacy business, P shall be guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (8) At any time after the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which an order under this regulation comes into force, P may apply to the court to revoke the order or to vary it by reducing the period of disqualification.
- (9) On any application made under paragraph (8) of this regulation the court may—
- (a) revoke or vary the order if it thinks it proper to do so having regard to all the circumstances of the case, including in particular the conduct of the applicant and any improvement in the state of the premises to which the order relates; or
  - (b) refuse to revoke or vary the order.
- (10) If an application made by P under paragraph (8) is refused, no further application under that paragraph may be made within the period of three months beginning with the date of the refusal.
- (11) The court determining an application under this regulation shall have power to order the applicant to pay the whole or any part of the costs of the application.
- (12) In the application of this regulation to Scotland, for reference to an enforcement authority and to costs there shall be substituted respectively references to the procurator fiscal and to expenses.

## [<sup>F238</sup>PART 12A

### Sale of medicines to the public at a distance

#### Textual Amendments

**F238** Pt. 12A inserted (coming into force in accordance with reg. 1(2) of the amending S.I.) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(2), **28**

#### Interpretation

**256A.**—[<sup>F239</sup>(1)] In this Part—

“common logo” means the common logo that is required to be clearly displayed on websites offering medicinal products for sale at a distance to the public in accordance with the requirements laid down in the implementing acts adopted by the Commission under Article 85c(3) of the 2001 Directive;

“information society services” means information society services as defined in Article 1(2) of Directive [98/34/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 22 June 1998 laying down a procedure for the provision of information in the field of technical standards and regulations and of rules on Information Society services;

“the list” means the list of persons who are entitled to supply medicinal products by information society services that is maintained on the website of the competent authority of a member State in which the person named on the list is established;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“relevant website of the member State” means a website of the competent authority of a member State providing information on—

- (a) the national legislation applicable to the offering of medicinal products for sale at a distance to the public by information society services;
- (b) the differences between member States regarding classification of medicinal products and the conditions for their supply;
- (c) the purpose of the common logo;
- (d) the list of persons offering medicinal products for sale at a distance by means of information society services as well as their website addresses;
- (e) background information about the risks related to medicinal products supplied illegally to the public by means of information society services;
- (f) a hyperlink to the website of the EMA;

“website of the EMA” means the website of the EMA that—

- (a) gives explicit information to the viewer on the relevant website of the member State containing information on persons authorised or entitled to supply medicinal products at a distance in that member State;
- (b) provides information on the purpose of the common logo;
- (c) provides background information about the risks related to medicinal products supplied illegally to the public by means of information society services;
- (d) provides information on Community legislation applicable to falsified medicinal products;
- (e) contains hyperlinks to the relevant website of the member State.

<sup>F240</sup>(2) In this Part, references to selling a medicinal product at a distance to the public by means of information society services, however expressed, include supplying and offering to sell or supply a medicinal product at a distance to the public by means of information society services (and related expressions are to be interpreted accordingly).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F239** Reg. 256A renumbered as reg. 256A(1) (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **13(a)** and reg. 256A renumbered as 256A(1) (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **13(a)**
- F240** Reg. 256A(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **13(b)** and reg. 256A(2) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **13(b)**

#### Person who may sell medicinal products by information society services

**256B.**—(1) A person may not sell a medicinal product at a distance to the public by means of information society services unless that person satisfies the following conditions.

(2) Condition A is that the person is included on the list of persons selling medicinal products at a distance that is published on the relevant website of the member State.

(3) Condition B is that the product to be sold by information society services is covered by an authorisation granted—

- (a) under Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#); or

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) by a competent authority of the member State in which that product is destined to be sold.
- (4) Condition C is that the person selling the medicinal product is authorised or entitled to sell to the public, including by information society services, medicinal products of that type or classification in the member State in which that person is established.
- (5) Condition D is that where the sale is to a member of the public in the United Kingdom, it is in accordance with regulations 214 (sale or supply of prescription only medicines), 220 (sale or supply of medicinal products not subject to general sale) and 221 (sale or supply of medicinal products subject to general sale).
- (6) Condition E is that the person selling the medicinal product has given a valid notification to the competent authority in a member State in which the person is established.
- (7) Condition F is that the person selling medicinal products at a distance complies with the relevant provisions of the Electronic Commerce (EC Directive) Regulations 2002.
- (8) A person has not given a valid notification for the purposes of paragraph (6) if—
- (a) that person is not included on the list;
  - (b) <sup>F241</sup>that person's entry on the list] is suspended by the competent authority of a member State; or
  - (c) the competent authority of a member State has been notified under regulation 256E(b) to remove that person from the list.

#### Textual Amendments

**F241** Words in reg. 256B(8)(b) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, 14 and words in reg. 256B(8)(b) substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, 14

#### Notification requirements for sellers of medicinal products at a distance

**256C.**—(1) The competent authority of a member State may not enter a person's details on the list unless it has been notified in accordance with paragraphs to (5).

- (2) The notification must include—
- (a) the name or corporate name of the person to be listed;
  - (b) information about—
    - (i) that person's permanent address from which the activity of selling medicinal products by information society services is to be carried out,
    - (ii) the commencement date of the activity of selling medicinal products by information society services,
    - (iii) the address of the website used for the purposes of selling medicinal products by information society services,
    - (iv) all relevant information necessary to identify the website, and
    - (v) information about the classification of all the medicinal products offered for sale at a distance.
- (3) The notification shall—
- (a) be in English; and
  - (b) unless paragraph (4) applies, in relation to the person whose details are to be entered on the list—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) be signed by that person, and
  - (ii) contain that person's telephone number and e-mail address if this is available.
- (4) Where the notification is made by another person ("A") on behalf of the person whose details are to be entered on the list, the notification shall—
- (a) contain the name and address of A;
  - (b) be signed by A; and
  - (c) contain the telephone number and e-mail address for A if this is available.
- (5) The notification shall contain contact details for the site from which the activity of selling medicinal products by information society services is to be carried out including the—
- (a) site address;
  - (b) name of person who may be contacted; and
  - (c) the telephone number and e-mail address of the person who may be contacted.

#### **Procedure for listing persons who may supply medicinal products at a distance**

**256D.**—(1) If the competent authority of a member State receives a notification under regulation 256C it must accept or refuse to include that person on the list within the period of 90 days beginning immediately after the day on which the notification is received by the authority.

(2) Paragraph (1) applies only if the requirements of regulation 256C(2) have been met.

(3) Before determining if a person can be included on the list, the competent authority of a member State may require the person giving the notification to provide such information as that competent authority thinks necessary, within the period specified by that competent authority.

(4) If a notice under paragraph (3) requires the person giving the notification to provide the competent authority of a member State with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (1).

(5) In paragraph (4), the "information period" means the period—

- (a) beginning with the day on which the notice is given, and
- (b) ending with the day on which—
  - (i) the competent authority of a member State receives the information; or
  - (ii) the person from whom the information is requested shows to the satisfaction of the competent authority of a member State that the information cannot be provided.

(6) The competent authority of a member State must give the person giving the notification a notice stating reasons for its decision in any case where—

- (a) the competent authority of a member State refuses to include the person giving the notification on the list; or
- (b) if the competent authority of a member State lists the person giving the notification otherwise that in accordance with the information supplied in the notification.

#### **Removal of a person's entry from the list**

**256E.** The competent authority of a member State may remove a person's entry from the list if—

- (a) regulation [F242256I(1)(c)] applies; or
- (b) a notification to remove the entry is received from the person on the list.



### Textual Amendments

**F242** Word in reg. 256E(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, 8 and word in reg. 256E(a) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, 8

### Provision of information to the competent authority of a member State

**256F.**—(1) A person on the list must immediately inform the competent authority of a member State and, where applicable, the marketing authorisation holder, of medicinal products which that person—

- (a) identifies as;
- (b) knows or suspects; or
- (c) has reasonable grounds for knowing or suspecting,

to be falsified.

(2) The person entered on the list must notify the competent authority of a member State of any change of circumstances which is material as regards that person's entry on the list.

(3) The competent authority of a member State may give a notice to a person on the list, requiring that person to provide information of a kind specified in the notice within the period specified in the notice.

(4) A notice under paragraph (3) may not be given to a person on the list unless it appears to the competent authority of a member State that it is necessary for that competent authority to consider whether that person's entry on the list should be varied, suspended or removed.

(5) A notice under paragraph (4) may specify information which the competent authority of a member State thinks necessary for considering whether the person's entry on the list should be varied, suspended or removed.

### Grant or refusal to list a person

**256G.**—(1) On receipt of a notification from a person to be included in the list—

- (a) the competent authority of a member State must include that person on the list if that person complies with the requirements in regulation 256C(2) to (5); or
- (b) if it considers necessary or appropriate to do so, the competent authority of a member State must refuse to include that person on the list having had regard to—
  - (i) the provisions of these Regulations, and
  - (ii) any EU obligation.

(2) The competent authority of a member State must give a notice stating the reasons for its decision in any case where that competent authority—

- (a) refuses to include a person on the list; or
- (b) includes a person in the list otherwise than in accordance with the notification and that person requests a statement of its reasons.

(3) Where the competent authority of a member State decides to include a person on the list that competent authority must ensure that the relevant website of the member State includes—

- (a) the name or corporate name of the person that is listed; and
- (b) the person's website address in the United Kingdom.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Conditions to be met by a person entered on the list**

**256H.**—(1) A person entered on the list shall not sell a medicinal product at a distance by information society services unless the following conditions are satisfied.

(2) Condition A is that the person entered on the list must comply with regulation 256B.

(3) Condition B is that without prejudice to the information requirements set out in Directive 2000/31/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council on certain legal aspects of information society services, in particular electronic commerce, in the Internal Market, (Directive on electronic commerce), the website used to sell medicinal products at a distance must contain—

- (a) the contact details of the competent authority of a member State which is responsible for maintaining the list on which the person selling products at a distance is included;
- (b) a hyperlink to the relevant website of the Member State.

(4) Condition C is that without prejudice to any implementing Acts adopted by the Commission under Article 85c(3) of the 2001 Directive the website used to sell medicinal products at a distance must contain the common logo which—

- (a) is clearly displayed on every page of the listed person's website that relates to medicinal products offered for sale at a distance; and
- (b) contains a hyperlink to the entry of that person in the list.

### **Power to suspend, vary or remove a person's entry on the list**

**256I.**—(1) The competent authority of a member State may in accordance with regulation 256J—

- (a) suspend a person's entry on the list for such period as the authority thinks fit;
- (b) vary a person's entry on the list; or
- (c) remove a person's entry from the list.

(2) The suspension of person from the list may be—

- (a) total;
- (b) limited to medicinal products of one or more descriptions; or
- (c) limited to medicinal products sold at a distance from specified premises or a specified part of any premises.

(3) The power conferred by this regulation may only be exercised on one or more of the following grounds—

- (a) in relation to any information notified to the competent authority of a member State under regulation 256C as a result of which the person was included in the list—
  - (i) the information so supplied was false or incomplete in a material respect,
  - (ii) a material change of circumstances has occurred in relation to any of the matters stated in the notification;
- (b) the person on the list has materially contravened a condition required to be met by a person entered on the list under regulation 256H; or
- (c) the person on the list has without reasonable excuse failed to supply information to the competent authority of a member State with respect to their notification when required to do so under regulation 256F(3).

### **Procedure where the competent authority of a member State proposes to suspend, vary or remove a person's entry on the list**

**256J.**—(1) This regulation applies where—

- (a) the provisions of regulation 256K do not apply; and
  - (b) the competent authority of a member State proposes to exercise the power in regulation 256I.
- (2) The competent authority of a member State must notify the person on the list in writing of—
- (a) its proposal;
  - (b) the reasons for it; and
  - (c) a specified date on which it is proposed that the suspension, variation or revocation should take effect.
- (3) The specified date in paragraph (2)(c) must be no earlier than 28 days following the date of the notice given by the competent authority of a member State.
- (4) The person to whom notice is given under paragraph (2) may before the date specified in the notice—
- (a) make written representations to the competent authority of a member State with respect to the proposal; or
  - (b) notify the competent authority of a member State that the person wishes that competent authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations.
- (5) If person on the list makes written representations in accordance with sub-paragraph (4)(a) the competent authority of a member State must take those representations into account before making a decision in the matter.
- (6) If the person on the list gives notice of the proposal to review upon oral representation in accordance with paragraph (4)(b)—
- (a) Schedule 5 has effect; and
  - (b) any reference to the licensing authority in Schedule 5 shall be read as a reference to the competent authority of a member State.
- (7) If the competent authority of a member State proceeds to suspend, vary or remove a person's entry on the list in accordance with the provisions of regulation 256I it must give a notice to that person.
- (8) The notice must—
- (a) give particulars of the suspension, variation or removal; and
  - (b) give reasons for the decision to suspend, vary or remove the person's entry on the list.
- (9) Paragraphs (7) and (8) are without prejudice to any requirement of Schedule 5 as to notification.

### **Suspension of a person's entry on the list in cases of urgency**

**256K.**—(1) The competent authority of a member State may immediately suspend a person's entry on the list for a period not exceeding three months where it appears to that competent authority that in the interests of safety it is appropriate to do so.

- (2) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) a person's entry on the list has been suspended under paragraph (1); and
  - (b) it appears to the competent authority of a member State that it is necessary to consider whether the person's entry on the list should be—
    - (i) further suspended or varied, or
    - (ii) removed from the list.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) Where paragraph (2) applies, the competent authority of a member State must proceed as set out in regulation 256I (but this is subject to paragraph (4)).

(4) Paragraph (5) applies where, in circumstances where paragraph (2) applies, the competent authority of a member State proceeds as set out in regulation 256I and any proceedings under that regulation have not been finally disposed of before the end of the period for which the person's entry was suspended under paragraph (1) or further suspended under paragraph (5).

(5) If it appears to the competent authority of a member State to be necessary in the interests of safety to do so, the authority may further suspend the person's entry on the list for a period which (in the case of each further suspension) is not to exceed three months.

(6) In the event that any challenge against a decision under regulation 256I to suspend, vary or remove a person's entry on the list is made on an application under regulation 322(4) (validity of decisions and proceedings), paragraph (5) shall apply, but this is without prejudice to regulation 322(6)(a) (interim order of the High Court).

### **Variation of a person's entry on the list on the application of that person**

**256L.**—(1) This regulation applies if a person entered on the list applies to the competent authority of a member State for a variation of the person's entry on the list.

(2) The application must—

- (a) be in writing;
- (b) specify the variation requested;
- (c) be signed by or on behalf of the applicant; and
- (d) be accompanied by such information as may be required to enable the competent authority of a member State to consider the application.

(3) The competent authority of a member State must vary a person's entry on the list or refuse to vary it within 30 days beginning with the day after the date when that competent authority receives the application.

(4) The competent authority of a member State may give a notice to the applicant requiring the applicant to supply further information in connection with the application within the period specified in the notice.

(5) If a notice under paragraph (4) requires the applicant to provide the competent authority of a member State with information, the information period is not to be counted for the purposes of paragraph (3).

(6) In paragraph (5), the "information period" means the period—

- (a) beginning with the day on which notice under paragraph (4) is given; and
- (b) ending with the day on which the competent authority of a member State receives the information or the applicant shows to that competent authority's satisfaction that the applicant is unable to provide it.

(7) Nothing in this regulation affects the powers conferred by regulations 256I and 256K.

### **Offences: breach of regulations and false information**

**256M.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if the person—

- (a) contravenes regulation 256B(1); or
- (b) offers medicinal products for sale at a distance otherwise than in accordance with the conditions in regulation 256H.

(2) A person is guilty of an offence if the person knowingly gives false information in—

- (a) an application to be entered on the list in accordance with regulation 256C(2);
  - (b) an application for a variation in accordance with regulation 256L(2); or
  - (c) response to a notice under regulation 256L(4).
- (3) A person is guilty of an offence if, without reasonable excuse, the person fails to comply with a notice under regulation 256F(3) or 256L(4).
- (4) A person is guilty of an offence if that person fails to inform the competent authority of a member State—
- (a) of a falsified medicinal product in accordance with regulation 256F(1); or
  - (b) about a material change of circumstances in accordance with regulation 256F(2).
- (5) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under paragraph (4) to show that the person exercised all due diligence to avoid committing the offence.

### Penalties

- 256N.**—(1) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 256M(1), (2) or (4) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under regulation 256M(3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.]

## PART 13

### Packaging and leaflets

#### CHAPTER 1

##### *Requirements for packaging and package leaflets relating to medicinal products*

#### **Packaging requirements: general**

- 257.**—(1) The information specified in Part 1 of Schedule 24 must appear—
- (a) on the outer packaging of a medicinal product; and
  - (b) on the immediate packaging of the product, unless paragraph (2) or (3) applies to the packaging.
- (2) This paragraph applies to immediate packaging if the packaging is in the form of a blister pack and is placed in outer packaging which complies with the requirements of Part 1 of Schedule 24.
- (3) This paragraph applies to immediate packaging if the packaging is too small to display the information required by Part 1 of Schedule 24.
- (4) The information specified in Part 2 of Schedule 24 must appear on immediate packaging to which paragraph (2) applies.
- (5) The information specified in Part 3 of Schedule 24 must appear on immediate packaging to which paragraph (3) applies.
- (6) Information included on the packaging of a product in accordance with this regulation, regulation 261 and Schedule 24 must be easily legible, comprehensible and indelible.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(7) Nothing in this regulation or Schedule 24 applies to a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product.

### **Packaging requirements: specific provisions**

**258.**—(1) In addition to other information required by this Part, the information specified in Part 1 of Schedule 25 must appear on the outer packaging, or, if there is no outer packaging, on the immediate packaging of a medicinal product sold or supplied in accordance with a prescription given by a person who is an appropriate practitioner for the purposes of regulation 214(3) to (6), whether or not the medicinal product in question is a prescription only medicine.

(2) The requirements of paragraph 4 or 6 of Schedule 25, as the case may be, are satisfied in relation to a package containing a number of packages of medicinal products of the same description if the information specified in paragraph 4 or 6 of that Schedule is shown on one or more of those packages.

(3) The information specified in Part 2 of that Schedule must appear on a package which contains a number of packages of medicinal products of the same description, other than special medicinal products, for the purpose of transport, delivery or storage.

(4) But paragraph (3) does not apply to a packing case, crate or other covering used solely for the purposes of transport or delivery of packages of medicinal products, each of which is labelled in accordance with the other requirements of this Part.

(5) In addition to the other information required by this Part, the information specified in Parts 3 and 4 of Schedule 25 must appear on the outer packaging and the immediate packaging of products of the kind specified in those Parts of that Schedule.

(6) Nothing in this regulation or Schedule 25 requires information to appear on—

- (a) a package containing a medicinal product where part of the package is transparent or open, provided that the information required by this regulation and that Schedule is clearly visible through the transparent or open part of the package;
- (b) a paper bag or similar wrapping in which a package that contains a medicinal product and bears information in accordance with the requirements of this regulation and that Schedule is placed at the time of sale or supply;
- (c) a package enclosing a package of a medicinal product for export;
- (d) an ampoule or other container of not more than 10 millilitres' nominal capacity which is enclosed in a package on which information appears in accordance with the requirements of this regulation and that Schedule; or
- (e) a blister pack or similar packaging enclosed in a package on which information appears in accordance with the requirements of Parts 3 and 4 of Schedule 25.

(7) Nothing in this regulation or Schedule 25 applies to a medicinal product—

- (a) which is an anti-viral medicine in the form of a solution to be used for the treatment of a child under the age of one year;
- (b) on the container of which appears—
  - (i) the name of the person to whom the product is to be administered,
  - (ii) the date on which the product is sold or supplied, and
  - (iii) the necessary instructions for proper use; and
- (c) which is sold or supplied for the purpose of treating a disease which is—
  - (i) a serious risk to human health, or potentially a serious risk to human health, and
  - (ii) pandemic or imminently pandemic.

(8) Nothing in this regulation or Schedule 25 applies to a traditional herbal medicinal product or a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product.

### **Packaging requirements: information for blind and partially sighted patients**

**259.**—(1) The name of a medicinal product must also be expressed in Braille format on the outer packaging of the product (or, if there is no outer packaging, on the immediate packaging of the product).

(2) The holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration for a medicinal product must ensure that the package leaflet is made available on request in formats suitable for blind and partially-sighted persons.

(3) Nothing in this regulation applies to a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product.

### **Package leaflets**

**260.**—(1) A package leaflet for a medicinal product must—

- (a) be drawn up in accordance with the summary of the product characteristics; and
- (b) contain all the information specified in Schedule 27 in the order specified in that Schedule.

(2) A package leaflet must be included in the packaging of a medicinal product unless all the information required by Part 1 of Schedule 27 (and, where the product contains paracetamol, the information required by Part 2 of that Schedule) is conveyed on the outer packaging or the immediate packaging of the product.

(3) A package leaflet relating to a medicinal product must be legible, clear and easy to use, and the applicant for, or holder of, a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration relating to the product must ensure that target patient groups are consulted in order to achieve this.

(4) Regulation (5) applies in a case where a package leaflet is not provided under paragraph (2) because all the information required by Schedule 27 is conveyed on the outer packaging or the immediate packaging of the product.

(5) Where this paragraph applies, any requirement of these Regulations that is expressed by reference to a package leaflet shall be taken to refer to the outer packaging or, as the case may be, the immediate packaging of the product.

(6) Nothing in this regulation or Schedule 27 applies to a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product.

### **Use of pictures and symbols etc**

**261.**—(1) The outer packaging and the package leaflet of a medicinal product may include—

- (a) symbols, diagrams or pictures designed to clarify information mentioned in Part 1 of Schedule 24 or in Schedule 27; and
- (b) other information, compatible with the summary of the product characteristics, which is useful to the patient.

(2) Symbols, diagrams, pictures or additional information included in accordance with this regulation must not include any element of a promotional nature.

(3) Nothing in this regulation applies to a registrable homoeopathic product.

### **Labelling requirements for radionuclides**

**262.**—(1) Where a medicinal product contains radionuclides—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the carton and the container of the product must be labelled in accordance with the regulations for the safe transport of radioactive materials laid down by the International Atomic Energy Agency; and
  - (b) the labelling on the shielding and the vial must comply with the remaining provisions of this regulation.
- (2) The label on the shielding must—
- (a) include the information specified in Part 1 of Schedule 24;
  - (b) explain in full the codings used on the vial;
  - (c) indicate, where necessary, for a given time and date, the amount of radioactivity per dose or per vial; and
  - (d) indicate the number of capsules or, for liquids, the number of millilitres per container.
- (3) The label on the vial must include—
- (a) the name or code of the medicinal product, including the name or chemical symbol of the radionuclide;
  - (b) the batch identification and expiry date of the product;
  - (c) the international symbol for radioactivity;
  - (d) the name and address of the manufacturer; and
  - (e) the amount of radioactivity; as mentioned in paragraph 2(c).

### Leaflets relating to radionuclides

- 263.**—(1) The licensing authority must ensure that a detailed instruction leaflet is enclosed with—
- (a) radiopharmaceuticals;
  - (b) radionuclide generators;
  - (c) radionuclide kits; or
  - (d) radionuclide precursors.
- (2) The leaflet must include the information specified in Schedule 27.
- (3) The leaflet must also include—
- (a) any precautions to be taken by the user and the patient during the preparation and administration of the medicinal product; and
  - (b) special precautions for the disposal of the packaging and its unused contents.

### Homoeopathic medicines

**264.**—(1) The outer packaging and immediate packaging and, where a package leaflet is included, the package leaflet of a homoeopathic medicinal product must clearly include the words “homoeopathic medicinal product”.

(2) The outer packaging and immediate packaging and, where a package leaflet is included, the package leaflet of a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product must also include the information specified in paragraph (1) and Part 1 of Schedule 28 and no other information (unless paragraph (5) or (6) applies).

(3) Regulation (4) applies in a case where a package leaflet is not included with a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product.

(4) Unless the context requires otherwise, any requirement of these Regulations that is expressed by reference to a package leaflet shall be taken to refer to—



- (a) the outer packaging or the immediate packaging of the product; or
- (b) in a case to which paragraph (5) or paragraph (6) applies, the outer packaging of the product.

(5) Where the immediate packaging of a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product is in the form of a blister pack and is placed in outer packaging which complies with the requirements of this regulation and Part 1 of Schedule 28, the immediate packaging must include the information specified in this regulation and Part 2 of Schedule 28.

(6) Where the immediate packaging of a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product is too small to display the information required by Part 1 of Schedule 28, the immediate packaging must include the information specified in this regulation and Part 3 of Schedule 28.

### **Additional requirements for traditional herbal medicinal products**

**265.**—(1) Schedule 29 imposes additional requirements in relation to traditional herbal medicinal products.

- (2) Nothing in this regulation or Schedule 29 requires information to appear on—
  - (a) a package containing a traditional herbal medicinal product where part of the package is transparent or open, provided that the information required by this regulation and that Schedule is clearly visible through the transparent or open part of the package;
  - (b) a paper bag or similar wrapping in which a package that contains a traditional herbal medicinal product and bears information in accordance with the requirements of this regulation and that Schedule is placed at the time of sale or supply;
  - (c) a package enclosing a package of a traditional herbal medicinal product for export;
  - (d) an ampoule or other container of not more than 10 millilitres' nominal capacity which is enclosed in a package on which information appears in accordance with the requirements of this regulation and that Schedule; or
  - (e) a blister pack or similar packaging, enclosed in a package labelled in accordance with the requirements of this regulation and that Schedule.

### **Language requirements etc**

**266.**—(1) Information given in accordance with the requirements of this Part must be given in English unless either or both of paragraphs (2) and (3) applies.

(2) This paragraph applies in the case of a medicinal product that has been designated as an orphan medicinal product under Regulation (EC) No. 141/2000 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 1999 on orphan medicinal products<sup>M79</sup> where—

- (a) any information specified in paragraph (1) is given in a language of an EEA State other than English; and
- (b) the licensing authority accedes to a reasoned request that the information need not be given in English.

(3) This paragraph applies in the case of a product for which the licensing authority grants an Article 126a authorisation where the licensing authority decides that the information need not be given in English.

- (4) In a case where paragraph (5) applies, the licensing authority may grant either or both of—
  - (a) an exemption from the obligation that certain particulars should appear on the outer and immediate packaging and in the package leaflet of the medicinal product in accordance with this Part; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a full or partial exemption from the obligation that the information included on the outer and immediate packaging and in the package leaflet for the product must be given in English in accordance with paragraph (1).
- (5) This paragraph applies—
  - (a) when a medicinal product is not intended to be delivered directly to the patient; or
  - (b) where there are severe problems in respect of the availability of the medicinal product.
- (6) The licensing authority may make the grant of an exemption in accordance with paragraph (4) subject to measures that it considers necessary to safeguard human health
- (7) Information given in English in accordance with this regulation may be given in several languages in addition to English, provided that the same particulars appear in all the languages used.

#### Marginal Citations

**M79** OJ No L 18, 22.1.2000, p.1, as amended by Regulation (EC) No 596/2009 (OJ No L 188, 18.7.2009, p.14.

#### Submission of mock-ups of packaging and leaflets to licensing authority

**267.**—(1) At the time when a person applies for a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration for a medicinal product, the person must submit to the licensing authority—

- (a) one or more mock-ups of the outer packaging and immediate packaging proposed for the product; and
- (b) a draft package leaflet.

(2) If the application is for a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration, the person must also provide to the licensing authority the results of assessments of the packaging and package leaflet carried out in co-operation with target patient groups.

(3) The licensing authority must refuse the application for a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration if—

- (a) the packaging or the package leaflet does not comply with the requirements of this Part; or
- (b) (in relation to an application for a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration) the information on the packaging or the package leaflet does not accord with the particulars listed in the summary of the product characteristics.

(4) If the holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration for a product wishes to make changes to the packaging or the package leaflet (other than a change connected with the summary of the product characteristics), the proposed change must be submitted to the licensing authority in accordance with paragraph (5).

(5) In the circumstances in paragraph (4) the holder must submit to the licensing authority such of the following as are affected by the proposed change—

- (a) one or more mock-ups of the outer packaging and immediate packaging of the product showing the proposed change; and
- (b) a draft package leaflet showing the proposed change.

(6) If the licensing authority has not refused a proposed change within the period of 90 days beginning with the date of the submission, the applicant may make the change.

## Enforcement and offences

### Offence relating to packaging and package leaflets: holder of authorisation etc

**268.**—(1) This regulation applies to the holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration for a medicinal product who sells or supplies, offers to sell or supply, or possesses for the purpose of sale or supply, a medicinal product to which the authorisation, certificate or registration relates.

- (2) A person to whom this regulation applies is guilty of an offence if—
- a package or package leaflet relating to the product does not comply with the applicable requirements of this Part or Article 28 or 32 of the Paediatric Regulation; or
  - the product is not accompanied by a package leaflet when one is required by virtue of this Part.

### Offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: other persons

**269.**—(1) This regulation applies to a person, other than the holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration for a medicinal product, who, in the course of a business [<sup>F243</sup>carried on by that person,] sells or supplies, or offers to sell or supply the product, or possesses the product for the purpose of sale or supply.

(2) A person to whom this regulation applies is guilty of an offence if the person sells or supplies, or offers to sell or supply, the product, or possesses the product for the purpose of sale or supply, knowing or having reasonable cause to believe—

- that a package or package leaflet relating to the medicinal product does not comply with the applicable requirements of this Part or Article 28 or 32 of the Paediatric Regulation; or
- that the product is not accompanied by a package leaflet when one is required by virtue of this Part.

#### Textual Amendments

**F243** Words in [reg. 269\(1\)](#) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), [regs. 1, 7](#) and words in [reg. 269\(1\)](#) inserted (N.I.) (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), [regs. 1, 7](#)

### Non-compliance with requirements of this Part

**270.**—(1) If the holder of a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration fails to comply with a requirement imposed by this Part in relation to a medicinal product, the licensing authority may give a notice to the holder requiring compliance within three months or such other period (which may be less than three months) as may be specified in the notice.

(2) If the holder fails to comply with the notice, the licensing authority may suspend the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration until the holder complies with the requirements of this Part.

(3) A person who fails to comply with a notice under this regulation is guilty of an offence.

### Offences: penalties

**271.** A person who is guilty of an offence under regulation 268, 269 or 270 is liable—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.

## CHAPTER 2

### *Requirements relating to child safety*

#### **Interpretation**

**272.** In this Chapter—

“appropriate practitioner” means any of the persons described as appropriate practitioners in relation to any prescription only medicine in regulation 214(3), (5) and (6);

“regulated medicinal product” means a medicinal product containing aspirin, paracetamol or more than 24mg of elemental iron, in the form of tablets, capsules, pills, lozenges, pastilles, suppositories or oral liquids, but does not include—

- (a) effervescent tablets containing not more than 25% of aspirin or paracetamol by weight;
- (b) medicinal products in sachets or other sealed containers which hold only one dose;
- (c) medicinal products which are not intended for retail sale or for supply in circumstances corresponding to retail sale; or
- (d) medicinal products which are for export only.

#### **Child resistant containers for regulated medicinal products**

**273.**—(1) Regulated medicinal products sold or supplied otherwise than in accordance with regulation 274 may be sold only in containers which are—

- (a) opaque or dark tinted; and
- (b) child resistant.

(2) For the purposes of these Regulations, containers which are not reclosable are child resistant if they have been evaluated in accordance with, and comply with the requirements of—

- (a) British Standard EN 14375:2003 published by the British Standards Institution on 18th April 2005; or
- (b) any equivalent or higher technical specification for non-reclosable child resistant packaging recognised for use in the European Economic Area.

(3) For the purposes of these Regulations, containers which are reclosable are child resistant if they have been evaluated in accordance with, and comply with the requirements of—

- (a) British Standard EN ISO 8317:2004 published by the British Standards Institution on 11<sup>th</sup> May 2005; or
- (b) any equivalent or higher technical specification for reclosable child resistant packaging recognised for use in the European Economic Area.

#### **Exemptions from regulation 273**

**274.**—(1) Regulation 273 does not apply to the retail sale, or supply in circumstances corresponding to retail sale, of regulated medicinal products in accordance with paragraph (2).

(2) Sale or supply is in accordance with this paragraph if the sale or supply is carried out—

- (a) by or under the supervision of a pharmacist;

- (b) on premises which are a registered pharmacy; and
- (c) either—
  - (i) in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner where it is not reasonably practicable to provide the regulated medicinal products in containers that are both opaque or dark tinted and child resistant, or
  - (ii) at the request of a person who is aged 16 or over and specifically requests that the regulated medicinal products not be contained in a child resistant container.
- (3) Regulation 273 also does not apply to the sale or supply of regulated medicinal products—
  - (a) by a doctor or dentist to a patient, or the patient's carer, for the patient's use;
  - (b) by a doctor or dentist to a person who is an appropriate practitioner, at the request of that person, for administration to a patient of that person; or
  - (c) in the course of the business of a hospital or health centre, where the sale or supply is for the purposes of administration, whether in the hospital or health centre or elsewhere, in accordance with the directions of an appropriate practitioner.

### **Colouring of aspirin and paracetamol products for children**

**275.** The sale or supply of a medicinal product containing aspirin or paracetamol of any colour other than white is prohibited if—

- (a) it is a product for children aged 12 or under; and
- (b) in the case of paracetamol, it is in a solid form (including tablets, capsules, pills, lozenges, pastilles or suppositories).

### **Offences**

**276.—**(1) A person is guilty of an offence if, in the course of a business, the person sells or supplies, or possesses for the purposes of sale or supply—

- (a) a regulated medicinal product in a container which does not comply with the requirements of regulation 273, unless the sale or supply is or would be exempt from those requirements under regulation 274; or
  - (b) a medicinal product containing aspirin or paracetamol the sale or supply of which is prohibited under regulation 275.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 2 years, or to both.

## **PART 14**

### **Advertising**

#### **CHAPTER 1**

##### **General**

### **Interpretation**

**277.—**(1) In this Part—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “court” means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session;
- “injunction” (except in regulation 313) includes an interim injunction;
- “OFCOM” means the Office of Communications;
- “person qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products” includes—
- (a) persons who, in the course of their profession or in the course of a business, may lawfully—
    - (i) prescribe medicinal products,
    - (ii) sell medicinal products by retail, or
    - (iii) supply medicinal products in circumstances corresponding to retail sale; and
  - (b) employees of such persons;
- “publication”, in relation to an advertisement, means the dissemination or issue of that advertisement—
- (a) orally;
  - (b) in writing;
  - (c) by means of an electronic communications network within the meaning of the Communications Act 2003 <sup>M80</sup>; or
  - (d) in any other way,
- and includes causing or procuring such publication by or on behalf of another person, and “publish” has a corresponding meaning.
- (2) In the application of this Part to Scotland—
- (a) references to an injunction are to be read as references to an interdict; and
  - (b) references to an interim injunction are to be read as references to an interim interdict.

#### Marginal Citations

M80 2003 c.21.

### Functions of the Ministers

**278.** A function of the Ministers under this Part may be exercised by either of them acting alone or both of them acting jointly (and references in this Part to “the Ministers” are to be read accordingly).

## CHAPTER 2

### Requirements relating to advertising

#### *General*

### Products without a marketing authorisation etc

**279.** A person may not publish an advertisement for a medicinal product unless one of the following is in force for the product—

- (a) a marketing authorisation;
- (b) a certificate of registration;
- (c) a traditional herbal registration; or
- (d) an Article 126a authorisation.

## General principles

**280.**—(1) A person may not publish an advertisement for a medicinal product with a marketing authorisation, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation unless the advertisement complies with the particulars listed in the summary of the product characteristics.

(2) A person may not publish an advertisement for a medicinal product unless the advertisement encourages the rational use of the product by presenting it objectively and without exaggerating its properties.

(3) A person may not publish an advertisement for a medicinal product that is misleading.

## Duties of authorisation holders and registration holders

**281.**—(1) This regulation applies to a person who holds—

- (a) a marketing authorisation for a medicinal product;
- (b) a certificate of registration for a medicinal product;
- (c) a traditional herbal registration for a medicinal product; or
- (d) an Article 126a authorisation for a medicinal product.

(2) The person must establish a scientific service to compile and collate all information relating to the product (whether received from medical sales representatives employed by that person or from any other source).

(3) The person must ensure that any medical sales representative who promotes the product is given sufficient training, and has sufficient scientific knowledge, to enable the representative to provide information about the product that is as precise and complete as possible.

(4) The person must retain—

- (a) a sample of any advertisement for which the person is responsible relating to the product; and
- (b) a statement indicating the persons to whom the advertisement is addressed, the method of its publication and the date when it was first published.

(5) The person must, if required to do so by notice given to the person by the Ministers, within the period specified in that notice—

- (a) provide a copy of the sample and statement mentioned in paragraph (4) to the Ministers;
- (b) supply such other information as the Ministers may request for the purposes of their functions under this Part; or
- (c) provide such assistance as the Ministers may request for those purposes.

## *Advertising to the public*

### Application of regulations 283 to 292

**282.** Regulations 283 (products for the purpose of inducing abortions) to 292 (exception for approved vaccination campaigns) apply to advertisements wholly or mainly directed at members of the public

### Products for the purpose of inducing abortions

**283.** A person may not publish an advertisement that is likely to lead to the use of a medicinal product for the purpose of inducing an abortion.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Prescription only medicines**

**284.**—(1) A person may not publish an advertisement that is likely to lead to the use of a prescription only medicine.

(2) This regulation is subject to regulation 292 (exception for approved vaccination campaigns).

### **Narcotic and psychotropic substances**

**285.**—(1) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that—

- (a) contains a substance which is listed in any of Schedules I, II or IV to the Narcotic Drugs Convention (where the product is not a preparation listed in Schedule III to that Convention); or
- (b) contains a substance which is listed in any of Schedules I to IV to the Psychotropic Substances Convention (where the product is not a preparation which may be exempted from measures of control in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 of article 3 of that Convention).

(2) This regulation is subject to regulation 292 (exception for approved vaccination campaigns).

### **Material relating to diagnosis**

**286.**—(1) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that states, or implies, that a medical consultation or surgical operation is unnecessary.

(2) A person may not, in particular, publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that offers to provide a diagnosis or suggest a treatment by post or by means of an electronic communications network within the meaning of the Communications Act 2003.

(3) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that might, by a description or detailed representation of a case history, lead to erroneous self-diagnosis.

### **Material about effects of medicinal product**

**287.**—(1) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that suggests that the effects of taking the medicinal product—

- (a) are guaranteed;
- (b) are better than or equivalent to those of another identifiable treatment or medicinal product; or
- (c) are not accompanied by any adverse reaction.

(2) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that uses in terms that are misleading or likely to cause alarm pictorial representations of—

- (a) changes in the human body caused by disease or injury; or
- (b) the action of the medicinal product on the human body.

(3) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that refers in terms that are misleading or likely to cause alarm to claims of recovery.

(4) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that suggests that—

- (a) the health of a person who is not suffering from any disease or injury could be enhanced by taking the medicinal product; or
- (b) the health of a person could be affected by not taking the medicinal product.

(5) Paragraph (4)(b) is subject to regulation 292 (exception for approved vaccination campaigns).



### **Material about status of medicinal product**

**288.** A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that suggests that—

- (a) it is a foodstuff, cosmetic or other consumer product that is not a medicinal product; or
- (b) its safety or efficacy is due to the fact that it is natural.

### **Recommendations by scientists etc**

**289.** A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that refers to a recommendation by—

- (a) scientists;
- (b) health care professionals; or
- (c) persons who because of their celebrity could encourage use of the medicinal product.

### **Advertisements directed at children**

**290.** A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product that contains any material that is directed principally at children.

### **Form and content of advertisement**

**291.—(1)** A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product unless it is presented so that—

- (a) it is clear that it is an advertisement; and
- (b) the product is clearly identified as a medicinal product.

**(2)** A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a medicinal product unless it includes—

- (a) the name of the medicinal product;
- (b) if the medicinal product contains only one active ingredient, the common name of the active ingredient;
- (c) the information necessary for the correct use of the medicinal product; and
- (d) an express and clear invitation to read carefully the instructions on the package or in the package leaflet (as the case may be).

**(3)** This regulation is subject to regulation 296 (exception for advertisements intended as a reminder).

**(4)** Paragraph (2) is subject to regulation 301 (advertisements for registered homoeopathic medicinal products).

### **Exception for approved vaccination campaigns**

**292.** Regulations 284 (prescription only medicines), 285 (narcotic and psychotropic substances) and 287(4)(b) (material about effects of medicinal products) do not apply to an advertisement as part of a vaccination campaign that—

- (a) relates to a medicinal product that is a vaccine or serum; and
- (b) has been approved by the Ministers.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Prohibition of supply to the public for promotional purposes*

#### **Prohibition of supply to the public for promotional purposes**

**293.**—(1) The holder of a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation may not sell or supply a medicinal product for a promotional purpose to a person who is not qualified to prescribe medicinal products.

(2) A person who carries on a medicines business may not sell or supply a medicinal product for a promotional purpose to a person who is not qualified to prescribe medicinal products.

(3) This regulation applies regardless of whether the promotional purpose is that of the seller or supplier or of a third party.

(4) In this regulation “medicines business” means a business that consists in whole or in part of manufacturing, selling or supplying medicinal products.

### *Advertising to persons qualified to prescribe or supply etc*

#### **General requirements**

**294.**—(1) This regulation applies to an advertisement that—

- (a) relates to a medicinal product; and
- (b) is wholly or mainly directed at persons qualified to prescribe or supply such products.

(2) A person may not publish an advertisement to which this regulation applies unless—

- (a) subject to paragraph (3), it contains the particulars set out in paragraphs 1 to 8 of Schedule 30; and
- (b) in the case of a written advertisement, it is in accordance with paragraph 9 of that Schedule.

[<sup>F244</sup>(2A) By way of an exception to paragraph (2), in the case of an advertisement that relates to a pharmacy medicine or a medicinal product subject to general sale, a person may publish the advertisement if it contains—

- (a) the particulars set out in paragraphs 2 to 6 of Schedule 30; and
- (b) the statement “Information about this product, including adverse reactions, precautions, contra-indications, and method of use can be found at:”; accompanied by
- (c) a website address that corresponds to that statement.

(2B) The website at the address mentioned in paragraph (2A)(c) must make available—

- (a) the particulars set out in paragraphs 1 to 8 of Schedule 30; or
- (b) a copy of the summary of the product characteristics.]

(3) In the case of an advertisement that is not a written advertisement, those particulars may alternatively be made available in written form to all persons to whom the advertisement is made available.

(4) This regulation—

- (a) does not apply to an advertisement to which regulation 295 (abbreviated advertisements) applies;
- (b) does not apply to oral representations made by medical sales representatives to which regulation 299 (medical sales representatives) applies; and
- (c) is subject to regulations 296 (exception for advertisements intended as a reminder) and 301 (advertisements for registered homoeopathic medicinal products).

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F244** Reg. 294(2A)(2B) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **24(2)** and reg. 294(2A)(2B) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **24(2)**

### Abbreviated advertisements

- 295.**—(1) This regulation applies to an abbreviated advertisement that—
- (a) relates to a medicinal product; and
  - (b) is wholly or mainly directed at persons qualified to prescribe or supply such products.
- (2) A person may not issue an abbreviated advertisement to which this regulation applies unless it contains—
- (a) the particulars set out in paragraphs 2 to 6 of Schedule 30 (particulars for advertisements to persons qualified to prescribe or supply);
  - (b) the statement “Information about this product, including adverse reactions, precautions, contra-indications, and method of use can be found at:”; accompanied by
  - (c) a web site address that corresponds to that statement; and
  - (d) the name and address of the holder of the marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation for the medicinal product, or the business name and address of the part of the holder's business that is responsible for its sale or supply.
- (3) The web site at the address mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(c) must make available—
- (a) the particulars set out in Schedule 30; or
  - (b) a copy of the summary of the product characteristics.
- (4) In this regulation, “abbreviated advertisement” means an advertisement, other than a loose insert, that—
- (a) does not exceed 420 square centimetres in size; and
  - (b) appears in a publication sent or delivered wholly or mainly to persons qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products.
- (5) This regulation is subject to regulation 301 (advertisements for registered homoeopathic medicinal products).

### Exception for advertisements intended as a reminder

- 296.** Regulations 291 (form and content of advertisement) and 294 (general requirements) do not apply to an advertisement relating to a medicinal product if the advertisement is intended solely as a reminder of the product and consists solely of—
- (a) in the case of a product other than a homoeopathic medicinal product to which a certificate of registration relates, its name, international non-proprietary name or trademark; and
  - (b) in the case of a homoeopathic medicinal product to which a certificate of registration relates, its name, international non-proprietary name, invented name or trademark or the scientific name of the stock or stocks from which it is derived.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Written material accompanying promotions**

**297.**—(1) A person may not as part of the promotion of a medicinal product send or deliver any written material to a person qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products unless the material—

- (a) contains particulars in accordance with all the paragraphs of Schedule 30; and
- (b) states the date on which it was drawn up or last revised.

(2) A person may not include any information in written material to which paragraph (1) applies unless it—

- (a) is accurate;
- (b) is up-to-date;
- (c) can be verified; and
- (d) is sufficiently complete to enable the recipient to form an opinion of the therapeutic value of the product to which it relates.

(3) A person may not include any illustrative material in written material to which paragraph (1) applies unless—

- (a) the illustrative material is accurately reproduced; and
- (b) the written material indicates the precise source of the illustrative material.

(4) In this regulation “illustrative material” means a quotation, table or any other illustrative material taken from a medical journal or other scientific work.

### **Free samples for persons qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products**

**298.**—(1) A person (“the supplier”) may not supply a free sample of a medicinal product to another person (“the recipient”) unless the following conditions are met.

(2) Condition A is that the recipient—

- (a) is qualified to prescribe medicinal products; and
- (b) receives the sample for the purpose of acquiring experience in dealing with the product in question.

(3) Condition B is that the sample is supplied to the recipient—

- (a) on an exceptional basis; and
- (b) in response to a request from, and signed and dated by, the recipient.

(4) Condition C is that, taking the year in which the sample is supplied as a whole, only a limited number of samples of the product in question are supplied to the recipient in that year.

(5) Condition D is that the sample—

- (a) is no larger than the smallest presentation of the product that is available for sale in the United Kingdom;
- (b) is marked “free medical sample – not for resale” or bears a similar description; and
- (c) is accompanied by a copy of the summary of the product characteristics.

(6) Condition E is that the sample does not contain—

- (a) a substance which is listed in any of Schedules I, II or IV to the Narcotic Drugs Convention (where the product is not a preparation listed in Schedule III to that Convention); or
- (b) a substance which is listed in any of Schedules I to IV to the Psychotropic Substances Convention (where the product is not a preparation which may be exempted from measures of control in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 of article 3 of that Convention).

(7) Condition F is that the supplier maintains an adequate system of control and accountability in relation to the supply of free samples.

### **Medical sales representatives**

**299.**—(1) This regulation applies in relation to the promotion by a medical sales representative of medicinal products to persons qualified to prescribe or supply such products.

(2) During each visit for promotional purposes the representative must give to, or have available for, each person visited a copy of the summary of the product characteristics for each product promoted.

(3) The representative must report all information, with particular reference to any adverse reactions, that—

- (a) is received from persons visited for promotional purposes; and
- (b) relates to the use of a product promoted,

to the scientific service established in accordance with regulation 281(2) by the holder of the marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation for the product.

### **Inducements and hospitality**

**300.**—(1) A person may not, in connection with the promotion of medicinal products to persons qualified to prescribe or supply them, supply, offer, or promise any gift, pecuniary advantage or benefit unless it is—

- (a) inexpensive; and
- (b) relevant to the practice of medicine or pharmacy.

(2) A person may not provide hospitality at a meeting or event held for the purposes of the promotion of a medicinal product unless—

- (a) the hospitality is strictly limited to the main purposes of the meeting or event; and
- (b) the person to whom it is provided or offered is a health care professional.

(3) Nothing in this regulation shall prevent any person providing hospitality at an event held for purely professional or scientific purposes provided that—

- (a) the hospitality is strictly limited to the main scientific objective of the event; and
- (b) the person to whom it is provided or offered is a health care professional.

(4) A person qualified to prescribe or supply medicinal products may not solicit or accept any gift, pecuniary advantage, benefit or hospitality that is prohibited by this regulation.

(5) In this regulation “hospitality” includes—

- (a) sponsorship of a person's attendance at a meeting or event; and
- (b) the payment of travelling or accommodation expenses.

(6) This regulation does not apply in relation to measures or trade practices relating to prices, margins or discounts that were in existence on 1st January 1993.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Homoeopathic medicinal products*

#### **Advertisements for registered homoeopathic medicinal products**

**301.**—(1) A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a homoeopathic medicinal product to which a certificate of registration relates unless the advertisement meets the following conditions.

(2) Condition A is that the advertisement does not mention any specific therapeutic indications.

(3) Condition B is that the advertisement does not contain any details other than those mentioned in Schedule 28 (labelling requirements for registrable homoeopathic medicinal products).

(4) Nothing in regulation 291(2) (form and content of advertisement), 294 (general requirements) or 295 (abbreviated advertisements) requires an advertisement relating to a homoeopathic medicinal product to which a certificate of registration relates to contain any detail not specified in Schedule 28.

### *Traditional herbal medicinal products*

#### **Advertisements for traditional herbal medicinal products**

**302.** A person may not publish an advertisement relating to a herbal medicinal product to which a traditional herbal registration relates unless it contains—

- (a) the words “Traditional herbal medicinal product for use in”; followed by
- (b) a statement of one or more therapeutic indications for the product consistent with the terms of the registration; followed by
- (c) the words “exclusively based on long standing use”.

### *Offences*

#### **Offences**

**303.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person commits a breach of a provision in this Chapter.

(2) A breach of a provision in this Chapter includes any—

- (a) contravention by any person of any prohibition in this Chapter; and
- (b) failure by any person to comply with any requirement or obligation in this Chapter.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation other than one to which paragraph (4) applies is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

(4) This paragraph applies to an offence consisting of a breach of—

- (a) regulation 298(1) (free samples);
- (b) regulation 299(2) or (3) (medical sales representatives); or
- (c) regulation 300(4) (solicitation or acceptance of inducements or hospitality).

(5) A person guilty of an offence to which paragraph (4) applies is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

## CHAPTER 3

### Monitoring of Advertising

#### *Scrutiny by Ministers*

#### **Requirement to provide copy advertisement**

**304.**—(1) The Ministers may give a notice in writing under paragraph (2) or (3) to any person appearing to them to be concerned or likely to be concerned with the publication of advertisements relating to medicinal products.

(2) A notice under this paragraph is a notice that requires the person to whom it is given to provide the Ministers within a specified period with a copy of any advertisement that, as at the date of service of the notice, the person has published or proposes to publish and that relates to—

- (a) a specified medicinal product; or
- (b) medicinal products of a specified class or description.

(3) A notice under this paragraph is a notice that requires the person to whom it is given to provide the Ministers with a copy of any advertisement that the person proposes to publish during a specified period and that relates to—

- (a) a specified medicinal product; or
- (b) medicinal products of a specified class or description.

(4) The period specified in a notice under paragraph (3) must not exceed 12 months.

(5) A notice under paragraph (3) must specify the number of days before the proposed publication date of any advertisement by which a copy of the advertisement must be provided to the Ministers.

(6) A notice under paragraph (3) may be withdrawn by the Ministers before the expiry of the specified period.

(7) A notice under paragraph (2) or (3) may require the person to whom it is given not to publish, or further publish, during a specified period any advertisement a copy of which the person is required by the notice to provide to the Ministers.

(8) A notice under paragraph (2) or (3) must give the Ministers' reasons for giving the notice and (if appropriate) for imposing a requirement under paragraph (7).

(9) In this regulation “specified” means specified in the notice.

#### **Invitation to make representations about compatibility**

**305.**—(1) This regulation applies if, having considered an advertisement a copy of which is obtained by them pursuant to a notice given under regulation 304 or by some other means, the Ministers are minded to make a determination under regulation 306 that the advertisement is incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2.

(2) The Ministers may give a notice in writing under this regulation to any person appearing to them to be concerned or likely to be concerned with the publication of the advertisement.

(3) A notice under this regulation must—

- (a) state that the Ministers are minded to make a determination under regulation 306 that the advertisement is incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2;
- (b) give the reasons why they are minded to make the determination;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) state that the person to whom it is given may make written representations to the Ministers within the period of 21 days beginning immediately after the date of the notice as to why the advertisement is compatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2; and
  - (d) refer to the action that may be taken by the Ministers under regulation 306.
- (4) A notice under this regulation may require the person to whom it is given not to publish, or to cease to publish, the advertisement.

### Decision about compatibility

**306.**—(1) This regulation applies if the Ministers have given a notice under regulation 305 (“the original notice”) to a person.

(2) After the end of the period of 21 days referred to in that regulation, the Ministers must give a further notice in writing (“the new notice”) to that person of their determination whether the advertisement is compatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2.

(3) In making that determination, the Ministers must take account of any representations made in accordance with that regulation.

(4) If—

(a) the Ministers make a determination that the advertisement is compatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2; and

(b) the original notice imposed a requirement under regulation 305(4),

the new notice must provide that the requirement no longer applies.

(5) The following provisions apply if the Ministers make a determination that the advertisement is incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2.

(6) The new notice must give the Ministers' reasons for the determination.

(7) If the original notice imposed a requirement under regulation 305(4), the new notice may provide—

(a) that the requirement is to continue to apply; or

(b) that the requirement no longer applies.

(8) If the original notice did not impose a requirement under regulation 305(4), the new notice may require the person to whom it is given not to publish, or to cease to publish, the advertisement.

### Corrective statement

**307.**—(1) This regulation applies if the new notice—

(a) maintains the application of a requirement imposed under regulation 305(4) to cease to publish the advertisement that is the subject of the notice; or

(b) imposes a requirement to cease to publish that advertisement.

(2) The new notice may require the person to whom it is given to publish—

(a) the Ministers' reasons for making the determination that the advertisement was incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2, either in full or in part; and

(b) a corrective statement concerning the advertisement.

(3) A requirement imposed under paragraph (2)—

(a) must specify the time within which publication must take place; and

(b) may specify the form of publication.



## Offences

**308.**—(1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person fails to comply with a requirement imposed by a notice given to that person under—

- (a) regulation 304(2) or (3);
- (b) regulation 305(4) (including such a notice as maintained under regulation 306(7)); or
- (c) regulation 306(8).

(2) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph (1) is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to both.

(3) A person is guilty of an offence if that person fails to comply with a requirement imposed on that person under regulation 307(2).

(4) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

## *Complaints to Ministers*

### **Complaints to Ministers: duty to consider**

**309.**—(1) This regulation applies if a person makes a complaint to the Ministers that an advertisement that has been published, or that is proposed to be published, is incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2.

(2) Subject to the following provisions of this regulation and to regulation 310, the Ministers must consider the complaint unless it appears to the Ministers to be frivolous or vexatious.

(3) The Ministers are not under any duty to consider a complaint if either OFCOM or a body that appears to the Ministers to be a self-regulatory body that deals with complaints about advertisements of the type in question is already dealing with the same complaint.

(4) If the Ministers have served a notice in respect of the advertisement under regulation 305 (whether or not they have taken action in respect of it under regulation 306) they—

- (a) may consider the complaint; but
- (b) are not under any duty to do so.

(5) If the complaint is one that OFCOM would be under a duty to consider if it had been made to OFCOM (see regulation 314) the Ministers must—

- (a) investigate the complaint; or
- (b) seek the agreement of the complainant to the complaint being referred to OFCOM.

(6) If, within a reasonable time of being approached by the Ministers, the complainant agrees to the complaint being referred to OFCOM the Ministers must refer the complaint to OFCOM.

(7) If, within a reasonable time of being approached by the Ministers, the complainant does not agree to the referral of the complaint, the Ministers must consider the complaint.

(8) The Ministers must also consider the complaint if, having referred it to OFCOM, OFCOM—

- (a) decides not to consider the complaint because it appears to OFCOM to be frivolous or vexatious; or
- (b) fails to deal adequately with the complaint within a reasonable time of the referral being made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **Complaints to Ministers: power to refer**

**310.**—(1) This regulation applies if—

- (a) a person (“the complainant”) makes a complaint within paragraph (2) to the Ministers that an advertisement that has been published, or that it is proposed be published, is incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2; and
- (b) the complaint does not appear to the Ministers to be frivolous or vexatious.

(2) A complaint is within this paragraph if—

- (a) it is a complaint that the advertisement contains material prohibited by any of regulations 286 to 290, but is not a complaint that OFCOM would be under a duty to consider if it had been made to OFCOM (see regulation 314); or
- (b) it is a complaint that the advertisement is incompatible with any of the prohibitions imposed by regulations 294 to 300.

(3) The Ministers may—

- (a) select a body that appears to them to be a self-regulatory body that deals with complaints about advertisements of the type in question (“the appropriate body”); and
- (b) seek the agreement of the complainant to the complaint being referred to the appropriate body.

(4) If within a reasonable time of being approached by the Ministers the complainant agrees to the complaint being referred to the appropriate body, the Ministers must refer the complaint to that body.

(5) If within a reasonable time of being approached by the Ministers the complainant does not agree to the referral of the complaint, the Ministers must consider the complaint.

(6) The Ministers must also consider the complaint if, having referred it to the appropriate body—

- (a) the appropriate body decides not to consider the complaint because it appears to the body to be frivolous or vexatious; or
- (b) the Ministers think that the appropriate body has failed to deal adequately with the complaint within a reasonable time of the referral being made.

(7) But if the Ministers have served a notice in respect of the advertisement under regulation 305 (whether or not they have taken action in respect of it under regulation 306)—

- (a) the duties in paragraphs (4) to (6) do not apply; and
- (b) each of those paragraphs has effect as if it conferred a power on the Ministers to act as mentioned in that paragraph.

## *Injunctions*

### **Application for injunction**

**311.**—(1) This regulation applies—

- (a) if the Ministers consider that an advertisement that has been published, or that is proposed to be published, is incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2; and
- (b) whether or not a complaint has been made to the Ministers or to any other person.

(2) The Ministers may apply to the court for an injunction against any person appearing to them to be concerned or likely to be concerned with the publication of the advertisement.

(3) On the making of an application under paragraph (2), the court may grant an injunction prohibiting the publication, or further publication, of the advertisement.

(4) An injunction granted under paragraph (3) may also prohibit the publication, or further publication, of any advertisement in similar terms or likely to convey a similar impression.

(5) The court may not refuse to grant an injunction for lack of evidence that—

(a) the publication, or proposed publication, of the advertisement has given rise to loss or damage to any person; or

(b) the person responsible for the advertisement intended it to be incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2 or failed to exercise proper care to prevent it from being so incompatible.

(6) The court must give its detailed reasons in writing for its decision to grant or refuse an injunction.

(7) Where the court grants an injunction, the Ministers must as soon as is reasonably practicable provide the following in writing to each person against whom the injunction has been granted—

(a) the court's reasons for granting the injunction;

(b) any remedy available in the court; and

(c) the time limit to be met for any remedy to be available.

#### **Application for injunction: accuracy of factual claim**

**312.**—(1) This regulation applies if—

(a) an application for an injunction is made under regulation 311; and

(b) the advertisement in question makes a factual claim about the medicinal product to which it relates.

(2) The court may require any person appearing to it to be responsible for the advertisement to provide evidence as to the accuracy of the factual claim.

(3) The court may impose a requirement under paragraph (2)—

(a) on the application of any party to the proceedings for the injunction; or

(b) of its own motion.

(4) In deciding whether or not to impose a requirement under paragraph (2) the court must have regard to the interests of any person who would be subject to, or affected by, the requirement.

(5) A requirement imposed under paragraph (2) must specify the time within which the evidence must be provided.

(6) If the person on whom a requirement is imposed under paragraph (2) fails to comply with it the court may infer that the factual claim is inaccurate.

(7) A person may fail to comply with a requirement imposed under paragraph (2) by—

(a) not providing any evidence; or

(b) providing evidence that the court considers inadequate.

#### **Grant of injunction: publication of decision and corrective statement**

**313.**—(1) This regulation applies if the court grants an injunction under regulation 311, other than an interim injunction, in respect of an advertisement that has been published.

(2) The Ministers may by notice in writing require any person against whom the injunction has been granted to publish—

(a) all or part of the court's decision; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.*

*Changes to legislation: The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a corrective statement concerning the advertisement in respect of which the application for the injunction was made.
- (3) A requirement imposed under paragraph (2)—
  - (a) must specify the time within which publication must take place; and
  - (b) may specify the form of publication.
- (4) If a person (“P”) fails to comply with a requirement imposed under paragraph (2) the Ministers may certify that failure to the court and the court may enquire into the matter.
- (5) If the court enquires into the matter it must as part of its enquiry—
  - (a) hear any witnesses produced against or on behalf of P; and
  - (b) consider any statement offered in P's defence.
- (6) If having conducted its enquiry the court is satisfied that P failed without reasonable excuse to comply with a requirement imposed under paragraph (2) it may deal with P as if P were in contempt of court.

### *Complaints to OFCOM*

#### **Complaints to OFCOM**

- 314.**—(1) This regulation applies if OFCOM—
- (a) receives from a person a complaint that an advertisement that contains material prohibited by any of regulations 286 to 290 (“prohibited material”) has been included in—
    - (i) a licensed service, or
    - (ii) S4C Digital or a service provided by the Welsh Authority under section 205 of the Communications Act 2003 <sup>M81</sup> (“the 2003 Act”); or
  - (b) has a complaint as described in sub-paragraph (a) referred to it by the Ministers under regulation 309(5) and (6).
- (2) OFCOM must consider the complaint unless—
- (a) the complaint appears to it to be frivolous or vexatious; or
  - (b) paragraph (3) applies.
- (3) If the Ministers have served a notice in respect of the advertisement under regulation 305 (whether or not they have taken action in respect of it under regulation 306) OFCOM—
- (a) may consider the complaint; but
  - (b) is not subject to any duty to do so.
- (4) If, having considered the complaint, OFCOM considers that the advertisement contains prohibited material it may—
- (a) in the case of an advertisement that has been included in a licensed service, give to the person who is the holder of the licence in respect of that service a direction to exclude the advertisement from the licensed service; and
  - (b) in the case of an advertisement that has been included in S4C Digital or a service provided by the Welsh Authority under section 205 of the 2003 Act, give to the Welsh Authority a direction to exclude the advertisement from S4C Digital or the service provided under section 205 of the 2003 Act.
- (5) If OFCOM gives a direction under paragraph (4), it may also give a direction to the licence holder or (as the case may be) the Welsh Authority to exclude from the service any advertisement in similar terms or likely to convey a similar impression.

(6) In deciding whether or not to exercise its power to give a direction under paragraph (4), OFCOM must disregard any lack of evidence that—

- (a) the publication of the advertisement has given rise to loss or damage to any person; or
- (b) the person responsible for the advertisement intended it to be incompatible with the prohibitions imposed by Chapter 2 or failed to exercise proper care to prevent it from being so incompatible.

(7) A direction given under this regulation to a licence holder is to be treated for the purposes of the 2003 Act as a direction with respect to a matter mentioned in section 325(5) of that Act.

(8) A direction given under this regulation to the Welsh Authority is to be treated for the purposes of the Communications Act 2003 Act as a direction with respect to a matter mentioned in paragraph 14(2) of Schedule 12 to that Act.

(9) If OFCOM gives a direction under this regulation, it must inform the licence holder or (as the case may be) the Welsh Authority in writing of its reasons for doing so.

(10) In this regulation—

“licensed service” means a service in respect of which OFCOM has granted a licence under Part 1 or 3 of the Broadcasting Act 1990<sup>M82</sup> or Part 1 or 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996<sup>M83</sup>;

“S4C Digital” means the television service provided in digital form and known as S4C Digital; and

“Welsh Authority” means the authority whose name is, by virtue of section 56(1) of the Broadcasting Act 1990<sup>M84</sup>, Sianel Pedwar Cymru.

#### Marginal Citations

**M81** 2003 c.21.

**M82** 1990 c.42.

**M83** 1996 c.55.

**M84** Section 56(1) was amended by section 406(7) of and Schedule 19(1) to the Communications Act 2003.

### General

#### Public interest etc

**315.** In exercising the functions conferred on them by this Chapter, the Ministers, the court and OFCOM must have regard, in particular, to the public interest.

#### Civil proceedings

**316.** In exercising the functions conferred on them by this Chapter, the Ministers may institute civil proceedings in their own name.

## PART 15

### British Pharmacopoeia

#### British Pharmacopoeia and compendia

**317.—(1)** The British Pharmacopoeia Commission (in this Part referred to as “the BPC”) must, at such intervals as it thinks appropriate, prepare or cause to be prepared editions of the

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

British Pharmacopoeia, containing such relevant information relating to substances, combinations of substances and articles falling within paragraph (2) as the BPC thinks appropriate.

- (2) The substances, combinations of substances, and articles falling within this paragraph are—
  - (a) substances, combinations of substances and articles (whether medicinal products or not) which are or may be used in the practice of medicine or surgery (other than veterinary medicine or veterinary surgery), dentistry or midwifery; and
  - (b) substances, combinations of substances and articles used in the manufacture of anything falling within paragraph (a).
- (3) The BPC may also, at such intervals as it thinks appropriate, prepare or cause to be prepared—
  - (a) a compendium (other than the British Pharmacopoeia) containing such relevant information relating to substances, combinations of substances and articles within paragraph (2) as the BPC thinks appropriate; and
  - (b) a compendium containing such relevant information as the BPC thinks appropriate in relation to—
    - (i) substances, combinations of substances and articles (whether veterinary medicinal products or not) which are or may be used in the practice of veterinary medicine or veterinary surgery; and
    - (ii) substances, combinations of substances and articles used in the manufacture of anything falling within sub-paragraph (i).
- (4) The Ministers must arrange for the publication of anything prepared or caused to be prepared by the BPC under this regulation.
- (5) In this Part—
  - (a) a reference to preparing a thing or causing it to be prepared includes amending it, or causing it to be amended;
  - (b) a reference to publication includes publication by electronic means; and
  - (c) “relevant information”, in relation to a substance, combination of substances or article, means information consisting of descriptions of, standards for, or notes or other matter relating to the substance, combination of substances or article.

### **Lists of names**

**318.**—(1) The BPC must, at such intervals as it thinks appropriate, prepare or cause to be prepared a list of names which appear to it to be suitable—

- (a) to be used as the names of substances, combinations of substances or articles falling within regulation 317(2) or (3)(b); and
- (b) to be placed at the head of monographs relating to those substances, combinations of substances or articles in any edition of the British Pharmacopoeia or in a compendium prepared under that regulation.

(2) Where a list has been prepared in accordance with paragraph (1), the Ministers must cause it to be published.

### **Other documents**

**319.**—(1) The BPC must, at such intervals as it thinks appropriate, prepare or cause to be prepared other documents (in addition to those falling within regulation 317 or 318) containing such relevant information relating to substances, combinations of substances or articles falling within regulation 317(2) or (3)(b) as the BPC thinks appropriate.

(2) Where a document has been prepared in accordance with paragraph (1), the Ministers may cause it to be published.

### Supplementary provisions

**320.**—(1) Anything published in accordance with a provision of this Part (other than regulation 319 (“a publication”)) must specify the date on which it is to take effect.

(2) The Ministers must give notice of the date mentioned in paragraph (1) by notices published in the London, Edinburgh and Belfast Gazettes not less than 21 days before that date.

(3) Where in any proceedings an enforcement authority produces a copy of a publication, it shall be presumed that the copy is a true copy of the edition of that publication that was in force at the time when the events that are the subject of the proceedings took place, unless evidence is adduced to the contrary.

### Specified publications

**321.**—(1) In this regulation “specified publication” means any of the following—

- (a) the European Pharmacopoeia;
- (b) the British Pharmacopoeia;
- (c) the Cumulative List of Recommended International Nonproprietary Names;
- (d) a compendium prepared and published under regulation 317; or
- (e) a list of names prepared and published under regulation 318.

(2) Paragraph (3) applies if an authorisation refers to a specified publication, but not to a particular edition of the publication.

(3) Where this paragraph applies, in order to determine whether anything done at a time when the authorisation is in force is done in accordance with the authorisation, the reference to a specified publication is to be construed as a reference to the edition of the specified publication in force at that time, unless the authorisation expressly provides otherwise.

(4) In paragraph (3) the reference to the edition of a specified publication in force at a particular time is a reference to the edition of that publication in force, under whatever title, at that time.

(5) In this regulation “authorisation” means any of the following—

- (a) a manufacturer's licence;
- (b) a wholesale dealer's licence;
- (c) a marketing authorisation;
- (d) an Article 126a authorisation;
- (e) a certificate of registration; or
- (f) a traditional herbal registration.

## PART 16

### Enforcement

#### Validity of decisions and proceedings

**322.**—(1) The validity of a decision of the licensing authority under Parts 3 (manufacturing and wholesale dealing), 5 (UK marketing authorisations), 6 (certification of homoeopathic medicinal

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

products), 7 (traditional herbal medicinal products) or 8 (Article 126a authorisations) is not to be questioned in any legal proceedings.

(2) The validity of a licence, authorisation, certificate or registration granted or issued, or other thing done, in pursuance of a decision of a kind mentioned in paragraph (1) is not to be questioned in any legal proceedings.

(3) Paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to the following provisions of this regulation.

(4) A person to whom notice of the decision is given may make an application to the High Court to challenge the validity of the decision on the grounds that—

- (a) the decision is not within the powers conferred on the licensing authority; or
- (b) a requirement of these Regulations in connection with the matter to which the decision relates has not been complied with.

(5) An application under paragraph (4) must be made within the period of three months beginning immediately after the day on which notice of the decision is given to the applicant.

(6) On an application under paragraph (4) the High Court may—

- (a) make an interim order suspending the operation of the decision to which the application relates until the final determination of proceedings; or
- (b) quash the decision, if satisfied that—
  - (i) the decision is not within the powers conferred by these Regulations, or
  - (ii) the interests of the applicant have been substantially prejudiced by a failure to comply with a requirement under these Regulations.

(7) If a decision to grant a licence, authorisation, certificate or registration is quashed under this regulation—

- (a) a licence, authorisation, certificate or registration granted in pursuance of the decision is void; and
- (b) the application process for the grant of the licence, authorisation, certificate or registration may be continued as if the decision had not been made.

(8) In the application of this regulation to Scotland, references to the High Court are to be construed as references to the Court of Session.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C5** Reg. 322 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), 64 (with Sch. 32))

#### **Enforcement in England, Wales and Scotland**

**323.**—(1) The Secretary of State must enforce or secure the enforcement of these Regulations and the relevant EU provisions in England, Wales and Scotland.

(2) The Secretary of State may make arrangements for either or both of—

- (a) the General Pharmaceutical Council; or
- (b) in respect of each area for which there is a drugs authority, the drugs authority for the area, to enforce the provisions of these Regulations listed in paragraph (3) to the extent specified in the arrangements.

(3) The provisions referred to in paragraph (2) are—



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) regulations 251 (compliance with standards specified in certain publications) and 255(1) (e) (offences relating to dealings with medicinal products: compliance with standards specified in certain publications);
  - (b) Part 13 (packaging and leaflets); and
  - (c) Part 14 Chapter 2 (requirements relating to advertising).
- (4) Arrangements made with the General Pharmaceutical Council under paragraph (2)(a) in relation to Part 14 Chapter 2 are to be limited to the enforcement of those provisions in respect of—
- (a) advertisements displayed or representations made on or in any premises where medicinal products are sold by retail or supplied in circumstances corresponding to retail sale;
  - (b) advertisements displayed on any web site associated with such premises; and
  - (c) advertisements displayed on, or in close proximity to, a vending machine in which medicinal products are offered or exposed for sale.
- (5) The General Pharmaceutical Council must continue to enforce—
- (a) regulations 214 (sale or supply of prescription only medicines) and 220 (sale or supply of medicines not subject to general sale); and
  - (b) in their application to or in relation to premises that are registered pharmacies, the provisions of these Regulations to which paragraph (7) applies.
- (6) In each area for which there is a drugs authority, that drugs authority must continue to enforce the provisions of these Regulations to which paragraph (7) applies in their application to or in relation to premises that are not registered pharmacies.
- (7) This paragraph applies to regulations 221 (sale or supply of medicinal products subject to general sale) and 222 (sale of medicinal products from automatic machines).
- (8) Functions conferred by virtue of paragraphs (2), (5) and (6) are to be exercised concurrently with the Secretary of State.
- (9) Nothing in this regulation confers a function on a person in relation to—
- (a) a hospital (except so much of the hospital as is a registered pharmacy); or
  - (b) so much of any premises as is used as a doctor's or dentist's practice.
- (10) In this regulation “drugs authority” means—
- (a) in England—
    - (i) in relation to a non-metropolitan county, metropolitan district or London borough, the council of that county, district or borough, and
    - (ii) in relation to the City of London (including the Inner Temple and the Middle Temple), the Common Council of the City of London;
  - (b) in Wales, the council of a county or county borough; and
  - (c) in Scotland, a council constituted in relation to a local government area under section 2 of the Local Government etc (Scotland) Act 1994 <sup>M85</sup>.
- (11) In this Part “premises” includes—
- (a) any place; and
  - (b) a ship, aircraft, hovercraft or vehicle.
- (12) Nothing in this regulation is to be construed as authorising any person other than the Lord Advocate or a procurator fiscal to institute proceedings in Scotland for an offence.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C6** Reg. 323(1) applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

#### Marginal Citations

- M85** [1994 c.39](#). There is an amendment to section 2(1) that is not relevant to this regulation.

### Enforcement in Northern Ireland

**324.**—(1) The Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety (in this regulation referred to as “the Minister”) must enforce or secure the enforcement of these Regulations and the relevant EU provisions in Northern Ireland.

(2) The Minister may make arrangements for a district council to enforce the provisions of these Regulations listed in paragraph (3) in its district to the extent specified in the arrangements.

(3) Those provisions are—

- (a) regulations 221 (sale or supply of medicinal products subject to general sale), 222 (sale of medicinal products from automatic machines) and 255(6) (certain offences relating to dealings with medicinal products);
- (b) regulations 251 (compliance with standards specified in certain publications) and 255(1) (e) (certain offences relating to dealings with medicinal products);
- (c) Part 13 (packaging and leaflets); and
- (d) Part 14 Chapter 2 (requirements relating to advertising).

(4) Functions conferred by virtue of paragraph (2) are to be exercised concurrently with the Minister.

(5) Regulation 323(9) has effect in relation to functions conferred by this regulation as it has effect in relation to functions conferred by regulation 323.

(6) In this regulation, “district council” means a council established under the Local Government Act (Northern Ireland) 1972 <sup>M86</sup>.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C7** Reg. 324(1) applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

#### Marginal Citations

- M86** [1972 c.9 \(N.I.\)](#).

### Rights of entry

**325.**—(1) An inspector may at any reasonable time enter premises—

- (a) in order to determine whether there has been a contravention of a provision of these Regulations which the enforcement authority is required or empowered to enforce by virtue of regulations 323 and 324;

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in order to verify whether the data submitted in respect of an active substance used as a starting material in order to obtain a conformity certificate issued by the European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (“EDQM”) comply with the monographs of the European Pharmacopoeia, if the EDQM asks the enforcement authority to do so; and
  - (c) for the purposes of any other function of the enforcement authority under these Regulations.
- (2) A person may not exercise a right of entry under this regulation in relation to premises used only as a private dwelling unless 24 hours' notice has been given to the occupier.
- (3) A person exercising, or attempting to exercise, a right of entry under this regulation must produce identification on request.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C8** Regs. 325-330 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

**Application for warrant**

**326.**—(1) In a case where this regulation applies, a justice of the peace may issue a warrant authorising an inspector to enter premises, by force if necessary.

(2) This regulation applies if, on sworn information in writing, the justice of the peace is satisfied that—

- (a) there are reasonable grounds for entering the premises by virtue of the enforcement authority's functions under these Regulations;
- (b) an inspector has a right to enter them by virtue of regulation 325; and
- (c) a condition specified in paragraph (3) is satisfied.

(3) Those conditions are—

- (a) that—
  - (i) admission to the premises has been refused or is expected to be refused, and
  - (ii) notice of the intention to apply for a warrant has been given to the occupier;
- (b) that a request for admission, or the giving of notice, would defeat the object of the entry;
- (c) that the case is one of urgency; or
- (d) that the premises are unoccupied or the occupier is temporarily absent.

(4) In relation to a ship, aircraft, hovercraft or vehicle, references in this Part to the occupier of premises are to be read as references to the master, commander or other person in charge of the ship, aircraft, hovercraft or vehicle.

(5) A warrant granted under this regulation continues in force for a period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the warrant is granted.

(6) In the application of this regulation to England, references to a justice of the peace include a reference to a district judge (magistrates' courts).

(7) In the application of this regulation to Scotland, references to a justice of the peace are to be read as references to a sheriff, stipendiary magistrate or justice of the peace.

(8) In the application of this regulation to Northern Ireland, references to a justice of the peace are to be read as references to a lay magistrate or a district judge (magistrates' courts).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C8** Regs. 325-330 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

#### Powers of inspection, sampling and seizure

- 327.**—(1) An inspector may inspect anything mentioned in paragraph (2)—
- (a) in order to determine whether there has been a contravention of any provision of these Regulations which the enforcement authority must or may enforce by virtue of regulations 323 and 324;
  - (b) for the purpose described in regulation 325(1)(b) (verification of data at the request of the European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare); or
  - <sup>[F245]</sup>(c) in relation to an application under Parts 3 or 5 to 8 in order to verify any statement made by an applicant for—
    - (i) a manufacturer’s licence,
    - (ii) a wholesale dealer’s licence,
    - (iii) a brokering registration,
    - (iv) registration as an importer, manufacturer or distributor of active substances,
    - (v) a marketing authorisation,
    - (vi) a certificate of registration,
    - (vii) a traditional herbal registration, or
    - (viii) an Article 126a authorisation;
  - (d) in relation to a person’s notification to sell medicinal products at a distance under Part 12A.]
- <sup>[F246]</sup>(2) The things mentioned in paragraph (1) are—
- (a) a substance or article appearing to the inspector to be a medicinal product or an active substance;
  - (b) an article appearing to the inspector to be—
    - (i) a container or package used or intended to be used to contain a medicinal product or an active substance, or
    - (ii) a label or leaflet used or intended to be used in connection with a medicinal product or an active substance;
  - (c) plant or equipment, including computer equipment, appearing to the inspector to be used or intended to be used in connection with the manufacture, assembly, importation, sale, supply or advertising of, or wholesale dealing in, medicinal products or active substances;
  - (d) any process of manufacture or assembly of medicinal products or active substances;
  - (e) the way in which medicinal products or active substances, or the materials used in the manufacture of medicinal products or active substances, are tested at any stage in the process of manufacture or assembly;
  - (f) information and documents relating to the manufacture, assembly, importation, sale, supply or advertising of, or wholesale dealing in, medicinal products or active substances;

- (g) information and documents relating to the safety of medicinal products or active substances, including information and documents relating to compliance with—
- (i) conditions imposed under any of regulations 59 (conditions of UK marketing authorisation: general), 60 (conditions of UK marketing authorisation: exceptional circumstances), 61 (conditions of UK marketing authorisation: new obligations post-authorisation) or 105 (conditions of certificate of registration),
  - (ii) the requirements of Part 11 (pharmacovigilance),
  - (iii) obligations and conditions under Articles 10a(1), 14(7), 14(8), 16 or 57(2) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004,
  - (iv) the requirements of Chapter 3 (pharmacovigilance) of Title II of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004,
  - (v) the requirements of the Implementing Regulation as defined in regulation 177(5) (pharmacovigilance: interpreting provision), and
  - (vi) obligations under regulations 75 (obligation to provide information relating to safety) and 76 (obligation in relation to product information).
- (3) The inspector may for the purposes specified in paragraph (1) take or purchase a sample of a substance or article which appears to the inspector to be—
- (a) a medicinal product or an active substance which is, or is intended to be, sold or supplied; or
  - (b) a substance or article used, or intended to be used, in the manufacture of a medicinal product or an active substance.
- (4) The inspector may for the purposes specified in paragraph (1) require a person carrying on a business which consists of or includes the manufacture, assembly, importation, sale, supply or advertising of, or wholesale dealing in, medicinal products or active substances, or a person employed in connection with such a business, to produce information or documents relating to the business which are in the person's possession or under the person's control.]
- (5) The inspector may take copies of information or documents—
- (a) inspected under sub-paragraph (2)(f) or (g); or
  - (b) produced under paragraph (4).
- [<sup>F247</sup>(6) The inspector may seize and retain a substance or article appearing to the inspector to be a medicinal product or an active substance if the inspector reasonably believes that an offence under these Regulations is being or has been committed in relation to, or by means of, that substance or article.]
- (7) The inspector may, if the inspector reasonably believes that it may be required as evidence in proceedings, seize and retain—
- (a) any document; or
  - (b) anything inspected, or discovered in the course of an inspection, under paragraph (1).
- (8) The inspector may, if necessary, require a person who has the authority to do so—
- (a) to open a container or package;
  - (b) to open a vending machine; or
  - (c) to allow the inspector to open a container, package or vending machine,
- for the purpose of enabling the inspector to seize a substance, article, document or other thing under paragraph (6) or (7).
- (9) The information and documents referred to in this regulation include any that are stored electronically.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F245** Reg. 327(4)(c)(d) substituted for reg. 327(4)(c) (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **29(2)**
- F246** Reg. 327(2)-(4) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **29(3)**
- F247** Reg. 327(6) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **29(4)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C8** Regs. 325-330 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), **64** (with Sch. 32))

## Regulation 327: supplementary

**328.**—(1) Where an inspector seizes a substance, article, document or other thing under regulation 327(6) or (7) (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure) the inspector—

- (a) must, where practicable, inform—
  - (i) the person, if any, from whom it was seized, and
  - (ii) the occupier of the premises from which it was seized; or
- (b) in relation to anything seized from a vending machine, must inform—
  - (i) the person whose name and address are stated on the machine to be those of the machine's owner, or
  - (ii) if no name and address are stated, the occupier of the premises on which the machine stands or to which it is affixed.

(2) An inspector exercising, or attempting to exercise, a right under regulation 327 must produce identification on request.

(3) The provisions of Schedule 31 have effect in relation to samples obtained by inspectors on behalf of enforcement authorities.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C8** Regs. 325-330 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), **64** (with Sch. 32))

## Application of sampling procedure to substance or article seized under this Part

**329.**—(1) This regulation applies where an inspector seizes a substance or article under regulation 327 (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure).

- (2) On request in accordance with paragraph (3), the inspector must either—
  - (a) set aside a sample of the substance or article seized; or
  - (b) treat the substance or article as a sample,

whichever seems more appropriate having regard to the nature of the substance or article.

- (3) A request is made in accordance with this paragraph if—

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) it is made by a person (“P”) who is entitled to be informed of the seizure under regulation 328; and
  - (b) it is made either at the time of the seizure or within the period of 21 days beginning with the day immediately after the day on which P is informed of the seizure.
- (4) An inspector is not required by paragraph (2) to set aside a sample, or to treat a substance or article as a sample, if the nature of the substance or article is such that it is not reasonably practicable to do either of those things.
- (5) An inspector must—
- (a) divide a sample under paragraph (2) into three parts;
  - (b) mark each part;
  - (c) seal or fasten each part; and
  - (d) supply one part to P.
- (6) Paragraphs 10 to 12 and 15 to 26 of Schedule 31 apply to a sample under this regulation as they apply to a sample obtained as mentioned in paragraph 1 of that Schedule, but as if—
- (a) references to the preceding provisions of that Schedule were references to the preceding provisions of this regulation;
  - (b) references to a sampling officer were references to an inspector who seized a substance or article under regulation 327 (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure); and
  - (c) a reference to the relevant enforcement authority were a reference to the authority by which the inspector is authorised.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C8** Regs. 325-330 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), 64 (with Sch. 32))

**Analysis of samples: other cases**

**330.**—<sup>F248</sup>(1) This regulation applies where a person other than an inspector or a person authorised by an enforcement authority has purchased an active substance or a medicinal product.

(2) The person may submit a sample of the active substance or medicinal product for analysis to the public analyst for the area in which the active substance or medicinal product was purchased or, if for the time being there is no public analyst for the area, to the public analyst for another area.]

(3) Paragraphs 2 to 13 of Schedule 31 have effect, in relation to a person proposing to submit a sample in pursuance of paragraph (2), as if in that Schedule references to the sampling officer were references to that person.

(4) A public analyst to whom a sample is submitted under this regulation must analyse the sample, or cause it to be analysed, as soon as practicable (but this is subject to the following provisions of this regulation).

(5) If the public analyst to whom a sample is submitted thinks that a proper analysis cannot be carried out for any reason, the public analyst must send it to the public analyst for some other area, who must as soon as practicable analyse the sample, or cause it to be analysed (subject to paragraph 6).

(6) A public analyst to whom a sample is submitted or sent under this regulation may demand payment in advance of the required fee, and if payment in advance is demanded may refuse to carry out the analysis until the fee is paid.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(7) A public analyst who has analysed a sample or caused it to be analysed must issue a certificate specifying the result of the analysis to the person by whom the sample was submitted under paragraph (2).

(8) Paragraphs 21 to 23 of Schedule 31 have effect in relation to a certificate issued under this regulation as they have effect in relation to a certificate issued under paragraph 19 of that Schedule.

(9) In this regulation “public analyst”—

- (a) in relation to England and Wales and Scotland has the meaning given by section 27 of the Food Safety Act 1990 <sup>M87</sup>; and
- (b) in relation to Northern Ireland has the meaning given by Article 27(1) of the Food Safety (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 <sup>M88</sup>.

#### Textual Amendments

**F248** Reg. 330(1)(2) substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **30**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C8** Regs. 325-330 applied (with modifications) by [The Medicines for Human Use \(Clinical Trials\) Regulations 2004 \(S.I. 2004/1031\)](#), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), **64** (with Sch. 32))

#### Marginal Citations

**M87** [1990 c.16](#). Section 27 was amended by the Local Government etc (Scotland) Act 1994 section 180(1) and Schedule 18 paragraph 163(3), the Food Standards Act 1999 section 40(1) and Schedule 5 paragraphs 7 and 8, the Local Government (Wales) Act 1994 section 22(3) and Schedule 9 paragraph 16(2), [S.I. 1994/865](#) regulation 24, and the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 sections 22 and 241, Schedule 1 Part 2 paragraph 17, and Schedule 18 Part 1.

**M88** [1991 No. 762](#) (N.I. 7). There are amendments not relevant to these Regulations.

### Findings and reports of inspections

**331.**—(1) If the outcome of the inspection of things referred to in regulation 327(2)(g) (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure: information and documents relating to safety etc) is that the holder of a marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration does not comply with the pharmacovigilance system as described in the pharmacovigilance system master file, or any provision of Part 11 (pharmacovigilance), the enforcement authority must—

- (a) bring the deficiencies to the attention of the holder;
- (b) give the holder the opportunity to submit comments; and
- (c) inform the other EEA States, the EMA and the European Commission.

(2) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to paragraphs (3) and (5).

(3) After every inspection carried out in accordance with regulations 325 (rights of entry) and 327 (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure) in connection with medicinal products other than registrable homoeopathic medicinal products, the enforcement authority must report on whether the activities to which the inspection relates comply with such of the provisions mentioned in paragraph (4) as apply to those activities.

(4) Those provisions are—

- (a) the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive and any principles or guidelines of good manufacturing practice referred to in Article 47 of the 2001 Directive;



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the guidelines on good distribution practice referred to in Article 84 of the 2001 Directive; and
- (c) in the case of the holder of a marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration—
  - (i) Part 11 (pharmacovigilance), and
  - (ii) Chapter 3 (pharmacovigilance) of Title II (authorisation and supervision of medicinal products for human use) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.
- (5) The enforcement authority must before adopting the report —
  - (a) communicate the content of the report to the person to whose activities the inspection relates; and
  - (b) give that person the opportunity to submit comments.

### Restrictions on disclosure of information

**332.**—(1) A person (“P”) must not disclose to another person, otherwise than in the performance of P’s functions—

- (a) any information relating to a manufacturing process or trade secret obtained by P on premises which P has entered by virtue of regulation 325 or of a warrant under regulation 326; or
  - (b) any information obtained by P or given to P in pursuance of these Regulations.
- (2) Paragraph (1) does not apply if—
- (a) P is, or is acting on behalf of, a public authority for the purposes of the Freedom of Information Act 2000 <sup>M89</sup>; and
  - (b) the information is not held by the authority on behalf of another person.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

#### Marginal Citations

**M89** 2000 c.36.

### Protection for inspectors

**333.**—(1) An inspector is not personally liable in respect of any act done in the execution, or purported execution, of a function under these Regulations and within the scope of the inspector’s employment by an enforcement authority (or, where the inspector is not employed by the authority, the scope of the inspector’s authorisation), provided that the act was done in the honest belief that these Regulations required or permitted it.

(2) Where an action is brought against an inspector in respect of an act falling within paragraph (1), the enforcement authority may indemnify the inspector against any damages, costs or expenses incurred, if the authority is satisfied that the inspector honestly believed that these Regulations required or permitted the act.

(3) Paragraph (2) applies in a case where the person is not legally entitled to require an indemnity from the enforcement authority.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(4) A reference to an inspector in this regulation includes a reference to an employee of the licensing authority who accompanies an inspector pursuant to regulation 334(1).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

**Supplementary provisions and offences**

**334.**—(1) An inspector entering any premises by virtue of regulation 325 or of a warrant under regulation 326 may be accompanied by such persons, and take such equipment, as the inspector thinks appropriate.

(2) Where an inspector enters premises in pursuance of a warrant under regulation 326, the inspector must, if the property is unoccupied or the occupier is temporarily absent, leave the premises as effectively secured against trespass as they were before the inspector entered.

(3) It is an offence for a person—

- (a) intentionally to obstruct an inspector;
- (b) intentionally to fail to comply with a requirement properly made under regulation 327 by an inspector; or
- (c) without reasonable cause, to fail to give an inspector any other assistance or information which the inspector may reasonably require in order to perform a function under these Regulations.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

(5) A person who knowingly makes a false statement in giving information as mentioned in paragraph (3)(c) is guilty of an offence.

(6) A person who breaches the prohibition in regulation 332(1) (restrictions on disclosure of information) is guilty of an offence.

(7) A person who is guilty of an offence under paragraph (5) or (6) is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.

(8) Nothing in this regulation is to be read as requiring a person to answer a question or to give information if doing so might incriminate that person or the spouse or civil partner of that person.

(9) In this regulation “occupier”, in relation to a ship, aircraft, or vehicle, is to be read in accordance with regulation 326(4).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

## PART 17

### Miscellaneous and general

#### *Provisions relating to offences*

#### **Contravention due to fault of another person**

**335.**—(1) This regulation applies where—

- (a) a contravention of a provision referred to in paragraph (6) constitutes an offence; and
- (b) a person (“A”) contravenes the provision by reason of the act or omission of another person (“B”).

(2) B may be charged with and convicted of the offence, whether or not proceedings are also brought against A.

(3) If B is convicted B is liable to the same punishment as would have been imposed on A if A had been convicted of the offence.

(4) If A is charged with the offence it is a defence for A to prove on the balance of probabilities that—

- (a) A exercised all due diligence to avoid contravening the provision; and
- (b) the contravention was due to the act or omission of B.

(5) A may not rely on the defence in paragraph (4) unless not later than seven clear days before the date of the hearing A serves on the prosecutor a notice in writing of any information held by A which identifies, or assists in identifying, B.

(6) The provisions mentioned in paragraph (1) are—

- (a) regulation 251 (compliance with standards specified in certain publications);
- (b) regulations 268 and 269 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets);
- (c) regulation 273 (child resistant containers for regulated medicinal products);
- (d) regulation 275 (colouring of aspirin and paracetamol products for children);
- (e) any prohibition or requirement in Chapter 2 of Part 14 (advertising); and
- (f) regulations 305(4) and 306(7) and (8) (notices not to publish, or to cease to publish, an advertisement).

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), 64 (with Sch. 32))

#### **Warranty as defence**

**336.**—(1) This regulation applies where proceedings are brought against a person (“the defendant”) for an offence under these Regulations in respect of a contravention of a provision mentioned in paragraph (3).

(2) It is a defence for the defendant to prove that—

- (a) the substance or article to which the contravention relates (the “relevant substance or article”) was sold to the defendant in the United Kingdom as—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) a substance or article which could be lawfully sold, supplied or offered for sale or supply, or
  - (ii) a substance or article which could be lawfully sold, supplied or offered for sale or supply under the name or description or for the purpose under or for which it was sold;
  - (b) the relevant substance or article was sold with a written warranty certifying a matter specified in paragraph (a), and that if the warranty were true the alleged offence would not have been committed;
  - (c) at the time of the commission of the alleged offence the defendant had no reason to believe that the matter certified in the warranty was otherwise; and
  - (d) at the time of the commission of the alleged offence the relevant substance or article was in the same state as when the defendant purchased it.
- (3) The provisions are—
- (a) regulation 251 (compliance with standards specified in certain publications);
  - (b) regulations 268 and 269 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets);
  - (c) regulation 273 (child resistant containers for regulated medicinal products); and
  - (d) regulation 275 (colouring of aspirin and paracetamol products for children).
- (4) A warranty is not to be a defence under this regulation unless, no later than three clear days before the date of the hearing, the defendant sends to the prosecutor, and to the person who gave the warranty to the defendant—
- (a) a copy of the warranty;
  - (b) a notice stating that the defendant intends to rely on it; and
  - (c) the name and address of the person from whom the defendant received the warranty.
- (5) Where the defendant is an employee of the person who purchased the substance or article under the warranty, the defendant is entitled to rely on the provisions of this regulation in the same way as the employer.
- (6) The person by whom the warranty is alleged to have been given is entitled to appear at the hearing and to give evidence.
- (7) The court may adjourn the hearing in order to enable a person to appear and give evidence in accordance with paragraph (6).
- (8) For the purposes of this regulation, a name or description entered in an invoice is to be deemed to be a written warranty that the article or substance to which the name or description applies can be sold, supplied, or offered or exposed for sale under that name or description without contravening a provision mentioned in paragraph (3).
- (9) In the application of this regulation and regulation 337 to Scotland, references to the defendant are to be construed as references to the accused.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with [Sch. 32](#)))

### Offences in relation to warranties and certificates

**337.**—(1) It is an offence for a defendant in proceedings for an offence under these Regulations in respect of a contravention of a provision mentioned in regulation 336 (3)—

- (a) intentionally to apply a warranty given in relation to one substance or article to a different substance or article; or
- (b) intentionally to apply to one substance or article a certificate issued under regulation 330 or paragraph 19 of Schedule 31 in relation to a sample of a different substance or article.

(2) A person who intentionally or recklessly gives a purchaser a false warranty certifying a matter specified in regulation 336(2)(a) is guilty of an offence.

(3) If the defendant in proceedings for an offence under these Regulations in respect of a contravention of a provision mentioned in regulation 336(3) relies successfully on a warranty given to the defendant or to the defendant's employer, proceedings for an offence under paragraph (2) may be brought in accordance with paragraph (4).

(4) Proceedings may be brought, as the prosecutor chooses—

- (a) before a court which has jurisdiction in the place where a sample of the substance or article to which the warranty relates was taken; or
- (b) before a court which has jurisdiction in the place where the warranty was given.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this regulation is liable—

- (a) on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum; or
- (b) on conviction on indictment to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), 64 (with Sch. 32))

### Offences by bodies corporate and partnerships

**338.**—(1) If an offence under these Regulations committed by a body corporate is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to neglect on the part of, an officer of the body corporate, or a person purporting to act as an officer of the body corporate, that officer or person (as well as the body corporate) is guilty of the offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

(2) If the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, paragraph (1) applies in relation to the acts and omissions of a member in connection with the member's functions of management as it applies to an officer of the body corporate.

(3) If an offence under these Regulations is—

- (a) committed by a Scottish partnership; and
- (b) proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to neglect on the part of, a partner of the partnership,

the partner (as well as the partnership) is guilty of the offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

(4) In this regulation “officer” in relation to a body corporate means a director, secretary or other similar officer of the body corporate.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

### Prosecutions

#### Prosecutions

**339.**—(1) A magistrates' court in England or Wales may try an information for an offence under these Regulations that is triable only summarily if the information was laid at any time within the period of twelve months beginning with the commission of the offence.

(2) Summary proceedings in Scotland for an offence triable only summarily under these Regulations may be commenced at any time within the period of twelve months beginning with the commission of the offence (and section 136(3) of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995 <sup>M90</sup> applies for the purposes of this paragraph as it applies for the purposes of that section).

(3) A magistrates' court in Northern Ireland may hear and determine a complaint for an offence punishable on summary conviction under these Regulations, other than an offence which is also triable on indictment, if the complaint was made at any time within the period of twelve months beginning with the commission of the offence.

(4) A body referred to in regulation 323(2) (enforcement in England, Wales and Scotland) may not institute proceedings for an offence under these Regulations in relation to a contravention of a provision which it may or must enforce by virtue of arrangements made under that regulation unless it has given no less than 28 days' notice of its intention to do so, together with a summary of the facts on which the charges are founded, to the Secretary of State.

(5) A district council (as defined in regulation 324 (enforcement in Northern Ireland)) may not institute proceedings for an offence under these Regulations in relation to a contravention of a provision which it may or must enforce by virtue of arrangements made under regulation 324(2) unless it has given no less than 28 days' notice of its intention to do so, together with a summary of the facts on which the charges are founded, to the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety.

(6) A certificate of the Secretary of State or of the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety that the requirements of paragraph (4) or, as the case may be, (5) have been complied with is to be conclusive evidence that the requirements have been complied with, and a document purporting to be such a certificate is to be presumed to be such a certificate unless the contrary is proved.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C9** Regs. 332-339 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), [64](#) (with Sch. 32))

#### Marginal Citations

- M90** 1995 c. 46.

## General

### Presumptions

**340.**—(1) Paragraph (2) applies for the purposes of proceedings under these Regulations for an offence consisting of offering a medicinal product for sale by retail in contravention of regulation 220 (sale or supply of products not subject to general sale) or 221 (sale or supply of products subject to general sale).

(2) If it is proved that the medicinal product in question was found on a vehicle from which medicinal products are sold, it is to be presumed, unless the contrary is proved, that the person in charge of the vehicle offered the medicinal product for sale.

(3) Paragraph (4) applies for the purposes of proceedings under these Regulations for an offence consisting of a contravention of a provision within paragraph (5), where it is proved that the medicinal product in question was found on premises at which the person charged with the offence carries on a business consisting of or including the sale or supply of medicinal products.

(4) It is to be presumed, unless the contrary is proved, that the person charged possessed the medicinal product for the purpose of sale or supply.

(5) The provisions within this paragraph are regulations 268 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: authorisation holders), 269 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: other persons) and 276 (offences: requirements relating to child safety) to the extent that they establish an offence based on possession of a medicinal product for the purpose of sale or supply.

### Decisions under these Regulations

**341.**—(1) Where the licensing authority notifies a person of a decision under these Regulations, it must—

- (a) state its reasons for the decision; and
- (b) inform the person of any action the person may take under these Regulations to challenge that decision and of the time for taking that action.

(2) Paragraph (1) is without prejudice to any other provision of these Regulations concerning notification by the licensing authority.

(3) The licensing authority must publicise any decision under these Regulations to which paragraph (4) applies in such manner as it thinks fit.

(4) Those decisions are—

- (a) a decision to grant or revoke a marketing authorisation;
- (b) a decision to grant or revoke a certificate of registration; and
- (c) a decision to grant or revoke a traditional herbal registration.

### Time limits for provision of information etc

**342.**—(1) This regulation applies if—

- (a) by any provision of these Regulations a person is required to provide—
  - (i) any information or document to the licensing authority or to the Ministers, or
  - (ii) any assistance to the licensing authority or to the Ministers; and
- (b) no time is specified in that provision within which the obligation must be performed.

(2) The obligation must be performed within such time as may be specified in a written notice given to the person by the licensing authority or the Ministers (as the case may be).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Service of documents

**343.**—(1) A notice or other document required or authorised by any provision of these Regulations to be served on a person, or to be given or sent to a person, may be served, given or sent—

- (a) by delivering it to the person;
- (b) by sending it by post to the person's usual or last known residence or place of business in the United Kingdom;
- (c) in the case of a body corporate, by delivering it to the secretary or clerk of the body corporate at its registered or principal office or by sending it by post to the secretary or clerk of the body corporate at that office; or
- (d) in the case of a Scottish partnership by delivering it to a partner or by sending it by post to the address of the principal office of the partnership; or
- (e) if the person consents in writing to the use of electronic communication, by a means of electronic communication.

(2) Where a notice or other document is sent by means of electronic communication it is treated for the purposes of these Regulations as received on the day on which it is sent, unless the contrary is proved.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C10** Reg. 343 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/1916](#), reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), 64 (with Sch. 32))

## Payment of expenses by Ministers

**344.**—(1) If a person enforces a provision of these Regulations in accordance with functions conferred under Part 16 (enforcement), the relevant Minister must pay such amounts as the person may reasonably require in respect of expenses incurred in the course of enforcement.

(2) In paragraph (1) “the relevant Minister” means—

- (a) in relation to enforcement in England, Wales, and Scotland, the Secretary of State; and
- (b) in relation to enforcement in Northern Ireland, the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety.

### *Immunity from civil liability*

#### Immunity from civil liability

**345.**—(1) This regulation applies where the licensing authority makes a recommendation or requirement to which paragraph (2) applies in response to the suspected or confirmed spread of—

- (a) pathogenic agents;
- (b) toxins;
- (c) chemical agents; or
- (d) nuclear radiation,

which may cause harm to human beings.

(2) This paragraph applies to a recommendation or requirement—



- (a) for the use of a medicinal product without an authorisation; or
  - (b) for the use of a medicinal product with an authorisation, but for a therapeutic indication that is not permitted under the authorisation.
- (3) None of the following are to be subject to any civil liability for any loss or damage resulting from the use of the product in accordance with the recommendation or requirement—
- (a) any holder of an authorisation for the product;
  - (b) any manufacturer of the product;
  - (c) any officer, servant, employee or agent of a person within paragraph (a) or (b); or
  - (d) any health care professional.
- (4) This regulation does not apply in relation to liability under section 2 (liability for defective products) of the Consumer Protection Act 1987<sup>M91</sup> or article 5 of the Consumer Protection (Northern Ireland) Order 1987<sup>M92</sup>.
- (5) In this regulation “authorisation” means a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation.

#### Marginal Citations

- M91** 1987 c.43. Section 2(4) was repealed in relation to England and Wales by [S.I. 2000/2771](#) article 2(1) and (3) and in relation to Scotland by [S.S.I. 2001/265](#) article 2(1) and (3).
- M92** [S.I. 1987/2049 \(N.I. 20\)](#), as amended by [2001 c.13 \(NI\)](#).

#### Review

#### <sup>F249</sup>Review

**346.**—(1) The Secretary of State must from time to time carry out a review of the provisions listed in paragraph (2).

(2) Those provisions are—

- (a) Chapters 1, 3 and 4 of Part 3;
- (b) Parts 11 and 12A;
- (c) regulations—
  - (i) <sup>F250</sup>18(6),
  - (ii) 20(1),
  - (iii) 37(4)(b), (5), (6), (11) and (12),
  - (iv) 43(5), (6)(a) <sup>F251</sup>and (d), 7(c)(iii) and (vii), (8) and (10) to (14),
  - (v) 44(1) to (6),
  - (vi) 59,
  - (vii) 60(3)(b), (9) and (10),
  - (viii) 61,
  - (ix) 63,
  - (x) 64(4)(b), (d) and (e), (5)(a) and (6)(c),
  - (xi) 65(2),
  - (xii) 66(5) and (6),

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (xiii) 68(2)(a) and (b), (5) and (12A),
- (xiv) 69(2)(a) and (b), (5) and (10),
- [<sup>F252</sup>(xiva) 73(5A) to (5C),]
- (xv) 75(2)(b) and (c),
- (xvi) 76,
- (xvii) 79,
- [<sup>F253</sup>(xviiia) 82(1)(c),]
- (xviii) 85,
- (xix) 86,
- (xx) 97,
- (xxi) 105(3)(b),
- (xxii) 107(2),
- (xxiii) 108(5),
- (xxiv) 110(8A),
- [<sup>F254</sup>(xxiva) 113(3A),]
- (xxv) 115(2)(b) and (c),
- (xxvi) 132(2),
- (xxvii) 133(5) and (6),
- (xxviii) 135(10A),
- [<sup>F255</sup>(xxviiiia) 142(5A) to (5C),]
- [<sup>F256</sup>(xxviiiib) 213(3),]
- [<sup>F257</sup>(xxviiiiba) 214(5C) [<sup>F258</sup>and (5D)],]
- [<sup>F256</sup>(xxviiiic) 217A,]
- [<sup>F256</sup>(xxviiiid) 218(2)(b) and (c), (3) and (5),]
- [<sup>F259</sup>(xxviiiie) 219 and 219A,]
- [<sup>F260</sup>(xxviiiiea) 223(3)(b),]
- [<sup>F261</sup>(xxviiiieb) 228(2)(d)(iv),]
- [<sup>F262</sup>(xxviiiif) 229(1)(db) and (dc) [<sup>F263</sup>and (2)],
- [ 233(1)(a)(ivd) and (ive),]
- <sup>F264</sup>(xxviiiifa)
- (xxviiiig) 234(2)(e),]
- [<sup>F265</sup>(xxviiiig) 248(1)(a) and (2)(a),]
- (xxix) 266(4) and (5),
- (xxx) 327(2)(g) and insofar as the provision relates to active substances paragraphs (1)(c) (iii), (iv) and (viii), (2)(a) to (f), (3), (4) and (6),
- (xxxi) 330(1) and (2),
- (xxxii) 331, and
- (xxxiii) regulation 349 insofar as it repeals section 10(7) of the Medicines Act 1968; and
- (d) Schedules—

- (i) 5 paragraphs 1(1)(b) to (d), (2)(b) to (d), 3(11)(b)(vi) to (viii), 5(2)(f) to (h),
  - (ii) 7A,
  - (iii) 8 paragraphs 9A, 12, 13, 19 and 23,
  - (iv) 12 paragraph 21,
  - [<sup>F266</sup>(ivza) 16, Part 2 entries relating to “Public Health England” and “Public Health Agency” and Part 3 entries relating to “search and rescue operations”,]
  - [<sup>F267</sup>(iva) 17, Part 1 items 12 and 13, Part 2 items 4a, 11 and 12, [<sup>F268</sup>Part 3 item 11,] Part 4 items 11 to 13 and Part 5 items 7a and 18 [<sup>F269</sup>to 20],
  - (ivaa) 23, paragraph 1(a)(vii) to [<sup>F270</sup>(x)], and]
  - [<sup>F271</sup>(ivb) 22, entries relating to “Public Health England”, “Public Health Agency” and “search and rescue operations”, and]
  - (v) 27 paragraphs 14 and 15.
- (3) The Secretary of State must—
- (a) set out the conclusions of a review carried out in accordance with paragraph (1) in a report; and
  - (b) publish the report.
- [<sup>F272</sup>(4) In carrying out the review the Secretary of State must, so far as is reasonable, have regard to how—
- (a) the 2001 Directive;
  - (b) Directive 2010/84/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15 October 2010 amending, as regards pharmacovigilance, [Directive 2001/83/EC](#) on the Community code relating to medicinal products for human use;
  - (c) Article 11 of Directive 2011/24/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 9 March 2011 on the application of patients’ rights in cross-border healthcare;
  - (d) Directive 2011/62/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 8 June 2011 amending [Directive 2001/83/EC](#) on the Community code relating to medicinal products for human use, as regards the prevention of the entry into the legal supply chain of falsified medicinal products; and
  - (e) Commission Implementing Directive 2012/52/EU of 20 December 2012 laying down measures to facilitate the recognition of medical prescriptions issued in another Member State,
- are implemented in other member States in relation to the subject matter of the provisions mentioned in paragraph (2).]
- (5) The report must in particular—
- (a) set out the objectives intended to be achieved by the regulatory system established by the provisions of these Regulations that implement those Directives in relation to the subject matter of the provisions mentioned in paragraph (2)(a), (b), (c)(i) to [<sup>F273</sup>(xxxii)] and (d);
  - (b) assess the extent to which those objectives are achieved; and
  - (c) assess whether those objectives remain appropriate and, if so, the extent to which they could be achieved with a system that imposes less regulation.
- (6) The first report under this regulation must be published before the end of the period of five years beginning with the day on which these Regulations come into force.
- (7) Reports under this regulation are afterwards to be published at intervals not exceeding five years.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Textual Amendments

- F249** Reg. 346 substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **31**
- F250** Word in reg. 346(2)(c)(i) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(i)** and word in reg. 346(2)(c)(i) substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(i)**
- F251** Words in reg. 346(2)(c)(iv) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(ii)** and words in reg. 346(2)(c)(iv) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(ii)**
- F252** Reg. 346(2)(b)(xiva) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **8**
- F253** Reg. 346(2)(b)(xviiia) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **8**
- F254** Reg. 346(2)(b)(xxiva) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **8**
- F255** Reg. 346(2)(b)(xxviiiia) inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **8**
- F256** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiib)-(xxviiiie) inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9(2)(a)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiib)-(xxviiiie) inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9(2)(a)**
- F257** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiiba) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(iii)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiiba) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(iii)**
- F258** Words in reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiiba) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(a)(i)** and words in reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiiba) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(a)(i)**
- F259** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiie) substituted (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/903\)](#), regs. 1, **8** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiie) substituted (1.7.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/259\)](#), regs. 1, **8**
- F260** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiiea) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(iv)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiiea) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(iv)**
- F261** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiieb) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(a)(ii)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiieb) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(a)(ii)**
- F262** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiif)(xxviiiig) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(a)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiif)(xxviiiig) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(a)**
- F263** Words in reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiif) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(v)** and words in reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiif) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(v)**
- F264** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiifa) inserted (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **9(2)(a)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviiiifa) inserted (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **9(2)(a)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F265** Reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviii) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(vi)** and reg. 346(2)(c)(xxviii) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(a)(vi)**
- F266** Reg. 346(2)(d)(ivza) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(b)(i)** and reg. 346(2)(d)(ivza) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(b)(i)**
- F267** Reg. 346(2)(d)(iva)(ivaa) substituted for reg. 346(2)(d)(iva) (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(b)(i)** and reg. 346(2)(d)(iva)(ivaa) substituted for reg. 346(2)(d)(iva) (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **15(2)(b)(i)**
- F268** Words in reg. 346(2)(d)(iva) inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **7** and words in reg. 346(2)(d)(iva) inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **7**
- F269** Words in reg. 346(2)(d)(iva) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(b)(i)** and words in reg. 346(2)(d)(iva) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(b)(i)**
- F270** Word in reg. 346(2)(d)(ivaa) substituted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(b)(ii)** and word in reg. 346(2)(d)(ivaa) substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **11(2)(b)(ii)**
- F271** Reg. 346(2)(d)(ivb) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(b)(iii)** and reg. 346(2)(d)(ivb) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **6(2)(b)(iii)**
- F272** Reg. 346(4) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9(3)** and reg. 346(4) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9(3)**
- F273** Word in reg. 346(5)(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9(4)** and word in reg. 346(5)(a) substituted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9(4)**

### *Transitional provisions, savings, amendments, repeals and revocations*

#### **Transitional provisions and savings**

- 347.** Schedule 32 contains transitional provisions and savings.

#### **Amendments to existing law**

- 348.** Schedule 34 contains amendments to existing law.

#### **Repeals and revocations**

- 349.** Schedule 35 contains repeals and revocations.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Signed by authority of the Secretary of State for Health.

Department of Health

*Earl Howe*  
Parliamentary Under-Secretary of State

*Edwin Poots*  
Minister for Health, Social Services and Public  
Safety

## SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULE 1

Regulation 5

Further provisions for classification of medicinal products

#### PART 1

Descriptions of certain medicinal products to be available only on prescription

1. The following medicinal products shall be available only on prescription—
  - (a) a product for parenteral administration;
  - (b) a product that is a controlled drug [<sup>F274</sup>as defined in section 2(1)(a) of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971], unless it is covered by a marketing authorisation in which the product is classified as a pharmacy medicine or as a medicinal product subject to general sale;
  - (c) cyanogenic substances, other than preparations for external use;
  - (d) medicinal substances that on administration emit radiation, or contain or generate any substance which emits radiation, in order that radiation may be used;
  - (e) a product that—
    - (i) is covered by a marketing authorisation in which the product is classified as a pharmacy medicine or as a medicinal product subject to general sale, and
    - (ii) consists of or contains aloxiprin, aspirin or paracetamol in the form of non-effervescent tablets or capsules;
  - (f) a product that—
    - (i) is covered by a marketing authorisation in which the product is classified as a pharmacy medicine or as a medicinal product subject to general sale, and
    - (ii) consists of or contains (in any pharmaceutical form) pseudoephedrine salts or ephedrine base or salts; and
  - (g) a product that—
    - (i) is not covered by a marketing authorisation, and
    - (ii) is a prescription only medicine by virtue of articles 5 and 10 of, and Schedules 1 and 2 to, the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997 <sup>M93</sup>.

#### Textual Amendments

**F274** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 10** and words in Sch. 1 para. 1(b) inserted (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 10**

#### Marginal Citations

**M93** [S.I. 1997/1830](#), as amended by [S.I. 1997/2044](#), [S.I. 1998/108](#), [S.I. 1998/1178](#), [S.I. 1998/2081](#), [S.I. 1999/1044](#), [S.I. 1999/3463](#), [S.I. 2000/1917](#), [S.I. 2000/2899](#), [S.I. 2000/3231](#), [S.I. 2001/2777](#), [S.I.](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

2001/3942, S.I. 2003/696 and S.I. 2006/915 and these Regulations. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

2. In this Part “cyanogenic substances” means preparations which—
- (a) are presented for sale or supply under the name of, or as containing, amygdalin, laetrile or vitamin B17; or
  - (b) contain more than 0.1 per cent by weight of any substance having the formula either—
    - (i) alpha-Cyanobenzyl -6-O-Beta-d-glucopyranosyl -Beta-d-glucopyranoside, or
    - (ii) alpha-Cyanobenzyl -Beta-d-glucopyranosiduronic acid.

## PART 2

### Descriptions of certain medicinal products to be available only from a pharmacy

3. The following medicinal products shall be available only from a pharmacy—
- (a) a product comprising eye ointment;
  - (b) a product that contains Vitamin A, Vitamin A acetate or Vitamin A palmitate, in each case with a maximum daily dose equivalent to more than 7500 international units of Vitamin A or 2250 micrograms of retinol;
  - (c) a product that contains Vitamin D with a maximum daily dose of more than 400 units of antirachitic activity.
4. The following medicinal products shall be available only from a pharmacy unless they are the subject of a marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration that classifies them as medicinal products subject to general sale—
- (a) a product that is for use as an anthelmintic;
  - (b) a product that is for parenteral administration;
  - (c) a product that is for use as an enema;
  - (d) a product that is for use wholly or mainly for irrigation of—
    - (i) wounds, or
    - (ii) the bladder, vagina or rectum;
  - (e) a product that is for administration wholly or mainly to children being a preparation of aloxiprin or aspirin.
5. A medicinal product shall be available only from a pharmacy if it is a medicinal product of a kind specified in Schedule 15 but is not presented for sale in accordance with the requirements specified in that Schedule for a product of that kind to be subject to general sale.

## SCHEDULE 2

Regulation 16

### Supplementary provision relating to advisory bodies and expert advisory groups

#### *Terms of appointment*

- 1.—(1) The person appointed to chair an advisory body is to hold and vacate office in accordance with the written terms of the appointment (but this is subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)).



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) The person's term of office as chair of the advisory body is not to exceed the person's term of office as a member of the body.

(3) The person may resign from chairing the advisory body at any time by notice in writing to the Ministers.

**2.—**(1) A member of an advisory body, other than its chair, is to hold and vacate office in accordance with the written terms of the appointment (but this is subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)).

(2) The term of an appointment may not exceed four years (but an appointment may be renewed).

(3) A member of an advisory body may resign from it at any time by notice in writing to the Ministers.

(4) Where a person ceases to be a member of an advisory body, the person also ceases to be a member of any expert advisory group appointed by the advisory body (including an expert advisory group appointed jointly with the other advisory body).

(5) But sub-paragraph (4) does not apply if—

(a) the person was a member of the advisory body only by virtue of being co-opted under regulation 13; or

(b) the person is immediately re-appointed to the advisory body.

**3.—**(1) The person appointed to chair an expert advisory group is to hold and vacate office in accordance with the written terms of the appointment (but this is subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)).

(2) The person's term of office as chair of the expert advisory group is not to exceed the person's term of office as a member of the group.

(3) The person may resign from chairing the group at any time by notice in writing to the advisory body or bodies which appointed the group.

**4.—**(1) This paragraph applies to a member of an expert advisory group, other than a person appointed to chair an expert advisory group.

(2) The member is to hold and vacate office in accordance with the written terms of the appointment (but this is subject to sub-paragraphs (3) and (4)).

(3) The term of an appointment may not exceed four years (but an appointment may be renewed).

(4) The member may resign office at any time by notice in writing to the advisory body or bodies which appointed the group.

### *Facilities and proceedings*

**5.** The Ministers must provide each advisory body with such staff, accommodation, services and other facilities as the Ministers think necessary or expedient for the proper performance of its functions.

**6.** The validity of any proceedings of an advisory body or expert advisory group is not affected by—

(a) a vacancy among its members; or

(b) a defect in the appointment of any member.

**7.—**(1) An advisory body may, subject to approval by the Secretary of State, make such provision as it thinks fit for the regulation of its own proceedings.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) The licensing authority may make provision for the regulation of the proceedings of an expert advisory group.

### *Payment and expenses*

**8.** The Ministers may pay to the members of each advisory body and expert advisory group such remuneration (if any) and such allowances as may be determined by the Ministers with the consent of the Treasury.

**9.** The Ministers must defray any expenses incurred with their approval by each advisory body and expert advisory group.

**10.** If an action is brought against a person arising out of an act performed as a member of an advisory body or expert advisory group, the Ministers may indemnify that person against any damages, costs or expenses incurred in that action.

**11.** Paragraphs 8 to 10 shall have effect in relation to an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority and to its members as if they were an advisory body or expert advisory group and its members.

### *Status*

**12.** An advisory body or expert advisory group is not to be regarded—

- (a) as a servant or agent of the Crown; or
- (b) as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.

## SCHEDULE 3

Regulation 21(1)

### Applications for licences under Part 3

#### *Manufacturer's licences*

**1.—(1)** This paragraph applies to an application for a manufacturer's licence relating to the manufacture or assembly of medicinal products.

(2) The application must contain—

- (a) the name and address of the applicant;
- (b) the name and address of the person (if any) making the application on the applicant's behalf;
- (c) the address of each of the premises where any operations to which the licence relates are to be carried out;
- (d) the address of any premises not mentioned by virtue of paragraph (c) where—
  - (i) the applicant proposes to keep any living animals, from which a substance used in the production of the medicinal product to which the application relates is to be derived, or
  - (ii) materials of animal origin, from which a substance is to be derived as mentioned in sub-paragraph (i), are to be kept;
- (e) the address of each of the premises where medicinal products are to be stored, or from which medicinal products are to be distributed;
- (f) the name, address, qualifications and experience of the person (“S”) whose duty it will be to supervise the manufacturing or assembling operations, and the name and job title of the person to whom S reports;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (g) the name, address, qualifications and experience of the person with responsibility for quality control in relation to the medicinal products to be manufactured or assembled under the licence (and, if that responsibility is to be carried out by the holder of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration relating to the products, a statement of that fact);
  - (h) the name, address and qualifications of the person to be responsible for any animals kept as mentioned in sub-paragraph (d)(i);
  - (i) the name, address and qualifications of the person to be responsible for the culture of any living tissue for use in the manufacture of medicinal products;
  - (j) the name, address and qualifications of the qualified person.
- (3) The application must also contain—
- (a) the pharmaceutical form of each medicinal product to be manufactured or assembled;
  - (b) details of the manufacturing or assembling operations to which the licence is to relate, including a statement of whether they include—
    - (i) the manufacture of medicinal products, or
    - (ii) the assembly of medicinal products;
  - (c) a statement of whether the medicinal products are to be manufactured or assembled for the purpose of—
    - (i) being administered to human beings in that form, or
    - (ii) as an ingredient in the preparation of another medicinal product;
  - (d) a statement of the facilities and equipment available at each of the premises where medicinal products are to be stored, or from which medicinal products are to be distributed;
  - (e) a separate statement, in respect of each of the premises mentioned in the application, of—
    - (i) the manufacturing or assembling operations capable of being carried out at those premises, and the class of medicinal products to which those operations relate, and
    - (ii) the equipment available at those premises for carrying out each stage of those operations;
  - (f) a statement of the authority conferred on the person mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(g) to reject unsatisfactory medicinal products;
  - (g) a description of the arrangements for the identification and storage of materials and ingredients before and during manufacture or assembly and for the storage of medicinal products after manufacture or assembly;
  - (h) a description of the arrangements, at each of the premises where the applicant proposes to store medicinal products, for ensuring, so far as practicable, the turn-over of stocks of medicinal products;
  - (i) a description of the arrangements for maintaining—
    - (i) production records, and
    - (ii) records of analytical and other tests used in the course of manufacture or assembly for ensuring compliance of materials used in manufacture, or of medicinal products, with the specification for such materials or medicinal products;
  - (j) a description of the arrangements for keeping reference samples of—
    - (i) materials used in the manufacture of medicinal products, and
    - (ii) medicinal products;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (k) where the application relates to an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product, an outline of the arrangements for maintaining records to allow product traceability containing sufficient detail to enable the linking of a product to the patient who received it and vice versa; and
- (l) details of—
  - (i) any manufacturing operations, other than those to which the licence is to relate, carried on by the proposed licence holder on or near the premises mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(c), and
  - (ii) the substances or articles to which those operations relate.

### *Manufacturers' licence relating to import*

**2.—(1)** This paragraph applies to an application for a manufacturer's licence relating to the import from a state other than an EEA State of medicinal products.

- (2) The application must contain—
  - (a) the name and address of the applicant;
  - (b) the name and address of the person (if any) making the application on the applicant's behalf;
  - (c) the name, pharmaceutical form, country of origin and marketing authorisation number of each imported medicinal product;
  - (d) the address of each set of premises where the importation operation is to take place;
  - (e) the address of each set of premises where any testing associated with the importation is to take place;
  - (f) the address of each set of premises where medicinal products are to be stored, or from which they are to be distributed;
  - (g) the name, address and qualifications of the qualified person; and
  - (h) the name, address, qualifications and experience of the person in charge of quality control.
- (3) The application must also contain—
  - (a) details of the importation operations to which the licence is to relate;
  - (b) a statement of the facilities and equipment available at each set of premises where medicinal products are to be stored, or from which they are to be distributed;
  - (c) details of—
    - (i) any manufacturing of medicinal products carried on by the applicant on or near the premises mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(d) to (f), and
    - (ii) the substances or articles manufactured or used in the manufacturing;
  - (d) a description of the arrangements for storage of the medicinal products after importation;
  - (e) a description of the arrangements at each set of premises for ensuring, so far as practicable, the turn-over of stocks of medicinal products;
  - (f) a description of the arrangements for maintaining—
    - (i) records of importation, and
    - (ii) records of analytical and other procedures applied in the course of importation; and
  - (g) a description of the arrangements for keeping reference samples of the medicinal products.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Wholesale dealer's licences*

- 3.—(1) This paragraph applies to an application for a wholesale dealer's licence.
- (2) The application must contain—
- (a) the name and address of the applicant;
  - (b) the name and address of the person (if any) making the application on the applicant's behalf;
  - (c) the address of each of the premises where medicinal products are to be stored, or from which they are to be distributed; and
  - (d) the name, address and qualifications of the responsible person.
- (3) The application must also contain—
- (a) details of the distribution by way of wholesale dealing to which the licence is to relate;
  - (b) a statement of whether the medicinal products to which the distribution relates are the subject of—
    - (i) a marketing authorisation,
    - (ii) a certificate of registration,
    - (iii) a traditional herbal registration, or
    - (iv) an Article 126a authorisation;
  - (c) a statement of whether the medicinal products to which the distribution relates are—
    - (i) prescription only medicines,
    - (ii) pharmacy medicines, or
    - (iii) medicines subject to general sale;
  - (d) a statement of whether the medicinal products to which the distribution relates are—
    - (i) special medicinal products, or
    - (ii) sold or supplied pursuant to regulation 174 (supply in response to spread of pathogenic agents etc);
  - (e) a statement of whether the medicinal products dealt in under the licence are to be used—
    - (i) for administration to human beings, or
    - (ii) as ingredients in the preparation of medicinal products for administration to human beings;
  - (f) an indication of the range of medicinal products to be stored at each of the premises mentioned in the application;
  - (g) a statement of the facilities and equipment available at those premises for storing and distributing medicinal products;
  - (h) a description of the arrangements at those premises for ensuring, so far as practicable, the turn-over of stocks of medicinal products (whether by the maintenance of records or by other means);
  - (i) details of an emergency plan which satisfies the requirements of regulation 43(7)(b), and
  - (j) a description of the arrangements for keeping records relating to products received or dispatched.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (2)(d) “the responsible person” means the person who is to have responsibility, in relation to wholesale distribution activity carried out under the licence, for—
- (a) ensuring that any conditions subject to which the licence is granted are complied with; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) ensuring the quality of medicinal products being handled by the holder of the licence is being maintained in accordance with the requirements of the marketing authorisations, Article 126a authorisations, certificates of registration or traditional herbal registrations applicable to those products.

### *All licences*

**4.—(1)** If an application does not include information or other matters required under this Schedule, the application must state—

- (a) why that information is not applicable; or
  - (b) any other reason for not including them.
- (2) An application for a licence must be in English.
- (3) The pages of an application for a licence must be serially numbered.
- (4) The applicant must sign the application.
- (5) If the application is made by another person on behalf of the applicant, that person must also sign the application.

## SCHEDULE 4

Regulation 24

### Standard provisions of licences under Part 3

## PART 1

### Manufacturer's licence relating to manufacture and assembly

- 1.** The provisions of this Part are standard provisions of a manufacturer's licence relating to the manufacture or assembly of medicinal products.
- 2.** The licence holder must place the quality control system referred to in Article 11(1) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive under the authority of the person notified to the licensing authority in accordance with paragraph 1(2)(g) of Schedule 3.
- 3.** The licence holder may use a contract laboratory pursuant to Article 11(2) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive if the laboratory is operated by a person approved by the licensing authority.
- 4.** The licence holder must provide such information as may be requested by the licensing authority—
  - (a) about the products currently being manufactured or assembled by the licence holder; and
  - (b) about the operations being carried out in relation to such manufacture or assembly.
- 5.** The licence holder must inform the licensing authority of any change that the licence holder proposes to make to a person named in the licence as—
  - (a) the person whose duty it is to supervise the manufacturing or assembling operations;
  - (b) in charge of the animals from which are derived substances used in the production of the medicinal products being manufactured or assembled; or
  - (c) responsible for the culture of living tissues used in the manufacture of the medicinal products being manufactured or assembled.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**6.** The licence holder must—

- (a) keep readily available for inspection by a person authorised by the licensing authority the batch documentation referred to in Article 9(1) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive; and
- (b) permit the authorised person to take copies or make extracts from such documentation.

**7.** The licence holder must keep readily available for examination by a person authorised by the licensing authority the samples in each batch of finished medicinal product referred to in Article 11(4) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive.

**8.** Where the licence holder has been informed by the licensing authority that the strength, quality or purity of a batch of a medicinal product to which the licence relates has been found not to conform with—

- (a) the specification for the finished product; or
- (b) the provisions of these Regulations applicable to the medicinal product,

the holder must, if so directed, withhold the batch from distribution, so far as reasonably practicable, for a period (not exceeding six weeks) specified by the licensing authority.

**9.** The licence holder must ensure that tests for determining conformity with the standards and specifications applying to a product used in the manufacture of a medicinal product must, except so far as the conditions of the product specification for that product otherwise provide, be applied to samples taken from the medicinal product after all manufacturing processes have been completed, or at such earlier stage of the manufacture as may be approved by the licensing authority.

**10.** Where the manufacturer's licence relates to the assembly of a medicinal product or class of product, and the licence holder supplies the product at such a stage of assembly that does not fully comply with the provisions of the product specification which relate to labelling, the licence holder must communicate the particulars of those provisions to the person to whom that product has been supplied.

**11.** Where—

- (a) the manufacturer's licence relates to the assembly of a medicinal product;
- (b) the medicinal product is not manufactured by the licence holder; and
- (c) particulars of the name and address of the manufacturer of the product, or the person who imports the product, have been given by the licence holder to the licensing authority,

the licence holder must immediately notify the licensing authority in writing of any changes in the particulars.

**12.** The licence holder must keep readily available for examination by a person authorised by the licensing authority durable records of the details of the manufacture of intermediate products held by the licence holder for use in the manufacture of biological medicinal products, and the records must—

- (a) be in such form as to ensure that the licence holder has a comprehensive record of all matters that are relevant to an evaluation of the safety, quality and efficacy of a finished biological medicinal product manufactured using those intermediate products; and
- (b) not be destroyed without the consent of the licensing authority until the records of the details of manufacture of finished medicinal products which were or may be manufactured using those intermediate products may be destroyed in accordance with the requirements of these Regulations.

**13.** Where—

- (a) animals are used in the production of medicinal products; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration contains provisions relating to them,

the manufacturer's licence holder must arrange for the animals to be housed in such premises, and managed in such a manner, as facilitates compliance with those provisions.

**14.** The licence holder must take all reasonable precautions and exercise all due diligence to ensure that any information provided to the licensing authority is not false or misleading in any material particular if—

- (a) it relates to a medicinal product which the licence holder manufactures or assembles; or  
 (b) it relates to any starting materials or intermediate products held by the licence holder which are for use in the manufacture of medicinal products.

## PART 2

### Manufacturer's licence relating to the import of medicinal products from a state other than an EEA State

**15.** The provisions of this Part are standard provisions of a manufacturer's licence relating to the import of medicinal products from a state other than an EEA State.

**16.** The licence holder must place the quality control system referred to in Article 11(1) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive under the authority of the person notified to the licensing authority in accordance with paragraph 2(2)(h) of Schedule 3.

**17.** The licence holder may use a contract laboratory pursuant to Article 11(2) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive if operated by a person approved by the licensing authority.

**18.** The licence holder must provide such information as may be requested by the licensing authority concerning the type and quantity of any medicinal products which the licence holder imports.

**19.** The licence holder must—

- (a) keep readily available for inspection by a person authorised by the licensing authority the batch documentation referred to in Article 9(1) of the Good Manufacturing Practice Directive; and  
 (b) permit the person authorised to take copies or make extracts from such documentation.

**20.** Where the licence holder has been informed by the licensing authority that the strength, quality or purity of a batch of a medicinal product to which the licence relates has been found not to conform with—

- (a) the specification of the medicinal product in question; or  
 (b) those provisions of these Regulations that are applicable to the medicinal product,

the licence holder must, if so directed, withhold the batch from distribution, so far as reasonably practicable, for such a period (not exceeding six weeks) as may be specified by the licensing authority.

**21.** The licence holder must ensure that any tests for determining conformity with the standards and specifications applying to any ingredient used in the manufacture of a medicinal product must, except so far as the conditions of the product specification for that ingredient otherwise provide, be applied to samples taken from the medicinal product after all manufacturing processes have been completed, or at such earlier stage in the manufacture as may be approved by the licensing authority.



**22.**—(1) Where and in so far as the licence relates to special medicinal products, the licence holder may only import such products from a state other than an EEA State—

- (a) in response to an order which satisfies the requirements of regulation 167 (supply to fulfil special patient needs); and
- (b) where the conditions set out in sub-paragraphs (2) to (9) are complied with.

(2) No later than 28 days before the day on which each importation of a special medicinal product takes place, the licence holder must give written notice to the licensing authority stating the intention to import the product and stating the following particulars—

- (a) the brand name, common name or scientific name of the medicinal product and (if different) any name under which the medicinal product is to be sold or supplied in the United Kingdom;
- (b) any trademark or the name of the manufacturer of the medicinal product;
- (c) in respect of each active constituent of the medicinal product, any international non-proprietary name or the British approved name or the monograph name, or where that constituent does not have any of those, the accepted scientific name or any other name descriptive of the true nature of the constituent;
- (d) the quantity of medicinal product to be imported, which must not exceed the quantity specified in sub-paragraph (6); and
- (e) the name and address of the manufacturer or assembler of the medicinal product in the form in which it is to be imported and, if the person who will supply the medicinal product for importation is not the manufacturer or assembler, the name and address of the supplier.

(3) The licence holder may not import the special medicinal product if, before the end of 28 days beginning immediately after the date on which the licensing authority sends or gives the licence holder an acknowledgement in writing by the licensing authority that it has received the notice referred to in sub-paragraph (2), the licensing authority has notified the licence holder in writing that the product should not be imported.

(4) The licence holder may import the special medicinal product referred to in the notice where the licence holder has been notified in writing by the licensing authority, before the end of the 28-day period referred to in sub-paragraph (3) that the product may be imported.

(5) Where the licence holder sells or supplies special medicinal products, the licence holder must, in addition to any other records which are required by the provisions of the licence, make and maintain written records relating to—

- (a) the batch number of the batch of the product from which the sale or supply was made; and
- (b) details of any adverse reaction to the product sold or supplied of which the licence holder becomes aware.

(6) The licence holder must not, on any one occasion, import more than such amount as is sufficient for 25 single administrations, or for 25 courses of treatment where the amount imported is sufficient for a maximum of three months' treatment, and must not, on any one occasion, import more than the quantity notified to the licensing authority under sub-paragraph (2)(d).

(7) The licence holder must not publish any advertisement, catalogue or circular relating to a special medicinal product or make any representations in respect of that product.

(8) The licence holder must inform the licensing authority immediately of any matter coming to the licence holder's attention which might reasonably cause the licensing authority to believe that a special medicinal product imported in accordance with this paragraph can no longer be regarded as a product which can safely be administered to human beings or as a product which is of satisfactory quality for such administration.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(9) The licence holder must cease importing or supplying a special medicinal product if the licence holder receives a notice in writing from the licensing authority directing that, from a date specified in the notice, a particular product or class of products may no longer be imported or supplied.

(10) In this paragraph—

“British approved name” means the name which appears in the current edition of the list prepared by the British Pharmacopoeia Commission under regulation 318 (British Pharmacopoeia: lists of names);

“international non-proprietary name” means a name which has been selected by the World Health Organisation as a recommended international non-proprietary name and in respect of which the Director-General of the World Health Organisation has given notice to that effect in the World Health Organisation Chronicle; and

“monograph name” means the name or approved synonym which appears at the head of a monograph in the current edition of the British Pharmacopoeia, the European Pharmacopoeia or a foreign or international compendium of standards and “current” in this definition means current at the time the notice is sent to the licensing authority.

**23.** The licence holder must take all reasonable precautions and exercise due diligence to ensure that any information provided to the licensing authority which is relevant to an evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of a medicinal product for human use which is imported from a state other than an EEA State, handled, stored or distributed under the licence is not false or misleading in a material particular.

## PART 3

### Manufacturer's licence relating to exempt advanced therapy medicinal products

**24.** The provisions of paragraphs 25 to 27 are incorporated as additional standard provisions of a manufacturer's licence relating to the manufacture and assembly of exempt advanced therapy medicinal products.

**25.** The licence holder must ensure that the immediate packaging of an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product is labelled to show the following particulars—

- (a) the name of the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product;
- (b) the expiry date in clear terms including the year and month and, if applicable, the day;
- (c) a description of the active substance, expressed qualitatively and quantitatively;
- (d) where the product contains cells or tissues of human or animal origin—
  - (i) a statement that the product contains such cells or tissues, and
  - (ii) a short description of the cells or tissues and of their specific origin;
- (e) the pharmaceutical form and the contents by weight, volume or number of doses of the product;
- (f) a list of excipients, including preservative systems;
- (g) the method of use, application, administration or implantation and, if appropriate, the route of administration, with space provided for the prescribed dose to be indicated;
- (h) any special storage precautions;
- (i) specific precautions relating to the disposal of the unused product or waste derived from the product and, where appropriate, reference to any appropriate collection system;
- (j) the name and address of the holder of the manufacturer's licence;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (k) the manufacturer's licence number;
- (l) the manufacturer's batch number;
- (m) the unique donation code referred to in Article 8(2) of Directive 2004/23/EC; and
- (n) where the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product is for autologous use, the unique patient identifier and the words “for autologous use only”.

**26.** The licence holder must ensure that the package leaflet of the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product shall include the following particulars—

- (a) the name of the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product;
- (b) the intended effect of the medicinal product if correctly used, applied, administered or implanted;
- (c) where the product contains cells or tissues of human or animal origin—
  - (i) a statement that the product contains such cells or tissues, and
  - (ii) a short description of the cells or tissues and, where such cells or tissues are of animal origin, their specific origin;
- (d) where the product contains a medical device or an active implantable medical device, a description of that device and, where that device contains cells or tissues of animal origin, their specific origin;
- (e) any necessary instructions for use, including—
  - (i) the posology,
  - (ii) the method of use, application, administration or implantation and, if appropriate, the route of administration,
  - (iii) a description of symptoms of overdose,
  - (iv) action to be taken in the event of overdose, including any emergency procedures,
  - (v) action to be taken if one or more doses have been missed, and
  - (vi) a recommendation to consult the doctor or pharmacist for any clarification on the use of the product;
- (f) where adverse reactions are known, a description of those which may occur under recommended conditions of use of the product and, if appropriate, an indication of action to be taken in such a case;
- (g) an instruction that the patient report any adverse reaction not specified in the package leaflet to the doctor or pharmacist;
- (h) the expiry date in clear terms and a warning against using the product after that date;
- (i) any special storage precautions;
- (j) a description of any visible signs of deterioration;
- (k) a complete qualitative and quantitative composition;
- (l) the name and address of the holder of the manufacturer's licence; and
- (m) the date on which the package leaflet was last revised.

**27.** The licence holder must keep the data referred to in paragraph 8 of Schedule 6 for such period, being a period of longer than 30 years, as may be specified by the licensing authority.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART 4

### Wholesale dealer's licence

#### *All wholesale dealer's licences*

**28.** The provisions of this Part are standard provisions of a wholesale dealer's licence.

**29.** The licence holder must not use any premises for the handling, storage or distribution of medicinal products other than those specified in the licence or notified to the licensing authority from time to time and approved by the licensing authority.

**30.** The licence holder must provide such information as may be requested by the licensing authority concerning the type and quantity of medicinal products which the licence holder handles, stores or distributes.

**31.** The licence holder must take all reasonable precautions and exercise all due diligence to ensure that any information provided by the licence holder to the licensing authority which is relevant to an evaluation of the safety, quality or efficacy of a medicinal product which the licence holder handles, stores or distributes is not false or misleading.

#### *Wholesale dealer's licence relating to special medicinal products*

**32.** The provisions of paragraphs 33 to 42 are incorporated as additional standard provisions of a wholesale dealer's licence relating to special medicinal products.

**33.** Where and in so far as the licence relates to special medicinal products, the licence holder may only import such products from another EEA State—

- (a) in response to an order which satisfies the requirements of regulation 167, and
- (b) where the conditions set out in paragraphs 34 to 41 are complied with.

**34.** No later than 28 days prior to each importation of a special medicinal product, the licence holder must give written notice to the licensing authority stating the intention to import the product and stating the following particulars—

- (a) the brand name, common name or scientific name of the medicinal product and (if different) any name under which the medicinal product is to be sold or supplied in the United Kingdom;
- (b) any trademark or the name of the manufacturer of the medicinal product;
- (c) in respect of each active constituent of the medicinal product, any international non-proprietary name or the British approved name or the monograph name, or where that constituent does not have any of those, the accepted scientific name or any other name descriptive of the true nature of the constituent;
- (d) the quantity of medicinal product to be imported, which must not exceed the quantity specified in paragraph 38; and
- (e) the name and address of the manufacturer or assembler of the medicinal product in the form in which it is to be imported and, if the person who will supply the medicinal product for importation is not the manufacturer or assembler, the name and address of the supplier.

**35.** The licence holder may not import the special medicinal product if, before the end of 28 days beginning immediately after the date on which the licensing authority sends or gives the licence holder an acknowledgement in writing by the licensing authority that it has received the notice referred to in paragraph 34, the licensing authority has notified the licence holder in writing that the product should not be imported.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**36.** The licence holder may import the special medicinal product referred to in the notice where the licence holder has been notified in writing by the licensing authority, before the end of the 28-day period referred to in paragraph 35, that the product may be imported.

**37.** Where the licence holder sells or supplies special medicinal products, the licence holder must, in addition to any other records which are required by the provisions of the licence, make and maintain written records relating to—

- (a) the batch number of the batch of the product from which the sale or supply was made; and
- (b) details of any adverse reaction to the product sold or supplied of which the licence holder becomes aware.

**38.** The licence holder must not, on any one occasion, import more than such amount as is sufficient for 25 single administrations, or for 25 courses of treatment where the amount imported is sufficient for a maximum of three months' treatment, and must not, on any one occasion, import more than the quantity notified to the licensing authority under paragraph 34(d).

**39.** The licence holder must inform the licensing authority immediately of any matter coming to the licence holder's attention which might reasonably cause the licensing authority to believe that a special medicinal product imported in accordance with this paragraph can no longer be regarded as a product which can safely be administered to human beings or as a product which is of satisfactory quality for such administration.

**40.** The licence holder must not publish any advertisement, catalogue, or circular relating to a special medicinal product or make any representations in respect of that product.

**41.** The licence holder must cease importing or supplying a special medicinal product if the licence holder receives a notice in writing from the licensing authority directing that, from a date specified in the notice, a particular product or class of products may no longer be imported or supplied.

**42.** In this Part—

“British approved name” means the name which appears in the current edition of the list prepared by the British Pharmacopoeia Commission under regulation 318 (British Pharmacopoeia- lists of names);

“international non-proprietary name” means a name which has been selected by the World Health Organisation as a recommended international non-proprietary name and in respect of which the Director-General of the World Health Organisation has given notice to that effect in the World Health Organisation Chronicle; and

“monograph name” means the name or approved synonym which appears at the head of a monograph in the current edition of the British Pharmacopoeia, the European Pharmacopoeia or a foreign or international compendium of standards, and “current” in this definition means current at the time the notice is sent to the licensing authority.

#### *Wholesale dealer's licence relating to exempt advanced therapy medicinal products*

**43.** The provisions of paragraph 44 are incorporated as additional standard provisions of a wholesale dealer's licence relating to exempt advanced therapy medicinal products.

**44.** The licence holder shall keep the data referred to in paragraph 16 of Schedule 6 for such period, being a period of longer than 30 years, as may be specified by the licensing authority.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 5

Regulation 27; Schedule 11 paragraphs  
11(3), 13(3), 23(4) and 30(4)

Review upon oral representations

### *Application of this Schedule*

<sup>[F275]</sup>1.—(1) This Schedule applies if a person (“the applicant”) mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) notifies the licensing authority that the applicant wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal or as the case may be the decision to review upon oral representations under—

- (a) regulation 27(3)(b);
- (b) regulation 45H(3)(b);
- (c) regulation 45R(3)(b);
- (d) regulation 256J(4)(b); or
- (e) Part 1, 2 or 3 of Schedule 11.

(2) Those persons are—

- (a) in respect of notification under regulation 27(3)(b) the licence holder;
- (b) in respect of a notification under regulation 45H(3)(b) the person registered as a broker;
- (c) in respect of a notification under regulation 45R(3)(b) the person with an active substance registration;
- (d) in respect of a notification under regulation 256J(4)(b) the person on the list in accordance with Part 12A; and
- (e) in respect of a notification under Part 1, 2 or 3 of Schedule 11—
  - (i) an applicant for a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration,
  - (ii) an applicant for the renewal of an authorisation, certificate or registration, and
  - (iii) the holder of an authorisation, certificate or registration.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F275** Sch. 5 para. 1 substituted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **32(a)**

### *Appointment of reviewers*

2.—(1) The licensing authority must—

- (a) appoint a panel of at least two persons (“the reviewers”) to conduct the review; and
- (b) provide facilities for the applicant to have the opportunity to appear before the reviewers.

(2) A person must not be appointed under sub-paragraph (1) if within the period of one year immediately preceding that time the person has been a member of—

- (a) the Commission;
- (b) an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority;
- (c) an expert advisory group;
- (d) the British Pharmacopoeia Commission or any of its sub-committees;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) the Advisory Board on the Registration of Homoeopathic Products formerly established under section 4 of the Medicines Act 1968; or
  - (f) the Herbal Medicines Advisory Committee formerly established under section 4 of the Medicines Act 1968.
- (3) A person appointed under sub-paragraph (1) must not be an officer or servant of a Minister of the Crown, the Scottish Ministers, the Welsh Ministers or a Northern Ireland Minister.

#### *Procedure before hearing*

3.—(1) The applicant must supply the reviewers with a written summary of the oral representations that the applicant wishes to make and any documents on which the applicant wishes to rely in support of them before the end of the period of three months beginning with the date of the notification mentioned in paragraph 1.

(2) The reviewers may, at the request of the applicant and after consulting the licensing authority, extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of six months beginning with the date of that notification.

(3) The applicant may submit additional written representations or documents after the end of the periods for doing so only with the permission of the reviewers.

(4) In the case of a decision or a proposal by the licensing authority under Part 1, 2 or 3 of Schedule 11, the representations and documents referred to in paragraphs (1) and (3)—

- (a) must not be based on any evidence or data that was not available to the licensing authority at the time that the decision or, as the case may be, the proposal that is the subject of the review was notified to the applicant by the licensing authority; unless
- (b) the evidence or data is unfavourable in respect of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product concerned.

(5) The reviewers must notify the applicant and the licensing authority of the date of the hearing at least 28 days before that date, unless the applicant and the licensing authority agree to a shorter period of notice.

(6) The reviewers may establish at any stage of the procedures described in this Schedule a date by which all of those procedures, except for the hearing, must be completed, and notify this date to the applicant and to the licensing authority.

(7) The date established under sub-paragraph (6) must not be earlier than whichever is the earlier of—

- (a) the first day after the end of the period of three months beginning with the date of the notification mentioned in paragraph 1; or
- (b) the first day after the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the reviewers receive the written summary of the oral representations and supporting documents submitted in accordance with sub-paragraphs (1) and (3) of this paragraph,

and in any case not earlier than the first day after the period of seven days beginning on the day after the notification under sub-paragraph (6).

(8) A date established under sub-paragraph (6) may be varied or withdrawn on the application of the applicant or of the licensing authority.

(9) In the case of a decision or a proposal by the licensing authority under Part 1, 2 or 3 of Schedule 11, the reviewers must not take into account any documents or other evidence, or any representations based on such documents or evidence, in the conduct of the hearing if it thinks that the data or evidence on which the documents or representations are based, or the evidence that is presented, were not available to the licensing authority at the time when the decision or, as the case may be, the proposal that is the subject of the review was notified to the applicant by the licensing

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

authority, unless the evidence or data is unfavourable in respect of the safety, quality or efficacy of the product concerned.

(10) The reviewers may give such other directions as they think fit for the conduct of the hearing, including—

- (a) the postponing or adjournment of the hearing for such period as it may decide; and
- (b) establishing a list of documents that will be taken into account in the conduct of the hearing.

(11) If the applicant fails to comply with a time limit under sub-paragraph (1), (2) or (6)—

- (a) the applicant may not appear before the reviewers; and
- (b) the licensing authority must decide whether—
  - (i) to proceed with its proposal to revoke, vary or suspend the licence,
  - (ii) to confirm or alter its decision,
  - (iii) to refer the application to the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products,
  - (iv) to grant or renew the UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration or to do so otherwise than in accordance with the application,<sup>F276</sup> ...
  - (v) to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation, certificate or registration,
  - [<sup>F277</sup>(vi) to proceed to suspend, vary or remove the person's broker registration,
  - (vii) to proceed to suspend, vary or remove the person's active substance registration, or
  - (viii) to proceed to suspend, vary or remove the person's entry on the list,]

as the case may be.

(12) The licensing authority must notify the applicant of its decision.

#### Textual Amendments

**F276** Word in Sch. 5 para. 3(11)(b)(iv) omitted (20.8.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **32(b)(i)**

**F277** Sch. 5 para. 3(11)(b)(vi)-(viii) inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **32(b)(ii)**

#### *Procedure at hearing*

4.—(1) Both the applicant and the licensing authority may make representations at the hearing.

(2) The hearing must be in public if the applicant so requests.

(3) If the applicant fails to appear at the hearing, the reviewers may conduct the review on the basis of the applicant's written summary of the oral representations and supporting documents submitted in accordance with sub-paragraphs (1), (2) and (3) of paragraph 3.

#### *Procedure following hearing*

5.—(1) After the hearing the reviewers must provide a report to the licensing authority and to the applicant either—

- (a) by the end of the period of 60 days beginning with the day after the conclusion of the hearing; or
- (b) within such further period as the reviewers may notify to the licensing authority and to the applicant within that 60 day period.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The licensing authority must take the report into account and decide whether—
- (a) to proceed with its proposal to revoke, vary or suspend the licence;
  - (b) to confirm or alter its decision;
  - (c) to refer the application to the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products;
  - (d) to grant or renew the UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration or to do so otherwise than in accordance with the application; <sup>F278</sup> ...
  - [<sup>F279</sup>(e) to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation, certificate or registration;
  - (f) to proceed to suspend, vary or remove a person's broker registration;
  - (g) to proceed to suspend, vary or remove a person's active substance registration; or
  - (h) to proceed to suspend, vary or remove a person's entry on the list,]
- as the case may be.
- (3) The licensing authority must notify the applicant of its decision.

#### Textual Amendments

- F278** Word in Sch. 5 para. 5(2)(d) omitted (20.8.2013) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **32(c)(i)**
- F279** Sch. 5 para. 5(2)(e)-(h) substituted for Sch. 5 para. 5(2)(e) (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), **32(c)(ii)**

## SCHEDULE 6

Regulations 36(3) and 42(3)

Manufacturer's and wholesale dealer's licences for exempt advanced therapy medicinal products

### PART 1

#### Manufacturer's licences

1. The requirements in paragraphs 2 to 12 apply to a manufacturer's licence insofar as it relates to the manufacture and assembly of exempt advanced therapy medicinal products.
2. The licence holder must inform the licensing authority of any adverse reaction or suspected adverse reaction of which the holder is aware within the period of 15 days beginning on the day following the first day on which the holder knew about the reaction.
3. The licence holder must ensure, if using human cells or tissues in an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product, that the donation, procurement and testing of those cells or tissues is in accordance with Directive [2004/23/EC](#).
4. The licence holder must ensure that any human tissue or cell component imported into the United Kingdom and used by the holder as a starting material or raw material in the manufacture of an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product shall meet equivalent standards of quality and safety to those laid down in—
  - (a) Commission Directive [2006/17/EC](#) of 8 February 2006 implementing Directive [2004/23/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards certain technical requirements for the donation, procurement and testing of human tissues and cells <sup>M194</sup>; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) Commission Directive [2006/86/EC](#) of 24 October 2006 implementing Directive [2004/23/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards traceability requirements, notification of serious adverse reactions and events and certain technical requirements for the coding, processing, preservation, storage and distribution of human tissues and cells <sup>M95</sup>.

**Marginal Citations**

**M94** OJ No L 38, 9.2.2006, p. 40.

**M95** OJ No L 294, 25.10.2006, p. 32.

5. The licence holder must ensure that any blood or blood component imported into the United Kingdom and used by the manufacturer's licence holder as a starting material or raw material in the manufacture of an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product meets equivalent standards of quality and safety to those laid down in Commission Directive [2004/33/EC](#) of 22 March 2004 implementing Directive [2002/98/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards certain technical requirements for blood and blood components <sup>M96</sup>.

**Marginal Citations**

**M96** OJ No L 91, 30.3.2004, p. 25, as amended by Commission Directive 2011/38/EU, OJ No L 94, 12.4.2011, p. 28.

6. Where the holder of a manufacturer's licence distributes by way of wholesale dealing any exempt advanced therapy medicinal product manufactured or assembled pursuant to the licence that person must comply with—

- (a) the requirements of paragraphs 15, 16, 18 and 19; and
- (b) the guidelines on good distribution practice published by the European Commission in accordance with Article 84 of the 2001 Directive;

as if that person were the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence.

7. The licence holder must, at the written request of the licensing authority, set up a risk management system designed to identify, characterise, prevent or minimise risks related to the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product.

8. The licence holder must establish and maintain a system ensuring that the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product and its starting and raw materials, including all substances coming into contact with the cells or tissues it may contain, can be traced through the sourcing, manufacturing, packaging, storage, transport and delivery to the establishment where the product is used.

9. The licence holder must, subject to paragraph 27 of Schedule 4, keep the data referred to in paragraph 8 for a minimum of 30 years after the expiry date of the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product.

10. The licence holder must secure that the data referred to in paragraph 8 will, in the event that—

- (a) the licence is suspended, revoked or withdrawn; or
- (b) the licence holder becomes bankrupt or insolvent,

be held available to the licensing authority by the holder of a manufacturer's licence for the period described in paragraph 9 or such longer period as may be required pursuant to paragraph 27 of Schedule 4.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**11.** The licence holder must, where an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product contains human cells or tissues, ensure that the traceability system established in accordance with paragraph 8 is complementary to and compatible with the requirements laid down in—

- (a) Articles 8 and 14 of Directive [2004/23/EC](#) as regards human cells and tissues other than blood cells, and
- (b) as regards human blood cells, Articles 14 and 24 of Directive [2002/98/EC](#).

**12.** The licence holder must not import or export any exempt advanced therapy medicinal product.

## PART 2

### Wholesale dealer's licences

**13.** The requirements in paragraphs 14 to 20 apply to a wholesale dealer's licence insofar as it relates to exempt advanced therapy medicinal products.

**14.** The licence holder must obtain supplies of exempt advanced therapy medicinal products only from—

- (a) the holder of a manufacturer's licence in respect of those products; or
- (b) the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence in respect of those products.

**15.** The licence holder must distribute an exempt advanced therapy medicinal product by way of wholesale dealing only to—

- (a) the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence in respect of those products; or
- (b) a person who—
  - (i) may lawfully administer those products, and
  - (ii) solicited the product for an individual patient.

**16.** The licence holder must establish and maintain a system ensuring that the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product and its starting and raw materials, including all substances coming into contact with the cells or tissues it may contain, can be traced through the sourcing, manufacturing, packaging, storage, transport and delivery to the establishment where the product is used.

**17.** The licence holder must inform the licensing authority of any adverse reaction to any exempt advanced therapy medicinal product supplied by the holder of the wholesale dealer's licence of which the holder is aware.

**18.** The licence holder must, subject to paragraph 44 of Schedule 4, keep the data referred to in paragraph 16 for a minimum of 30 years after the expiry date of the exempt advanced therapy medicinal product.

**19.** The licence holder must secure that the data referred to in paragraph 16 will, in the event that—

- (a) the licence is suspended, revoked or withdrawn; or
- (b) the licence holder becomes bankrupt or insolvent,

be held available to the licensing authority by the holder of a wholesale dealer's licence for the period described in paragraph 18 or such longer period as may be required pursuant to paragraph 44 of Schedule 4.

**20.** The licence holder must not import or export any exempt advanced therapy medicinal product.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 7

Regulation 41

### Qualified persons

## PART 1

### Qualification requirements for qualified person

1. A person must satisfy the requirements in paragraphs 2 and 8 or, alternatively, the requirements in paragraphs 7 and 8, of this Schedule before acting as a qualified person (but this is subject to Part 2).

2. The person must have a degree, diploma or other formal qualification which satisfies the requirements of this Part, in one of the following subjects—

- (a) pharmacy;
- (b) medicine;
- (c) veterinary medicine;
- (d) chemistry;
- (e) pharmaceutical chemistry and technology; or
- (f) biology,

but this paragraph is subject to paragraph 7.

3. A qualification satisfies the requirements of this Part if it is awarded on completion of a university course of study, or a course recognised as equivalent by the member State in which it is studied, which—

- (a) satisfies the minimum requirements specified in paragraph 4; and
- (b) extends over a period of at least four years of theoretical and practical study of a subject specified in paragraph 2 (but this is subject to paragraphs 5 and 6).

4.—(1) A course should include at least the following core subjects—

- (a) experimental physics;
- (b) general and inorganic chemistry;
- (c) organic chemistry;
- (d) analytical chemistry;
- (e) pharmaceutical chemistry, including analysis of medicinal products;
- (f) general and applied medical biochemistry;
- (g) physiology;
- (h) microbiology;
- (i) pharmacology;
- (j) pharmaceutical technology;
- (k) toxicology; and
- (l) pharmacognosy.

(2) The subjects mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) should be balanced in such a way as to enable the person to fulfil the obligations specified in Part 3 of this Schedule.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

5. If the course referred to in paragraph 3 is followed by a period of theoretical and practical training of at least one year, including a training period of at least six months in a pharmacy open to the public and a final examination at university level, the minimum duration of the course is three and a half years.

6. If two university courses, or courses recognised as of university equivalent standard, co-exist, one of which extends over four years and the other over three years, the three-year course is to be treated as fulfilling the condition as to the duration of the course in paragraph 3, provided that the member State in which the courses take place recognises the formal qualifications gained from each course as being equivalent.

7. If the person's formal qualifications do not satisfy the requirements of this Part, the person may act as a qualified person if the licensing authority is satisfied, on the production of evidence, that the person has adequate knowledge of the subjects specified in paragraph 4(1).

8.—(1) The person must (subject to sub-paragraph (2)) have at least two years' practical experience in an undertaking authorised to manufacture medicinal products of—

- (a) qualitative analysis of medicinal products;
- (b) quantitative analysis of active substances; and
- (c) the testing and checking necessary to ensure the quality of medicinal products.

(2) But—

- (a) if the person has completed a university course lasting at least five years, the minimum period of practical experience under this paragraph is one year; and
- (b) if the person has completed a university course lasting at least six years, the minimum period of practical experience under this paragraph is six months.

## PART 2

### Qualified persons with long experience

9.—(1) This paragraph applies to a person who has acted as a qualified person since the coming into force of Directive 75/319/EEC of 20 May 1975 on the approximation of provisions laid down by law, regulation or administrative action relating to proprietary medicinal products<sup>M97</sup>.

(2) A person to whom this paragraph applies may continue to act as a qualified person.

#### Marginal Citations

**M97** OJ No L 147, 9.6.1975, p.13, no longer in force.

10.—(1) This paragraph applies to a person who—

- (a) holds a degree, diploma or other formal qualification in a scientific discipline awarded on completion of a university course or course recognised as equivalent; and
- (b) began the course before 21 May 1975.

(2) A person to whom this paragraph applies may act as a qualified person provided that sub-paragraph (3) (and, where applicable, paragraph 11) is satisfied.

(3) This sub-paragraph is satisfied if, for at least two years before 21 May 1985, the person has carried out one of the following activities in an undertaking authorised to manufacture medicinal products—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) production supervision;
- (b) qualitative and quantitative analysis of active substances; or
- (c) testing and checking, under the direct supervision of the qualified person in respect of the undertaking, to ensure the quality of the medicinal products.

**11.** If a person to whom paragraph 10 applies acquired the practical experience mentioned in paragraph 10(3) before 21 May 1965, the person must complete a further one year's practical experience of the kind specified in that paragraph immediately before the person may act as a qualified person.

## PART 3

### Obligations of qualified person

**12.** The qualified person is responsible for securing—

- (a) that each batch of medicinal products manufactured in the United Kingdom has been manufactured and checked in accordance with these Regulations and the requirements of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration relating to those products; and
- (b) in the case of medicinal products imported from a non-EEA State, irrespective of whether the products have been manufactured in an EEA State, that each batch has undergone—
  - (i) a full qualitative analysis,
  - (ii) a quantitative analysis of all the active substances, and
  - (iii) all other tests or checks necessary to ensure the quality of medicinal products in accordance with the requirements of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration relating to those products.

**13.—(1)** This paragraph applies where—

- (a) a medicinal product which has undergone the controls referred to in paragraph 12 in another member State is imported to the United Kingdom; and
- (b) each batch of the product is accompanied by control reports signed by another qualified person in respect of the medicinal product.

(2) Where this paragraph applies, the qualified person is not responsible for carrying out the controls referred to in paragraph 12.

**14.—(1)** This paragraph applies where—

- (a) medicinal products are imported from a country other than an EEA State; and
- (b) appropriate arrangements have been made by the European Union with that country to ensure that—
  - (i) the manufacturer of the medicinal products applies standards of good manufacturing practice at least equivalent to those laid down by the European Union, and
  - (ii) the controls referred to in paragraph 12(b) have been carried out in that country.

(2) Where this paragraph applies, the qualified person is not responsible for carrying out the controls referred to in paragraph 12.

15.—(1) The qualified person is responsible for ensuring, in relation to a medicinal product, that documentary evidence is produced that each batch of the product satisfies the requirements of paragraph 12.

(2) The documentary evidence referred to in sub-paragraph (1) must be kept up to date and must be available for inspection by the licensing authority for a period of at least five years.

<sup>F280</sup>SCHEDULE 7A

Regulation 45N(5)(b)

Information to be provided for registration as an importer, manufacturer or distributor of active substances

**Textual Amendments**

**F280** Sch. 7A inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 33

1. The name and address of the applicant.
2. The name and address of the person (if any) making the application on the applicant's behalf.
3. The address of each of the premises where any operations to which the registration relates are to be carried out.
4. The address of any premises not mentioned by virtue of the above requirement, where—
  - (a) the applicant proposes to keep any living animals, from which substance(s) used in the production of the active substance(s) to which the application relates are to be derived;
  - (b) materials of animal origin from which an active substance is to be derived, as mentioned in the above sub-paragraph, are to be kept.
5. The address of each of the premises where active substances are to be stored, or from which active substances are to be distributed.
6. The address of each of the premises where any testing associated with the manufacture or assembly of active substances to which the registration relates.
7. The name, address, qualifications and experience of the person whose duty it will be to supervise any manufacturing operations, and the name and job title of the person to whom they report.
8. The name, address, qualifications and experience of the person who will have responsibility for the quality control of active substances, and the name and job title of the person to whom they report.
9. The name, address, qualifications and experience of the person whose duty it will be to supervise any importation, storage or distribution operations, and the name and job title of the person to whom they report.
10. The name, address and qualifications of the person to be responsible for any animals kept as mentioned in paragraph 4(a).
11. The name, address and qualifications of the person to be responsible for the culture of any living tissue for use in the manufacture of an active substance.
12. For each active substance to be manufactured, imported, or distributed—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the CAS registration number assigned to that active substance by the Chemical Abstracts Service, a division of the American Chemical Society;
  - (b) where applicable, the Anatomical Therapeutic Category code assigned to that active substance under the Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical Classification System used for the classification of drugs by the World Health Organisation's Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology;
  - (c) either—
    - (i) the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry nomenclature, or
    - (ii) the common name; and
  - (d) the intended quantities of each active substance to be manufactured, imported or distributed.
- 13.** Details of the operations to which the registration relates, including a statement of whether they include—
- (a) the manufacture of active substances;
  - (b) the importation of active substances from third countries;
  - (c) the storage of active substances; or
  - (d) the distribution of active substances.
- 14.** A statement of the facilities and equipment available at each of the premises where active substances are to be manufactured, stored or distributed.
- 15.** A statement as to whether the particular active substances are intended for—
- (a) use in a medicinal product with an EU marketing authorisation;
  - (b) use in a special medicinal product; or
  - (c) export to a third country.
- 16.** A separate statement in respect of each of the premises mentioned in the application of—
- (a) the manufacturing, storage or distribution operations carried out at those sites, and the specific active substances to which those activities relate; and
  - (b) the equipment available at those premises for carrying out those activities.
- 17.** A statement of the authority conferred on the person responsible for quality control to reject unsatisfactory active substances.
- 18.** A description of the arrangements for the identification and storage of materials before and during the manufacture of active substances.
- 19.** A description of the arrangements for the identification and storage of active substances.
- 20.** A description of the arrangements at each of the premises where the applicant proposes to store active substances for ensuring, as far as practicable, the turn-over of stocks of active substances.
- 21.** A description of the arrangements for maintaining—
- (a) production records, including records of manufacture and assembly;
  - (b) records of analytical and other tests used in the course of manufacture or assembly for ensuring compliance of materials use in manufacture, or of active substances, with the specification for such materials or active substances;
  - (c) records of importation;
  - (d) records of storage and distribution.
- 22.** A description of the arrangements for keeping reference samples of—



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) materials used in the manufacture of active substances; and
- (b) active substances.

**23.** Where the application relates to active substances intended for use in an advanced therapy medicinal product, an outline of the arrangements for maintaining records to allow traceability containing sufficient detail to enable the linking of an active substance to the advanced therapy medicinal product it was used in the manufacture of and vice versa.

**24.** Details of—

- (a) any manufacturing, importation, storage or distribution operations, other than those to which the application for registration relates, carried on by the applicant on or near each of the premises, and
- (b) the substances or articles to which those operations relate.]

## SCHEDULE 8

Regulation 50(1)

Material to accompany an application for a UK marketing authorisation

### PART 1

#### General requirements

- 1.** The name or corporate name and permanent address of the applicant and (where applicable) of the manufacturer of the medicinal product.
- 2.** The name of the medicinal product. This may be—
  - (a) an invented name that is not liable to confusion with the product's common name; or
  - (b) a common or scientific name accompanied by a trademark or by the name of the person who is to be the marketing authorisation holder.
- 3.** Qualitative and quantitative particulars of the constituents of the medicinal product, including—
  - (a) where there is an international non-proprietary name recommended by the World Health Organisation for a constituent, a reference to that name; or
  - (b) otherwise, a reference to the relevant chemical name.
- 4.** An evaluation of the potential environmental risks posed by the medicinal product, including an assessment of its environmental impact and a description of the proposed arrangements for limiting that impact on a case by case basis.
- 5.** A description of the methods of manufacturing the medicinal product.
- 6.** The therapeutic indications and contra-indications for the medicinal product and the adverse reactions associated with it.
- 7.** The posology and pharmaceutical form of the medicinal product, its method and route of administration and its expected shelf life.
- 8.** The reasons for any precautionary and safety measures to be taken for—
  - (a) the storage of the medicinal product;
  - (b) the administration of the medicinal product to patients; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(c) the disposal of the medicinal product and any waste products,  
with an indication of the potential risks presented by the medicinal product for the environment.

9. A description of the control methods employed by the manufacturer.

[<sup>F281</sup>9A. A written confirmation that the manufacturer of the medicinal product has verified compliance of the manufacturer of the active substance with the principles and guidelines of good manufacturing practice by conducting audits, in accordance with regulation 37(5)(a) and containing—

- (a) information about the date of the audit; and
- (b) a declaration that the outcome of the audit confirms that the manufacturing complies with the principles and guidelines of good manufacturing practice.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F281** Sch. 8 para. 9A inserted (20.8.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1855\)](#), regs. 1(1), 34

10. The results of the following in relation to the medicinal product and its constituent active substances—

- (a) pharmaceutical (physico-chemical, biological or microbiological) tests;
- (b) pre-clinical (toxicological and pharmacological) tests; and
- (c) clinical trials.

11. A detailed summary of those results prepared and signed by an expert with appropriate technical or professional qualifications, which must be set out in a brief curriculum vitae.

12. A summary of the applicant's pharmacovigilance system which shall include the following elements—

- (a) proof that the applicant has at the applicant's disposal an appropriately qualified person responsible for pharmacovigilance;
- (b) the member States in which the appropriately qualified person resides and carries out his or her tasks;
- (c) the contact details of the appropriately qualified person;
- (d) a statement signed by the applicant to the effect that the applicant has the necessary means to fulfil the tasks and responsibilities listed in Part 11; and
- (e) a reference to the location where the pharmacovigilance system master file for the medicinal product is kept.

13. The risk management plan, together with a summary, that—

- (a) describes the risk management system which the applicant will introduce for the medicinal product concerned; and
- (b) shall be proportionate to the identified risks and the potential risks of the medicinal product, and the need for post-authorisation safety data.

14. Where any clinical trials have been carried out outside the European Union, a statement to the effect that the trials met the ethical requirements of the Clinical Trials Directive.

15. A summary of the product characteristics for the medicinal product in accordance with Part 2 of this Schedule.

16. A mock-up, in accordance with Part 13 (packaging and leaflets) of—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the outer packaging of the medicinal product;
- (b) the immediate packaging of the medicinal product; and
- (c) the package leaflet for the medicinal product.

**17.** A document showing that the manufacturer of the medicinal product is authorised to produce medicinal products in the manufacturer's own country.

**18.** Where an application for authorisation for the medicinal product to be placed on the market is under consideration in a member State or States—

- (a) a list of the member State or States concerned; and
- (b) in relation to each application, a copy of—
  - (i) the summary of the product characteristics proposed by the applicant, and
  - (ii) the package leaflet proposed by the applicant.

**19.** Where an authorisation for the medicinal product to be placed on the market has been granted by a member State or by a third country—

- (a) a copy of that authorisation;
- (b) a summary of the safety data, including the data contained in the periodic safety update reports, where available; and
- (c) any suspected adverse reaction reports.

**20.** Where an authorisation for the medicinal product to be placed on the market has been granted by a member State in accordance with the 2001 Directive, a copy of—

- (a) the summary of the product characteristics approved by the competent authority of the member State; and
- (b) the package leaflet approved by that competent authority.

**21.** Where an authorisation for the medicinal product to be placed on the market has been refused by a member State or by a third country, details of that decision and of the reasons for it.

**22.** A copy of any designation of the medicinal product as an orphan medicinal product under Regulation (EC) No. 141/2000 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 1999 on orphan medicinal products<sup>M98</sup> together with a copy of the relevant Agency opinion.

**Marginal Citations**

**M98** OJ No L 18, 22.1.2000, p.1, as amended by Regulation (EC) No 596/2009 (OJ No L 188, 18.7.2009, p.14).

## PART 2

### Summary of the product characteristics

The summary of the product characteristics must contain the following information in the following order—

(23) For medicinal products included on the list referred to in Article 23 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004, the statement “This medicinal product is subject to additional monitoring”.

(24) The name of the medicinal product followed by its strength and pharmaceutical form.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (25) The qualitative and quantitative composition, using the usual common name or chemical description, of the medicinal product in terms of—
- (a) the active substances; and
  - (b) those excipients of which knowledge is essential for proper administration of the medicinal product.
- (26) The pharmaceutical form of the medicinal product.
- (27) Clinical particulars in relation to the medicinal product, covering—
- (a) therapeutic indications;
  - (b) posology and method of administration for adults and, where necessary, for children;
  - (c) contra-indications;
  - (d) special warnings and precautions for use and, in the case of immunological medicinal products any special precautions to be taken by persons handling such products and administering them to patients, together with any precautions to be taken by the patient;
  - (e) interaction with other medicinal products and other forms of interactions;
  - (f) use during pregnancy and lactation;
  - (g) effects on ability to drive and to use machines;
  - (h) other undesirable effects; and
  - (i) information on overdose (including symptoms, emergency procedures and antidotes).
- (28) The pharmacological properties of the medicinal product, covering—
- (a) pharmacodynamic properties;
  - (b) pharmacokinetic properties; and
  - (c) pre-clinical safety data.
- (29) Pharmaceutical particulars in relation to the medicinal product, covering—
- (a) a list of excipients;
  - (b) major incompatibilities;
  - (c) shelf life after reconstitution of the medicinal product or when the immediate packaging is opened for the first time (as appropriate);
  - (d) special precautions for storage;
  - (e) nature and contents of container; and
  - (f) special precautions for disposal of the used medicinal product or waste materials derived from the medicinal product (as appropriate).
- (30) The holder of the UK marketing authorisation.
- (31) The number of the UK marketing authorisation.
- (32) The date of the first UK marketing authorisation or, where the UK marketing authorisation has been renewed, the date of the last renewal.
- (33) The date of any revisions of the text of the summary of the product characteristics.
- (34) For radiopharmaceuticals, full details of internal radiation dosimetry.
- (35) For radiopharmaceuticals, additional detailed instructions for extemporaneous preparation and quality control of such preparation and, where appropriate, maximum storage time during which any intermediate preparation such as an eluate or the ready-to-use pharmaceutical will conform with its specifications.

[<sup>F282</sup>SCHEDULE 8A

Regulation 50(1A)

Material to accompany an application for a parallel import licence

**Textual Amendments**

**F282** Sch. 8A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, 26 and Sch. 8A inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), 26

1. The name or corporate name and permanent address of the applicant.
2. The name of the medicinal product. This may be—
  - (a) an invented name that is not liable to confusion with the product's common name; or
  - (b) a common or scientific name accompanied by a trademark or by the name of the person who is to be the parallel import licence holder.
3. Details of the product to be imported if requested by the licensing authority.
4. Details of the UK reference product.
5. If requested by the licensing authority, an evaluation of the potential environmental risks posed by the medicinal product, including an assessment of its environmental impact and a description of the proposed arrangements for limiting that impact on a case by case basis.
6. If requested by the licensing authority, a summary of the applicant's pharmacovigilance system which shall include the following elements—
  - (a) proof that the applicant has at the applicant's disposal an appropriately qualified person responsible for pharmacovigilance;
  - (b) the member States in which the appropriately qualified person resides and carries out his or her tasks;
  - (c) the contact details of the appropriately qualified person;
  - (d) a statement signed by the applicant to the effect that the applicant has the necessary means to fulfil the tasks and responsibilities listed in Part 11; and
  - (e) a reference to the location where the pharmacovigilance system master file for the medicinal product is kept.
7. If requested by the licensing authority, the risk management plan, together with a summary, that—
  - (a) describes the risk management system which the applicant will introduce for the medicinal product concerned; and
  - (b) shall be proportionate to the identified risks and the potential risks of the medicinal product, and the need for post-authorisation safety data.
8. If requested by the licensing authority, a summary of the product characteristics for the medicinal product in accordance with Part 2 of Schedule 8.
9. A mock-up, in accordance with Part 13 (packaging and leaflets) of—
  - (a) the outer packaging of the medicinal product;
  - (b) the immediate packaging of the medicinal product; and
  - (c) the package leaflet for the medicinal product.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 9

Regulation 50(4)

### Undertakings by non-EEA manufacturers

1. The manufacturer must provide and maintain such staff, premises and plant as are necessary for the carrying out in accordance with the marketing authorisation of such stages of the manufacture and assembly of the medicinal products to which the authorisation relates as are undertaken by the manufacturer.

2. The manufacturer must provide and maintain such staff, premises, equipment and facilities for the handling, storage and distribution of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates and which the manufacturer handles, stores or distributes as are necessary to avoid deterioration of the medicinal products.

3. The manufacturer must provide and maintain a designated quality control department having authority in relation to quality control and being independent of all other departments.

4. The manufacturer must conduct all manufacture and assembly operations in such a way as to ensure that the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates conform with the standards of strength, quality and purity applicable to them under the marketing authorisation.

5. The manufacturer must maintain an effective pharmaceutical quality assurance system involving the active participation of the management and personnel of the different services involved.

6. Where animals are used in the production of any medicinal product and the marketing authorisation contains provisions relating to them the manufacturer must arrange for the animals to be housed in premises of such a nature and to be managed in such a way as will facilitate compliance with such provisions.

7. The manufacturer must make such adequate and suitable arrangements as are necessary for carrying out in accordance with the marketing authorisation any tests of the strength, quality or purity of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates.

8. The manufacturer must inform the holder of the marketing authorisation of any material alteration in the premises or plant used in connection with the manufacture or assembly of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates or in the operations for which such premises or plant are so used, and of any change since the granting of the relevant marketing authorisation in respect of any person—

- (a) responsible for supervising the production operations;
- (b) responsible for quality control of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates;
- (c) in charge of the animals from which are derived any substance used in the production of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates; or
- (d) responsible for the culture of any living tissues used in the manufacture of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates.

9.—(1) The manufacturer shall keep readily available for inspection by a person authorised by the licensing authority durable records of—

- (a) the details of manufacture and assembly of each batch of the medicinal product to which the marketing authorisation relates; and
- (b) the tests carried out on the product,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

in such a form that the records will be easily identifiable from the number of the batch as shown on each container in which the medicinal product is exported from the country where it has been manufactured or assembled.

(2) The manufacturer shall permit the person authorised to take copies of or make extracts from such records.

(3) Such records shall not be destroyed for a period of five years from the date of release of the batch concerned, or one year after the expiry date of the batch, whichever is the later.

**10.** The manufacturer must keep readily available for examination by a person authorised by the licensing authority samples of—

- (a) each batch of finished products for at least a period of one year after their expiry date; and
- (b) starting materials (other than solvents, gases or water) for at least a period of two years after release of the medicinal product of which those materials formed part,

except where the manufacturer is authorised by the licensing authority to destroy such samples earlier.

**11.—**(1) The manufacturer must implement a system for recording and reviewing complaints in relation to medicinal products to which a marketing authorisation relates, together with an effective system for recalling promptly and at any time the medicinal products in the distribution network.

(2) The manufacturer must record and investigate all complaints described in sub-paragraph (1) and must immediately inform the licensing authority of any defect which could result in a recall from sale, supply or export or in an abnormal restriction on such sale, supply or export.

**12.** The manufacturer must inform the holder of the marketing authorisation of any material change since the day upon which the authorisation was granted in respect of—

- (a) the facilities and equipment available at each of the premises of the manufacturer for carrying out any stage of the manufacture or assembly of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates;
- (b) the facilities and equipment available at each of the premises of the manufacturer for the storage of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates on, and the distribution of the products from or between, such premises;
- (c) any manufacturing operations, not being operations in relation to the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates, which are carried on by the manufacturer on or near any of the premises on which medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates are manufactured or assembled, and the substances or articles in respect of which such operations are carried on;
- (d) the arrangements for the identification and storage of materials and ingredients before and during manufacture or assembly of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates and the arrangements for the storage of the products after they have been manufactured or assembled;
- (e) the arrangements for ensuring a satisfactory turnover of stocks of medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates;
- (f) the arrangements for maintaining production records and records of analytical and other testing procedures applied in the course of manufacture or assembly of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates; or
- (g) the arrangements for keeping reference samples of materials used in the manufacture of the medicinal products to which the marketing authorisation relates and reference samples of the medicinal products themselves.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 10

Regulations 50(6)(g) and 64(5)(b)

### National homoeopathic products

#### *Meaning of “national homoeopathic product”*

1.—(1) In this Schedule “national homoeopathic product” means a homoeopathic medicinal product that—

- (a) is not a registrable homoeopathic medicinal product; and
- (b) is indicated for the relief or treatment of minor symptoms or minor conditions in human beings.

(2) For this purpose symptoms or conditions are minor if they can ordinarily and with reasonable safety be relieved or treated without the supervision or intervention of a doctor.

#### *General requirements for application*

2.—(1) An application for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation for a national homoeopathic product does not need to be made in accordance with, and an applicant for such an authorisation does not need to comply with—

- (a) paragraphs (b) and (c) of paragraph 10 of Schedule 8 (requirement to submit results of pre-clinical tests and clinical trials);
- (b) the guidance referred to in paragraph (1) in the “Introduction and general principles” of Annex 1 to the 2001 Directive in so far as it relates to the requirement to submit the results of pre-clinical tests and clinical trials; or
- (c) the following provisions of Part 1 of that Annex—
  - (i) sections 2.4 to 2.7 (non-clinical and clinical overview and non-clinical and clinical summaries),
  - (ii) section 4 (Module 4: non-clinical reports), or
  - (iii) section 5 (Module 5: clinical study reports).

(2) The applicant must submit with the application—

- (a) particulars and documents relating to the safety of the product in accordance with paragraph 3 (subject to paragraph 4); and
- (b) particulars and documents relating to the efficacy of the product in accordance with paragraph 5.

(3) References in Annex 1 to the 2001 Directive to non-clinical reports, non-clinical documentation and non-clinical data apply in relation to the application as if they were references to the particulars and documents referred to in paragraph 3.

(4) References in that Annex to clinical study reports, clinical documentation and clinical data apply in relation to the application as if they were references to the particulars and documents referred to in paragraph 5.

#### *Requirement to submit safety data*

3.—(1) The applicant must submit data as to the safety of the product unless paragraph 4 applies.

(2) The data must include information about the following aspects of the safety of the product—

- (a) pharmacology;
- (b) pharmacokinetics; and



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) toxicology, including its toxicity, genotoxicity, reproductive and developmental toxicity and local tolerance.
- (3) The data must be scientific data unless sub-paragraph (5) applies.
- (4) For this purpose “scientific data” means—
  - (a) study reports in relation to the product;
  - (b) published scientific data; or
  - (c) a combination of data within paragraph (a) and data within paragraph (b).
- (5) The applicant may submit other data in relation to an aspect of the safety of the product if having made reasonable attempts to obtain scientific data in relation to that aspect—
  - (a) the applicant is satisfied that no such scientific data is available; or
  - (b) the applicant thinks that such scientific data as is available may be inadequate to demonstrate an acceptable level of safety in relation to that aspect.
- (6) The applicant must include with the data—
  - (a) a table of contents; and
  - (b) an evaluation of the scientific data, including an explanation of how it demonstrates an acceptable level of safety.
- (7) If the applicant submits data other than scientific data, the applicant must include—
  - (a) a statement that sub-paragraph (5) applies; and
  - (b) an explanation of why an acceptable level of safety can be demonstrated despite the lack of scientific data.

#### *Exceptions to requirement to submit safety data*

- 4.—(1) The applicant does not need to submit data as to the safety of the product if—
  - (a) condition A, B or C is met; and
  - (b) the application is accompanied by a written statement that the condition is met.
- (2) Condition A is that the product—
  - (a) is derived from a homoeopathic stock that is commonly present in food; and
  - (b) is intended to be administered orally.
- (3) For this purpose “food” has the meaning given by Council Regulation (EC) No 178/2002 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 28 January 2002 laying down the general principles and requirements of food law, establishing the European Food Safety Authority and laying down procedures in matters of food safety<sup>M99</sup>.
- (4) Condition B is that—
  - (a) the product is derived from a homoeopathic stock from which is derived a medicinal product that has a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration (“the source product”);
  - (b) the source product is subject to general sale within the meaning of regulation 5(1); and
  - (c) the product has the same route of administration and the same degree of dilution as the source product.
- (5) Condition C is that the product is derived from a homoeopathic stock that—
  - (a) is diluted to at least 1 in 10<sup>24</sup> of the stock; and
  - (b) is not a material derived from a human or animal source.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

**M99** OJ No L 31, 1.2.2002, p.1, as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 596/2009 (OJ No L 188, 18.7.2009, p. 14).

### *Requirement to submit efficacy data*

- 5.—(1) The applicant must submit data as to the efficacy of the product.
- (2) The data must consist of at least one the following—
- (a) study reports in relation to the product;
  - (b) published scientific literature; or
  - (c) the results of investigations (commonly known as homoeopathic provings) consisting of the administration of a substance to a human subject to ascertain the symptoms it produces.
- (3) The applicant must include with the data—
- (a) a table of contents; and
  - (b) an evaluation of the data, including an explanation of how the data establishes that the product has a recognised level of efficacy in the therapeutic indication for which authorisation is sought.

### SCHEDULE 11

Regulations 58(5);59(7); 60(11);66(8);  
68(12); 104(4);105(9); 108(8);  
110(9);130(11); 133(8); and 137

### Advice and representations

## **PART 1**

### General procedures

#### *Application of this Part*

- 1.—(1) This Part of this Schedule applies to—
- (a) an application for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration;
  - (b) an application to renew a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration; and
  - (c) a proposal to revoke, vary or suspend a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration (including variation by the variation or removal of a condition to which a UK marketing authorisation or a certificate of registration is subject) other than a proposal to vary the authorisation, certificate or registration on the application of or by agreement with its holder.
- (2) This Part is subject to Part 4 of this Schedule.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Requirement to consult the appropriate committee*

**2.—**(1) The licensing authority must consult the appropriate committee if the authority proposes on grounds relating to safety, quality or efficacy—

- (a) to refuse to grant or renew a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration in response to the application; or
- (b) to revoke, vary or suspend a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration.

(2) The licensing authority must consult the appropriate committee if the authority proposes on grounds relating to safety or quality—

- (a) to refuse to grant or renew a certificate of registration in response to the application; or
- (b) to revoke, vary or suspend a certificate of registration.

(3) This paragraph is subject to paragraphs 3 and 4 (exceptions to requirement to consult).

(4) In this Schedule “the appropriate committee” in relation to any function means whichever of the bodies listed in paragraph (5) the licensing authority considers to be the appropriate body to perform that function.

(5) Those bodies are—

- (a) the Commission; and
- (b) any expert committee appointed by the licensing authority.

### *Exceptions to requirement to consult*

**3.—**(1) Paragraph 2 does not apply to a proposal to refuse to grant or renew a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration if—

- (a) the licensing authority has asked the applicant to supply information that the licensing authority thinks is relevant to enable the application to be determined; and
- (b) the information has not been supplied to the authority within the relevant period.

(2) The relevant period is—

- (a) where the licensing authority has completed its initial full assessment of the application, the period of six months beginning with the date when the authority asked the applicant to supply the information mentioned in sub-paragraph (1); or
- (b) where the licensing authority has completed its assessment of any supplemental information, the period of three months beginning with the date when the authority asked the applicant to supply the information mentioned in sub-paragraph (1).

(3) The licensing authority may extend the relevant period if—

- (a) the applicant asks it to do so;
- (b) the applicant provides the grounds for that request; and
- (c) the licensing authority thinks that the grounds are exceptional.

**4.—**(1) Paragraph 2 does not apply to a proposal to suspend a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration if the licensing authority thinks that, in the interests of safety, it is necessary to suspend the authorisation, certificate or registration with immediate effect for not more than three months.

(2) In that event the licensing authority must report the suspension to the appropriate committee forthwith.

(3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies if, following a suspension to which this paragraph applies—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the licensing authority thinks that the authorisation, certificate or registration should be further suspended, or varied or revoked; or
  - (b) the appropriate committee advises that the authorisation, certificate or registration should be further suspended, or varied or revoked.
- (4) The provisions of this Part of this Schedule (including this paragraph) apply accordingly to the suspension, variation or revocation.

#### *Provisional opinion against authorisation*

5.—(1) If the appropriate committee is consulted under paragraph 2(1) it may give a provisional opinion that on grounds relating to safety, quality or efficacy—

- (a) it may be unable to advise the licensing authority to grant or renew the UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration;
- (b) it may be unable to advise the licensing authority to grant the authorisation or registration unless—
  - (i) it contains terms other than those in the application, or
  - (ii) it is granted subject to conditions; or
- (c) it may have to advise the licensing authority to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation or registration.

(2) If the Commission is consulted under paragraph 2(2), it may give a provisional opinion that, on grounds relating to safety or quality—

- (a) it may be unable to advise the licensing authority to grant or renew the certificate of registration;
- (b) it may be unable to advise the licensing authority to grant the certificate unless—
  - (i) it contains terms other than those in the application, or
  - (ii) it is granted subject to conditions; or
- (c) it may have to advise the licensing authority to revoke, vary or suspend the certificate.

(3) The appropriate committee must notify the applicant for the grant or renewal or (as the case may be) the holder of the authorisation, certificate or registration in writing of its provisional opinion.

#### *Opportunity to make representations*

6.—(1) An applicant or holder notified under paragraph 5 may, by notice in writing to the appropriate committee, request the opportunity to make written or oral representations to the appropriate committee.

(2) The applicant or holder must make the request within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notification is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.

#### *Written representations*

7.—(1) If the applicant or holder requests the opportunity to make written representations, the applicant or holder must provide the appropriate committee with those representations and any documents on which the applicant or holder wishes to rely in support of them—

- (a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date of the request; or
- (b) before the end of such shorter period as the appropriate committee may specify in the notification under paragraph 5.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) The appropriate committee may at the request of the applicant or holder extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of twelve months beginning with the date of the request under paragraph 6.

(3) The applicant or holder may submit additional representations or documents after the end of the period for doing so only with the permission of the appropriate committee.

(4) The appropriate committee must—

(a) take the representations made under this paragraph into account; and

(b) report its findings and advice to the licensing authority together with the reasons for that advice.

#### *Oral representations*

**8.—**(1) If the applicant or holder requests the opportunity to make oral representations, the applicant or holder must provide the appropriate committee with a written summary of those representations and any documents on which the applicant or holder wishes to rely in support of them—

(a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date of the request; or

(b) before the end of such shorter period as the appropriate committee may specify in the notification under paragraph 5.

(2) The appropriate committee may at the request of the applicant or holder extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of twelve months beginning with the date of the request under paragraph 6.

(3) The applicant or holder may submit additional written representations or documents after the end of the period for doing so only with the permission of the appropriate committee.

(4) After receiving the summary and any other documents provided under this paragraph, the appropriate committee must arrange for the applicant or holder to make oral representations at a hearing before the committee.

(5) The appropriate committee must—

(a) take the representations made under this paragraph into account; and

(b) report its findings and advice to the licensing authority together with the reasons for that advice.

#### *Other decisions of the appropriate committee*

**9.—**(1) This paragraph applies if the applicant or holder—

(a) does not request the opportunity to make written or oral representations to the appropriate committee within the period mentioned in paragraph 6;

(b) requests the opportunity to make written representations, but fails to make those written representations within the period for doing so; or

(c) requests the opportunity to make oral representations, but—

(i) fails to provide a summary of those representations or the documents in support of them within the period for doing so, or

(ii) fails to make oral representations at a hearing before the appropriate committee.

(2) The appropriate committee must notify the licensing authority of that fact.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Decision of licensing authority*

**10.**—(1) After receiving the appropriate committee's report under paragraph 7 or 8 or notification under paragraph 9 the licensing authority must—

- (a) decide whether to grant or renew the UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration;
- (b) decide whether to grant or renew the authorisation, certificate or registration in accordance with the application; or
- (c) decide whether to proceed with its proposal to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation, certificate or registration,

as the case may be.

(2) If the appropriate committee has given a report under paragraph 7 or 8, the licensing authority must take the report into account in making its decision.

(3) The licensing authority must notify the applicant or holder of—

- (a) its decision; and
- (b) any advice given to it by the appropriate committee and the reasons for that advice.

### *Right to review after paragraph 10 notification*

**11.**—(1) A person to whom a notification is given under paragraph 10 may notify the licensing authority in writing that the person wishes the licensing authority to submit the decision to review upon oral representations.

(2) The person must give the notification within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notification under paragraph 10 is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.

(3) The review must be conducted in accordance with Schedule 5.

(4) This paragraph does not apply if—

- (a) the person has not made any representations in accordance with paragraph 7 or 8; and
- (b) the decision of the licensing authority is in accordance with the advice of the appropriate committee.

### *Licensing authority decisions in other cases*

**12.**—(1) This paragraph applies if the appropriate committee has not been consulted under paragraph 2(1) because the licensing authority proposes on grounds not relating to safety, quality or efficacy—

- (a) to refuse to grant or renew a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration in response to the application;
- (b) to grant or renew a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration otherwise than in accordance with the application; or
- (c) to revoke, vary or suspend a UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration.

(2) This paragraph also applies if, having been consulted under paragraph 2(1), the appropriate committee has not given a provisional opinion in the terms described in paragraph 5(1), and the licensing authority proposes—

- (a) to determine the application for the UK marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration in a way that differs from the appropriate committee's advice;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation or registration against such advice; or
  - (c) on grounds not relating to safety, quality or efficacy—
    - (i) to refuse to grant or renew the authorisation or registration,
    - (ii) to grant or renew the authorisation or registration otherwise than in accordance with the application, or
    - (iii) to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation or registration.
- (3) This paragraph also applies if the appropriate committee has not been consulted under paragraph 2(2) because the licensing authority proposes on grounds not relating to safety or quality—
- (a) to refuse to grant or renew a certificate of registration in response to the application;
  - (b) to grant or renew a certificate of registration otherwise than in accordance with the application; or
  - (c) to revoke, vary or suspend a certificate of registration.
- (4) This paragraph also applies if, having been consulted under paragraph 2(2), the appropriate committee has not given a provisional opinion in the terms described in paragraph 5(2), and the licensing authority proposes—
- (a) to determine the application for the certificate of registration in a way that differs from the appropriate committee's advice;
  - (b) to revoke, vary or suspend the authorisation against such advice; or
  - (c) on grounds not relating to safety or quality—
    - (i) to refuse to grant or renew the certificate,
    - (ii) to grant or renew the certificate otherwise than in accordance with the application, or
    - (iii) to revoke, vary or suspend the certificate.
- (5) The licensing authority must notify the applicant for the grant or renewal or (as the case may be) the holder of the authorisation, certificate or registration in writing of its proposal.
- (6) The notification must state—
- (a) the reasons for the proposal; and
  - (b) any advice of the appropriate committee and any reasons it has given for that advice.

*Right to review or representations after paragraph 12 notification*

- 13.—**(1) A person to whom a notification is given under paragraph 12 may—
- (a) notify the licensing authority in writing that the person wishes the licensing authority to submit the proposal to review upon oral representations, or
  - (b) make representations in writing to the licensing authority with respect to the proposal.
- (2) The person must give the notification or make the representations within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notification is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.
- (3) A review in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(a) must be conducted in accordance with Schedule 5.
- (4) If the person makes written representations in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(b) the licensing authority must take them into account before determining the matter.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART 2

### Type II variation applications, complex variation applications and new excipient variation applications

#### *Application of this Part*

#### 14. This Part applies—

- (a) to an application (a “Type II variation application”) to vary a UK marketing authorisation if the variation is a major variation of Type II within the meaning of Article 2(3) of Commission Regulation (EC) No 1234/2008 of 24 November 2008 concerning the examination of variations to the terms of marketing authorisations for medicinal products for human use and veterinary medicinal products<sup>M100</sup>; and
- (b) to an application to vary a traditional herbal registration that is—
  - (i) a complex variation application, or
  - (ii) a new excipient variation application.

#### **Marginal Citations**

M100 OJ No L 334, 12.12.2008, p.7.

15.—(1) In paragraph 14(b)(i) “complex variation application” means an application by the holder of the registration to vary it so that one or more of the following changes can be made to the product to which it relates—

- (a) a change in the product's active ingredients by the addition of an active ingredient from a new source;
- (b) a change in the product's excipients by the addition of a TSE risk excipient from a new source; or
- (c) a change by the addition of a vitamin or mineral from a new source, where no European Pharmacopoeia certificate of suitability for the vitamin or mineral is submitted with the application.

(2) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), an ingredient, vitamin or mineral is “from a new source” if its manufacturer as named in the application has not been named as its manufacturer in a marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration granted for a medicinal product including the ingredient, vitamin or mineral.

(3) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), an excipient is a “TSE risk excipient from a new source” if—

- (a) it has been manufactured from raw materials of ruminant origin or such raw materials have been used in its manufacture; and
- (b) its manufacturer as named in the application has not been named as its manufacturer in a marketing authorisation or traditional herbal registration granted for a medicinal product that includes the excipient.

16.—(1) In paragraph 14(b)(ii) “new excipient variation application” means an application (other than a complex variation application) by the holder of the registration to vary it so that the formulation of the medicinal product to which it relates can be changed by the addition of a new excipient.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1) “new excipient” means, subject to paragraphs (3) and (4), an ingredient of a medicinal product that is not an active ingredient and that has not been included in a medicinal product—

- (a) intended to be administered by the same route as the product to which the application relates; and
- (b) for which a marketing authorisation (other than a product licence of right) or traditional herbal registration has been granted.

(3) In the application of sub-paragraph (1) to a medicinal product intended to be administered orally, the reference to a new excipient does not include any ingredient specified in an enactment as an approved ingredient or additive in food or in a food product.

(4) In the application of sub-paragraph (1) to a medicinal product intended for external use only, the reference to a new excipient does not include any ingredient specified in an enactment as an approved ingredient or additive in a cosmetic product.

(5) In this paragraph “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation or in any Directive, Regulation or Decision of the European Union.

**17.** This Part is subject to Part 4 of this Schedule.

#### *Opportunity to make representations*

**18.—**(1) This paragraph applies if the licensing authority notifies the applicant for a variation to which this Part applies that it has decided, on grounds relating to safety, quality or efficacy—

- (a) to refuse to grant the application, or
- (b) to grant it otherwise than in accordance with the application.

(2) The applicant may by notice in writing to the licensing authority request the opportunity to make written or oral representations to the appropriate committee.

(3) The applicant must make the request within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notification is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.

(4) The licensing authority must inform the appropriate committee of the applicant or holder's request.

#### *Written representations*

**19.—**(1) If the applicant requests the opportunity to make written representations, the applicant must provide the appropriate committee with those representations and any documents on which the applicant wishes to rely in support of them—

- (a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date of the request; or
- (b) before the end of such shorter period as the licensing authority may specify in the notification under paragraph 18.

(2) The appropriate committee may, at the request of the applicant, extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of twelve months beginning with the date of the request under paragraph 18.

(3) The applicant may submit additional representations or documents after the end of the period for doing so only with the permission of the appropriate committee.

(4) The appropriate committee must—

- (a) take the representations made under this paragraph into account; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) report its findings and advice to the licensing authority together with the reasons for that advice.

#### *Oral representations*

**20.—**(1) If the applicant requests the opportunity to make oral representations, the applicant must provide the appropriate committee with a written summary of those representations and any documents on which the applicant wishes to rely in support of them—

- (a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date of the request; or
- (b) before the end of such shorter period as the licensing authority may specify in the notification under paragraph 18.

(2) The appropriate committee may, at the request of the applicant, extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of twelve months beginning with the date of the request under paragraph 18.

(3) The applicant may submit additional written representations or documents after the end of the period for doing so only with the permission of the appropriate committee.

(4) After receiving the summary and any other documents provided under this paragraph, the appropriate committee must arrange for the applicant to make oral representations at a hearing before the committee.

(5) The appropriate committee must—

- (a) take the representations made under this paragraph into account; and
- (b) report its findings and advice to the licensing authority together with the reasons for that advice.

#### *Other decisions of the appropriate committee*

**21.—**(1) This paragraph applies if the applicant—

- (a) requests the opportunity to make written representations, but fails to make those written representations within the period for doing so; or
- (b) requests the opportunity to make oral representations, but—
  - (i) fails to provide a summary of those representations or the documents in support of them within the period for doing so, or
  - (ii) fails to make oral representations at a hearing before the appropriate committee.

(2) The appropriate committee must notify the licensing authority of that fact.

#### *Decision of licensing authority following report*

**22.—**(1) After receiving the appropriate committee's report under paragraph 19 or 20 or notification under paragraph 21 the licensing authority must confirm or alter its decision.

(2) If the appropriate committee gives a report under paragraph 19 or 20, the licensing authority must take that into account in making its decision.

(3) The licensing authority must notify the applicant or holder of—

- (a) its decision; and
- (b) any advice given to it by the appropriate committee and the reasons for that advice.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### *Right to review after paragraph 22 notification*

**23.—**(1) This paragraph applies if the licensing authority notifies the applicant of its decision under paragraph 22—

- (a) to refuse the application; or
- (b) to grant it otherwise than in accordance with the application.

(2) The applicant may notify the licensing authority in writing that the person wishes the licensing authority to submit the decision to review upon oral representations.

(3) The applicant must give the notification within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notification is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.

(4) The review must be conducted in accordance with Schedule 5.

(5) This paragraph does not apply if the person has not made any representations in accordance with paragraph 19 or 20.

### **PART 3**

#### **Referral to the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products**

##### *Application of this Part*

**24.—**(1) This Part applies if the licensing authority proposes to refer an application for a traditional herbal registration to the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products in accordance with Article 16c(4) of the 2001 Directive.

(2) This Part is subject to Part 4 of this Schedule.

##### *Opportunity to make representations*

**25.—**(1) The licensing authority must notify the applicant of the authority's proposal.

(2) The applicant may by notice in writing to the licensing authority request the opportunity to make written or oral representations to the appropriate committee.

(3) The applicant must make the request within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notification is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.

(4) The licensing authority must inform the appropriate committee of the applicant or holder's request.

##### *Written representations*

**26.—**(1) If the applicant requests the opportunity to make written representations, the applicant must provide the appropriate committee with those representations and any documents on which the applicant wishes to rely in support of them—

- (a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date of the request; or
- (b) before the end of such shorter period as the licensing authority may specify in the notification under paragraph 25.

(2) The appropriate committee may, at the request of the applicant, extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of twelve months beginning with the date of the request under paragraph 25.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) The applicant may submit additional representations or documents after the end of the period for doing so only with the permission of the appropriate committee.

(4) The appropriate committee must—

- (a) take the representations made under this paragraph into account; and
- (b) report its findings and advice to the licensing authority together with the reasons for that advice.

#### *Oral representations*

**27.—**(1) If the applicant requests the opportunity to make oral representations, the applicant must provide the appropriate committee with a written summary of those representations and any documents on which the applicant wishes to rely in support of them—

- (a) before the end of the period of six months beginning with the date of the request; or
- (b) before the end of such shorter period as the licensing authority may specify in the notification under paragraph 25.

(2) The appropriate committee may, at the request of the applicant, extend the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) up to a maximum of twelve months beginning with the date of the request under paragraph 24.

(3) The applicant may submit additional written representations or documents after the end of the period for doing so only with the permission of the appropriate committee.

(4) After receiving the summary and any other documents provided under this paragraph, the appropriate committee must arrange for the applicant to make oral representations at a hearing before the appropriate committee.

(5) The appropriate committee must—

- (a) take the representations made under this paragraph into account; and
- (b) report its findings and advice to the licensing authority together with the reasons for that advice.

#### *Other decisions of the appropriate committee*

**28.—**(1) This paragraph applies if the applicant—

- (a) requests the opportunity to make written representations, but fails to make those written representations within the period for doing so; or
- (b) requests the opportunity to make oral representations, but—
  - (i) fails to provide a summary of those representations or the documents in support of them within the period for doing so, or
  - (ii) fails to make oral representations at a hearing before the appropriate committee.

(2) The appropriate committee must notify the licensing authority of that fact.

#### *Decision of licensing authority following report*

**29.—**(1) After receiving the appropriate committee's report under paragraph 26 or 27 or notification under paragraph 28 the licensing authority must decide whether to proceed with its proposal.

(2) If the appropriate committee gives a report under paragraph 26 or 27, the licensing authority must take that into account in making its decision.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The licensing authority must notify the applicant or holder of—
- (a) its decision; and
  - (b) any advice given to it by the appropriate committee and the reasons for that advice.

#### *Right to review after paragraph 29 notification*

**30.**—(1) This paragraph applies if the licensing authority notifies the applicant of its decision under paragraph 29 to refer the applicant to the Committee on Herbal Medicinal Products as proposed.

(2) The applicant may notify the licensing authority in writing that the person wishes the licensing authority to submit the decision to review upon oral representations.

(3) The applicant must give the notification within the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the licensing authority's notification is given or such longer period as the licensing authority may allow.

(4) The review must be conducted in accordance with Schedule 5.

(5) This paragraph does not apply if the person has not made any representations in accordance with paragraph 26 or 27.

## **PART 4**

### **Exceptions to Schedule**

**31.** This Schedule does not apply to an application for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration if, at any time during the period beginning with the date on which the application is made and ending with the date on which the licensing authority gives a decision on the application, there is an authorisation, certificate or registration in force in respect of the medicinal product in question in any EEA State.

**32.** This Schedule does not apply to an application for the grant of a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration if the application has been submitted to the licensing authority in accordance with Article 28 of the 2001 Directive.

**33.** This Schedule ceases to apply if at any time the matter in question is referred to the Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use or the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products under Article 30 or 31 of the 2001 Directive for the application of the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of that Directive.

**34.** This Schedule does not apply to an application for a UK marketing authorisation or certificate of registration if—

- (a) the licensing authority declines to assess the application on the ground that—
  - (i) an application for an authorisation or registration in respect of the same medicinal product is being examined in another EEA State, and
  - (ii) the application to the licensing authority has not been submitted in accordance with Article 28(1) and (3) of the 2001 Directive; or
- (b) the licensing authority rejects the application on the ground that—
  - (i) the medicinal product in question has an authorisation or registration in another EEA State, and
  - (ii) the application to the licensing authority has not been submitted in accordance with Article 28(1) and (2) of the 2001 Directive.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**35.** This Schedule does not apply to an application for a traditional herbal registration in relation to which either of the conditions in Article 16d(1) of the 2001 Directive is met if—

- (a) the licensing authority declines to assess the application on the ground that—
  - (i) an application for a registration in respect of the same medicinal product is being examined in another EEA State, and
  - (ii) the application to the licensing authority has not been submitted in accordance with Article 28(1) and (3) of the 2001 Directive; or
- (b) the licensing authority rejects the application on the ground that—
  - (i) the medicinal product in question has a registration in another EEA State, and
  - (ii) the application to the licensing authority has not been submitted in accordance with Article 28(1) and (2) of the 2001 Directive.

**36.** This Schedule does not apply if the application or proposal relates to the renewal, revocation, suspension or variation of a UK marketing authorisation that—

- (a) was granted in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 of Title III to the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure);
- (b) was granted before 1st January 1995 by member States in accordance with Article 4 of Council Directive [87/22/EEC](#) of 22 December 1986 on the approximation of national measures relating to the placing on the market of high-technology medicinal products, particularly those derived from biotechnology <sup>M101</sup>; or
- (c) was subject to the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive following a referral under Article 30 or 31 of that Directive, unless the procedure was limited to certain specific parts of the authorisation.

#### Marginal Citations

**M101** OJ No L 15, 17.1.1987. p.38.

**37.** This Schedule does not apply if the application or proposal relates to the renewal, revocation, suspension or variation of a certificate of registration that was granted in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 of Title III to the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure).

**38.** This Schedule does not apply if the application or proposal relates to the renewal, revocation, suspension or variation of a traditional herbal registration that—

- (a) was granted in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 of Title III to the 2001 Directive (mutual recognition procedure and decentralised procedure); or
- (b) was subject to the procedure laid down in Articles 32 to 34 of the 2001 Directive following a referral under Article 30 or 31 of that Directive, unless the procedure was limited to certain specific parts of the registration.

**39.** This Schedule does not apply if—

- (a) the licensing authority refuse to grant an application for a traditional herbal registration;
- (b) the application was referred to the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products in accordance with Article 16c(4) of the 2001 Directive; and
- (c) the Committee for Herbal Medicinal Products did not support the grant of the application.

## SCHEDULE 12

Regulation 128(1)

Material to accompany an application for a traditional herbal registration

### PART 1

#### General requirements

1. The name or corporate name and permanent address of the applicant and (where applicable) of the manufacturer of the medicinal product.
2. The name of the medicinal product. This may be—
  - (a) an invented name that is not liable to confusion with the product's common name; or
  - (b) a common or scientific name accompanied by a trademark or by the name of the person who is to be the holder of the traditional herbal registration.
3. Qualitative and quantitative particulars of the constituents of the medicinal product, including—
  - (a) where there is an international non-proprietary name recommended by the World Health Organisation for a constituent, a reference to that name; or
  - (b) otherwise, a reference to the relevant chemical or botanical name.
4. An evaluation of the potential environmental risks posed by the medicinal product, including an assessment of its environmental impact and a description of the proposed arrangements for limiting that impact on a case by case basis.
5. A description of the methods of manufacturing the medicinal product.
6. The therapeutic indications and contra-indications for the medicinal product and the adverse reactions associated with it.
7. The posology and pharmaceutical form of the medicinal product, its method and route of administration and its expected shelf life.
8. The reasons for any precautionary and safety measures to be taken for—
  - (a) the storage of the medicinal product;
  - (b) the administration of the medicinal product to patients; and
  - (c) the disposal of the medicinal product and any waste products,with an indication of the potential risks presented by the medicinal product for the environment.
9. A description of the control methods employed by the manufacturer.
10. Results of pre-clinical (toxicological and pharmacological) tests in relation to the medicinal product and its constituent active substances.
11. A detailed summary of those results prepared and signed by an expert with appropriate technical or professional qualifications, which must be set out in a brief curriculum vitae.
12. A summary of the product characteristics for the medicinal product in accordance with Part 2 of this Schedule.
13. A mock-up, in accordance with Part 13 (packaging and leaflets) of—
  - (a) the outer packaging of the medicinal product;
  - (b) the immediate packaging of the medicinal product; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(c) the package leaflet for the medicinal product.

**14.** A document showing that the manufacturer of the medicinal product is authorised to produce medicinal products in the manufacturer's own country.

**15.** Where the medicinal product consists of a combination of one or more herbal substances and one or more herbal preparations, or the medicinal product contains one or more vitamins or minerals—

- (a) data on the traditional use of the medicinal product as a whole; and
- (b) if any of the medicinal product's individual active ingredients are not sufficiently known, data on the traditional use of those active ingredients.

This covers (in particular)—

- (c) evidence that the product is not harmful in the specified conditions of use; and
- (d) evidence as to the pharmacological effects or efficacy of the product on the basis of long-standing use and experience.

**16.** Details of any authorisation or registration obtained by the applicant in another member State or a third country allowing the medicinal product to be placed on the market.

**17.** Details of any decision in another member State or a third country to refuse to grant an authorisation or registration allowing the medicinal product to be placed on the market, with the reasons for any such decision.

**18.** Bibliographical or expert evidence of the traditional use of the medicinal product or a product corresponding to the medicinal product.

For this purpose a product (“A”) corresponds to a medicinal product (“B”) if—

- (a) product A has the same active ingredients as product B (regardless of the excipients used in either product);
- (b) product A's intended purpose is the same as or similar to product B's intended purpose;
- (c) product A has a strength and dosage equivalent to that of product B; and
- (d) product A's route of administration is the same as or similar to product B's route of administration.

**19.** A bibliographic review of safety data.

**20.** An expert report on safety.

## PART 2

### Summary of the product characteristics

The summary of the product characteristics must contain the following information in the following order—

(21) For medicinal products included on the list referred to in Article 23 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004, the statement “This medicinal product is subject to additional monitoring”.

(22) The name of the medicinal product followed by its strength and pharmaceutical form.

(23) The qualitative and quantitative composition, using the usual common name or chemical description, of the medicinal product in terms of—

- (a) the active substances; and



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) those excipients of which knowledge is essential for proper administration of the medicinal product.
- (24) The pharmaceutical form of the medicinal product.
- (25) The pharmacological properties of the medicinal product, covering—
  - (a) pharmacodynamic properties;
  - (b) pharmacokinetic properties; and
  - (c) pre-clinical safety data.
- (26) Pharmaceutical particulars of the medicinal product, covering—
  - (a) a list of excipients;
  - (b) major incompatibilities;
  - (c) shelf life after reconstitution of the medicinal product or when the immediate packaging is opened for the first time (as appropriate);
  - (d) special precautions for storage;
  - (e) nature and contents of the container; and
  - (f) special precautions for disposal of the used medicinal product or waste materials derived from the medicinal product (as appropriate).
- (27) The holder of the traditional herbal registration.
- (28) The number of the traditional herbal registration.
- (29) The date of the first traditional herbal registration or, where the traditional herbal registration has been renewed, the date of the last renewal.
- (30) The date of any revisions of the text of the summary of the product characteristics.

### SCHEDULE 13

Regulations 214(4) and 216(1)

#### Prescription only medicines for which community practitioner nurse prescribers are appropriate practitioners

Co-danthramer Capsules NPF  
Co-danthramer Capsules Strong NPF  
Co-danthramer Oral Suspension NPF  
Co-danthramer Oral Suspension Strong NPF  
Co-danthrusate Capsules  
Co-danthrusate Oral Suspension NPF  
Mebendazole Tablets NPF  
Mebendazole Oral Suspension NPF  
Miconazole Oral Gel NPF  
Nystatin Oral Suspension  
Nystatin Pastilles NPF  
Streptokinase and Streptodornase Topical Powder NPF  
Water for injections

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

In this Schedule “NPF” means the Nurse Prescribers' Formulary Appendix in the British National Formulary.

#### SCHEDULE 14

Regulation 215

Prescription etc by supplementary prescribers: particulars of clinical management plan

A clinical management plan must contain the following particulars—

- (a) the name of the patient to whom the plan relates;
- (b) the illnesses or conditions which may be treated by the supplementary prescriber;
- (c) the date on which the plan is to take effect and when it is to be reviewed by the doctor or dentist who is a party to the plan;
- (d) reference to the class or description of medicinal product which may be prescribed or administered under the plan;
- (e) any restrictions or limitations as to the strength or dose of any product which may be prescribed or administered under the plan, and any period of administration or use of any medicinal product which may be prescribed or administered under the plan;
- (f) relevant warnings about the known sensitivities of the patient to, or known difficulties of the patient with, particular medicinal products;
- (g) the arrangements for notification of—
  - (i) suspected or known adverse reactions to any medicinal product which may be prescribed or administered under the plan, and
  - (ii) suspected or known adverse reactions to any other medicinal product taken at the same time as any medicinal product prescribed or administered under the plan; and
- (h) the circumstances in which the supplementary prescriber should refer to, or seek the advice of, the doctor or dentist who is a party to the plan.

#### SCHEDULE 15

Regulation 221

Requirements for specific products subject to general sale

1. A medicinal product that contains aloxiprin, aspirin or paracetamol (or, where appropriate, any combination of those substances) and that is in the form specified in column 1 of the following table must be presented for sale in a separate and individual package containing not more than the amount of the product specified in the corresponding entry in column 2—

<i>Column 1</i>	<i>Column 2</i>
Effervescent tablets—	30 tablets
(a) that do not contain aspirin, or	
(b) that do not contain more than 325 milligrams of aspirin per tablet.	
Effervescent tablets—	20 tablets
(a) that contain more than 325 milligrams of aspirin per tablet, but	

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) that do not contain more than 500 milligrams per tablet.

Non-effervescent tablets— 28 tablets

(a) that are enteric-coated,  
(b) that contain aspirin only, and  
(c) that do not contain more than 75 milligrams per tablet.

Other non-effervescent tablets 16 tablets

Powder or granules 10 sachets

Capsules 16 capsules

Liquid preparations of paracetamol intended for persons aged 12 years and over 160 millilitres

Liquid preparations of paracetamol intended for persons aged less than 12 years Individual unit doses of not more than 5 millilitres each, to a maximum of 20 unit doses

2. A medicinal product that contains ibuprofen and that is in the form specified in column 1 of the following table must be presented for sale in a separate and individual package containing not more than the amount of the product specified in the corresponding entry in column 2—

<i>Form of product</i>	<i>Maximum amount</i>
Tablets	16 tablets
Capsules	16 capsules
Powder or granules	12 sachets
Liquid preparations of ibuprofen	Individual unit doses of not more than 5 millilitres each, to a maximum of 20 unit doses

## SCHEDULE 16

Regulations 229, 230, 231,232, 233 and  
234

## Patient group directions

**PART 1**

## Particulars to be included in a patient group direction

1. The period during which the direction is to have effect.
2. The description or class of medicinal product to which the direction relates.
3. The clinical situations which medicinal products of that description or class may be used to treat or manage in any form.
4. Whether there are any restrictions on the quantity of medicinal product that may be sold or supplied on any one occasion and, if so, what restrictions.
5. The clinical criteria under which a person is to be eligible for treatment.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

6. Whether any class of person is excluded from treatment under the direction and, if so, what class of person.
7. Whether there are circumstances in which further advice should be sought from a doctor or dentist and, if so, what circumstances.
8. The pharmaceutical form or forms in which medicinal products of that description or class are to be administered.
9. The strength, or maximum strength, at which medicinal products of that description or class are to be administered.
10. The applicable dosage or maximum dosage.
11. The route of administration.
12. The frequency of administration.
13. Any minimum or maximum period of administration applicable to medicinal products of that description or class.
14. Whether there are any relevant warnings to note and, if so, what warnings.
15. Whether there is any follow up action to be taken in any circumstances and, if so, what action and in what circumstances.
16. Arrangements for referral for medical advice.
17. Details of the records to be kept of the supply, or the administration, of products under the direction.

## PART 2

### Persons on whose behalf a patient group Direction must be signed

<i>Column 1: Class of person by whom product is supplied</i>	<i>Column 2: Person on whose behalf direction must be signed</i>
Common Services Agency	The Agency
Health authority	The health authority
Special health authority	The special health authority
NHS trust or NHS foundation trust	The trust
[ <sup>F283</sup> Local authority	The Chief Executive or Director of Public Health of the local authority]
[ <sup>F284</sup> Public Health England	The Chief Executive of Public Health England]
[ <sup>F284</sup> Public Health Agency	The Public Health Agency]
<sup>F285</sup>	<sup>F285</sup>
...	...
A person who supplies medicinal products pursuant to an arrangement made with—	The Common Services Agency (where the arrangement has been made with the Agency); otherwise the—
(a) the Common Services Agency;	(a) health authority,
(b) a health authority;	(b) special health authority,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (c) a special health authority;                          | (c) NHS trust,  |
| (d) an NHS trust;  | [ <sup>F290</sup> (ca) a clinical commissioning group,              |
| [ <sup>F286</sup> (da) a clinical commissioning group;   | (cb) the National Health Service<br>Commissioning Board,            |
| (db) the National Health Service<br>Commissioning Board; | (cc) a local authority, <sup>F291</sup> ...]                        |
| (dc) a local authority; <sup>F287</sup> ...]             | [ <sup>F292</sup> (cd) Chief Executive of Public Health<br>England, |
| [ <sup>F288</sup> (dd) Public Health England;            | (ce) Public Health Agency, or]                                      |
| (de) Public Health Agency; or]                           | (d) NHS foundation trust, <sup>F293</sup> ...                       |
| (e) an NHS foundation trust; <sup>F289</sup> ...         | <sup>F293</sup> (e) .....   |
| <sup>F289</sup> (f) .....                                | with which the arrangement has been made.                           |

### Textual Amendments

- F283** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(7)(a)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F284** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 added (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(a)** and words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 added (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(a)**
- F285** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(7)(b)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F286** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(7)(c)(i)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F287** Word in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(b)(i)** and word in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(b)(i)**
- F288** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(b)(ii)** and words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(b)(ii)**
- F289** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(7)(c)(ii)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F290** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(7)(d)(i)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F291** Word in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(c)(i)** and word in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(c)(i)**
- F292** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(c)(ii)** and words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **7(2)(c)(ii)**
- F293** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 2 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(7)(d)(ii)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART 3

Persons by whom or on whose behalf a patient group direction used as described in regulation 234 must be signed

<b>Column 1: Force or service by whom or on whose behalf the health care is provided</b>	<b>Column 2: Person by whom or on whose behalf direction must be signed</b>
A police force in England and Wales	The chief officer of police for that police force (within the meaning of the Police Act 1996 <sup>M102</sup> )
A police force in Scotland	The chief constable of that police force (within the meaning of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967 <sup>M103</sup> )
The Police Service of Northern Ireland	The Chief Constable of the Police Service of Northern Ireland
The prison service in England and Wales	The governor of the prison in relation to which the health care in question is being provided
The prison service in Scotland	The Scottish Prison Service Management Board
The prison service in Northern Ireland	The Northern Ireland Prison Service Management Board
Her Majesty's Forces	(a) the Surgeon General, (b) a Medical Director General, or (c) a chief executive of an executive agency of the Ministry of Defence
[ <sup>F294</sup> Contractor carrying out helicopter search and rescue operations on behalf of the Maritime and Coastguard Agency	Medical Director of the contractor carrying out search and rescue operations on behalf of the Maritime and Coastguard Agency]

### Textual Amendments

**F294** Words in Sch. 16 Pt. 3 added (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **7(3)** and words in Sch. 16 Pt. 3 added (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **7(3)**

### Marginal Citations

**M102** 1996 c.16.

**M103** 1967 c.77.

## PART 4

Classes of individuals by whom supplies may be made

Pharmacists.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- Registered chiropodists and podiatrists.
- Registered dental hygienist.
- Registered dental therapist.
- Registered dietitians.
- Registered midwives.
- Registered nurses.
- Registered occupational therapists.
- Registered optometrists.
- Registered orthoptists.
- Registered orthotists and prosthetists.
- Registered paramedics.
- Registered physiotherapists.
- Registered radiographers.
- Registered speech and language therapists.

SCHEDULE 17

Regulations 223(5)(b) and (c) 235,250(5)  
and 253(5)(d)

Exemption for sale, supply or administration by certain persons

**PART 1**

Exemption from restrictions on sale and supply of prescription only medicines

Column 1 <i>Persons exempted</i>	Column 2 <i>Prescription only medicines to which the exemption applies</i>	Column 3 <i>Conditions</i>
1. Persons selling or supplying prescription only medicines to universities, other institutions concerned with higher education or institutions concerned with research.	1. All prescription only medicines.	1. The sale or supply shall be— (a) subject to the presentation of an order signed by the principal of an institution concerned with educational research or the appropriate head of department in charge of a specified course of research stating— (i) the name of the institution for which the prescription only medicine is required, and (ii) the purpose for which the prescription only medicine is required, and (iii) the total quantity required; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>2. Persons selling or supplying prescription only medicines to any of the following—</p> <p>(a) a public analyst appointed under section 27 of the Food Safety Act 1990 <sup>M104</sup> or article 27 of the Food Safety (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 <sup>M105</sup>;</p> <p>(b) an authorised officer within the meaning of section 5(6) of the Food Safety Act 1990 <sup>M106</sup>;</p> <p>(c) a sampling officer within the meaning of article 38(1) of the Food (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 <sup>M107</sup>;</p> <p>(d) an inspector acting under regulations 325 to 328;</p> <p>(e) a sampling officer within the meaning of Schedule 31.</p> | <p>2. All prescription only medicines.</p>   | <p>(b) for the purpose of the education or research with which the institution is concerned.</p> <p>2. The sale or supply shall be subject to the presentation of an order signed by or on behalf of any person listed in column 1 stating the status of the person signing it and the amount of prescription only medicine required, and shall be only in connection with the exercise by those persons of their statutory functions.</p> |
| <p>3. Persons selling or supplying prescription only medicines to any person employed or engaged in connection with a scheme for testing the quality and checking the amount of the drugs and appliances supplied under the National Health Service Act 2006 <sup>M108</sup></p> <p>, the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 <sup>M109</sup></p> <p>, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 <sup>M110</sup></p> <p>and the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 <sup>M111</sup></p> <p>, or under any subordinate legislation made under those Acts or that Order.</p>  | <p>3. All prescription only medicines</p>  | <p>3. The sale or supply shall be—</p> <p>(a) subject to the presentation of an order signed by or on behalf of the person so employed or engaged stating the status of the person signing it and the amount of the prescription only medicine required; and</p> <p>(b) for the purposes of a scheme referred to in column 1 in this paragraph.</p>  |
| <p>4. Registered midwives.</p>   | <p>4. Prescription only medicines containing any of the following substances—</p> <p>(a) Diclofenac;</p> | <p>4. The sale or supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice.</p>   |



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) Hydrocortisone Acetate;
  - (c) Miconazole;
  - (d) Nystatin;
  - (e) Phytomenadione;
5. Persons lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business within the meaning of section 69 of the Medicines Act 1968.
5. Water for injection.
5. The sale or supply is to a person—
- (a) for a purpose other than parenteral administration; or
  - (b) who has been prescribed dry powder for parenteral administration but has not been prescribed the water for injection that is needed as a diluent.
6. Persons lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business within the meaning of section 69 of the Medicines Act 1968.
6. Items which are—
- (a) prescription only medicines which are not for parenteral administration and which—
    - (i) are eye drops and are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain not more than 0.5 per cent of Chloramphenicol, or
    - (ii) are eye ointments and are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain not more than 1.0 per cent Chloramphenicol, or
    - (iii) are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain any of the following substances—
      - (aa) Cyclopentolate hydrochloride,
      - (bb) Fusidic Acid,
      - (cc) Tropicamide;
  - (b) the following prescription only medicines—
    - (i) Amorolfine hydrochloride cream where the maximum strength of the Amorolfine in the cream does not exceed 0.25 per cent by weight in weight,
    - (ii) Amorolfine hydrochloride lacquer where the maximum strength of Amorolfine in lacquer does not exceed 5 per cent by weight in volume,
    - (iii) Amoxicillin,
    - (iv) Co-Codamol,
    - (v) Co-dydramol 10/500 tablets,
6. The sale or supply shall be subject to the presentation of an order signed by—
- (a) a registered optometrist for a medicine listed under item (a) in column 2;
  - (b) a registered chiropodist or podiatrist for a medicine listed under item (b) in column 2.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (vi) Codeine Phosphate,  
 (vii) Erythromycin,  
 (viii) Flucloxacillin,  
 (ix) Silver Sulfadiazine,  
 (x) Tioconazole 28%,  
 (xi) Topical hydrocortisone  
 where the maximum strength of  
 hydrocortisone in the medicinal  
 product does not exceed 1 per  
 cent by weight in weight.
7. Registered optometrists.      7. Prescription only medicines listed in item (a) of paragraph 6 column 2.      7. The sale or supply shall be only—  
 (a) in the course of their professional practice, and  
 (b) in an emergency.
8. Persons lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business within the meaning of section 69 of the Medicines Act 1968.      8. Medicinal products not for parenteral administration which are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain any of the following substances—  
 (a) Acetylcysteine,  
 (b) Atropine sulphate,  
 (c) Azelastine hydrochloride,  
 (d) Diclofenac sodium,  
 (e) Emedastine,  
 (f) Homotropine hydrobromide,  
 (g) Ketotifen,  
 (h) Levocabastine,  
 (i) Lodoxamide,  
 (j) Nedocromil sodium,  
 (k) Olopatadine,  
 (l) Pilocarpine hydrochloride,  
 (m) Pilocarpine nitrate,  
 (n) Polymyxin B/bacitracin,  
 (o) Polymyxin B/trimethoprim,  
 (p) Sodium cromoglycate.      8. The sale or supply shall be subject to the presentation of an order signed by an additional supply optometrist.
9. Additional supply optometrists.      9. Prescription only medicines specified in paragraph 8 column 2.      9. The sale or supply shall be only—  
 (a) in the course of their professional practice, and  
 (b) in an emergency.
10. Holders of marketing authorisations, product licences or manufacturer's licences.      10. Prescription only medicines referred to in those authorisations or licences.      10. The sale or supply shall be only—  
 (a) to a pharmacist,  
 (b) so as to enable that pharmacist to prepare an entry relating to the prescription only medicine in question in a tablet or capsule identification guide or similar publication, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
|  |   | (c) of no greater quantity than is reasonably necessary for that purpose.   |
| 11. Registered chiropodists or podiatrists against whose names are recorded in the relevant register annotations signifying that they are qualified to use the medicine specified in column 2. | 11. The following prescription only medicines—<br>(a) Amorolfine hydrochloride cream where the maximum strength of the Amorolfine in the cream does not exceed 0.25 per cent by weight in weight,<br>(b) Amorolfine hydrochloride lacquer where the maximum strength of Amorolfine in lacquer does not exceed 5 per cent by weight in volume,<br>(c) Amoxicillin,<br>(d) Co-Codamol,<br>(e) Co-dydramol 10/500 tablets,<br>(f) Codeine Phosphate,<br>(g) Erythromycin,<br>(h) Flucloxacillin,<br>(i) Silver Sulfadiazine,<br>(j) Tioconazole 28%,<br>(k) Topical hydrocortisone where the maximum strength of hydrocortisone in the medicinal product does not exceed 1 per cent by weight in weight. | 11. The sale or supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice.  |
| [ <sup>F295</sup> 12. Persons selling or supplying prescription only medicines to a school.  | 12.<br>[ <sup>F296</sup> Prescription only medicines comprising:<br>(a) an inhaler containing salbutamol; or<br>(b) an auto-injector containing adrenaline]   | 12. The sale or supply shall be—<br><br>(a) subject to the presentation of an order signed by the principal or head teacher at the school concerned stating—<br><br>(i) the name of the school for which the medicinal product is required,<br><br>(ii) the purpose for which that product is required, and<br><br>(iii) the total quantity required, and<br><br>(b) for the purpose of supplying [ <sup>F297</sup> or administering] the medicinal product to pupils at the school in an emergency.] |

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

<p>[<sup>F298</sup>13 Registered orthoptists [<sup>F299</sup>against whose names are recorded in the relevant register annotations signifying that they are qualified to sell or supply the medicine specified in column 2].</p>	<p>13 The following prescription only medicines—</p> <p>(a) Atropine,</p> <p>(b) Cyclopentolate,</p> <p>(c) Tropicamide,</p> <p>(d) Lidocaine with fluorescein,</p> <p>(e) Oxybuprocaine,</p> <p>(f) Proxymetacaine,</p> <p>(g) Tetracaine,</p> <p>(h) Chloramphenicol,</p> <p>(i) Fusidic acid.</p>	<p>13 The sale or supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice.]</p>
--	--	---

### Textual Amendments

- F295** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 added (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **27(2)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 added (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **27(2)**
- F296** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 substituted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)(i)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 substituted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)(i)**
- F297** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)(ii)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(a)(ii)**
- F298** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **16(2)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 inserted (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **16(2)**
- F299** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(b)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 1 inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)(b)**

### Marginal Citations

- M104** 1990 c.16. Section 27 was amended by the Local Government etc (Scotland) Act 1994 section 180(1) and Schedule 18 paragraph 163(3), the Food Standards Act 1999 section 40(1) and Schedule 5 paragraphs 7 and 8, the Local Government (Wales) Act 1994 section 22(3) and Schedule 9 paragraph 16(2), [S.I. 1994/865](#) regulation 24, and the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 sections 22 and 241, Schedule 1 Part 2 paragraph 17, and Schedule 18 Part 1.
- M105** 1991 No. 762 (N.I. 7). There are amendments not relevant to these Regulations.
- M106** 1990 c.16.
- M107** 1989 No. 846 (N.I. 6).
- M108** 2006 c. 41.
- M109** 1978 c. 29.
- M110** 2006 c. 42.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**M111 S.I. 1972/1265 (N.I. 14).**

## PART 2

### Exemption from the restriction on supply of prescription only medicines

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Persons exempted</i>	<i>Prescription only medicines to which the exemption applies</i>	<i>Conditions</i>
1. Royal National Lifeboat Institution and certified first aiders of the Institution.	1. All prescription only medicines	1. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons in the exercise of the functions of the Institution.
2. The owner or master of a ship which does not carry a doctor on board as part of the ship's complement.	2. All prescription only medicines.	2. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of persons on the ship.
3. Persons authorised by licences granted under regulation 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 M112 or regulation 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002 M113 to supply a controlled drug.	3. Such prescription only medicines, being controlled drugs, as are specified in the licence.	3. The supply shall be subject to such conditions and in such circumstances and to such an extent as may be specified in the licence.
4. Persons employed or engaged in the provision of lawful drug treatment services.	4. Ampoules of sterile water for injection that contain no more than 2ml of water each.	4. The supply shall be only in the course of provisions of lawful drug treatment services.
[ <sup>F300</sup> 4a Persons employed or engaged in the provision of drug treatment services provided by, on behalf of or under arrangements made by one of the following bodies—	4a A prescription only medicine for parenteral administration containing naloxone hydrochloride but no other substance that is classified as a product available on prescription only.	4a The supply shall be only in the course of provisions of lawful drug treatment services and only where required for the purpose of saving life in an emergency.]
(a) an NHS body;		
(b) a local authority;		
(c) Public Health England; or		
(d) Public Health Agency.		

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <p>5. Persons requiring prescription only medicines for the purpose of enabling them, in the course of any business carried on by them, to comply with any requirements made by or in pursuance of any enactment with respect to the medical treatment of their employees.</p> | <p>5. Such prescription only medicines as may be specified in the relevant enactment.</p>  | <p>5. The supply shall be—<br/>(a) for the purpose of enabling them to comply with any requirements made by or in pursuance of any such enactment, and<br/>(b) subject to such conditions and such circumstances as may be specified in the relevant enactment.</p>   |
| <p>6. Persons operating an occupational health scheme.</p>   | <p>6. Prescription only medicines sold or supplied to a person operating an occupational health scheme in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor or a registered nurse.</p>                                  | <p>6. The supply of the prescription only medicine shall be—<br/>(a) in the course of operating an occupational health scheme, and<br/>(b) made by—<br/>(i) a doctor, or<br/>(ii) a registered nurse acting in accordance with the written directions of a doctor as to the circumstance in which such medicines are to be used in the course of an occupational health scheme.</p> |
| <p>7. The operator or commander of an aircraft.</p>  | <p>7. Prescription only medicines which are not for parenteral administration and which have been sold or supplied to an operator or commander of an aircraft in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor.</p> | <p>7. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the immediate treatment of sick or injured persons on the aircraft and shall be in accordance with the written instructions of a doctor as to the circumstances in which prescription only medicines of the description in question are to be used on the aircraft.</p>   |
| <p>8. Persons employed as qualified first-aid personnel on off-shore installations.</p>  | <p>8. All prescription only medicines.</p>   | <p>8. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of persons on the installation.</p>   |
| <p>9. Persons who hold a certificate in first aid from the Mountain Rescue Council of England and Wales, or from the Northern Ireland Mountain Rescue Co-ordinating Committee.</p>   | <p>9. Prescription only medicines supplied to a person specified in column 1 in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor.</p>  | <p>9. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons in the course of providing mountain rescue services.</p>   |
| <p>10. Persons (“P”) who are members of Her Majesty’s armed forces.</p>  | <p>10. All prescription only medicines.</p>  | <p>10. The supply shall be—<br/>(a) in the course of P undertaking any function as a</p>  |

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		member of Her Majesty's armed forces; and
		(b) where P is satisfied that it is not practicable for another person who is legally entitled to supply a prescription only medicine to do so; and
		(c) only in so far as is necessary—
		(i) for the treatment of a sick or injured person in a medical emergency, or
		(ii) to prevent ill-health where there is a risk that a person would suffer ill-health if the prescription only medicine is not supplied.
[ <sup>F301</sup> 11. A person (“P”) carrying on the business of a school who is trained to administer the relevant medicine.	11. A prescription only medicinal product comprising an inhaler containing salbutamol.	11. The supply shall be— (a) in the course of P carrying on the business of a school;  (b) where supply is to a pupil at that school who is known to suffer from asthma; and  (c) where the pupil requires the medicinal product in an emergency.]
[ <sup>F302</sup> 12 Registered midwives.	12 Prescription only medicines for parenteral administration that contain—  (a) Diamorphine,  (b) Morphine,  (c) Pethidine hydrochloride.	12 The supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice.]

### Textual Amendments

- F300** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 2 added (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 2 added (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **10(2)**
- F301** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 2 added (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **27(3)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 2 added (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **27(3)**
- F302** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 2 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **16(3)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 2 inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **16(3)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

**M112 S.I. 2001/3998**, to which there are amendments that are not relevant.

**M113 S.R. 2002 No. 1**, to which there are amendments that are not relevant.

## PART 3

### Exemptions from the restriction on administration of prescription only medicines

Column 1 <i>Persons exempted</i>	Column 2 <i>Prescription only medicines to which the exemption applies</i>	Column 3 <i>Conditions</i>
1. Registered chiropodists or podiatrists against whose names are recorded in the relevant register annotations signifying that they are qualified to use the medicines specified in column 2.	1. Prescription only medicines for parenteral administration that contain— (a) Adrenaline, (b) Bupivacaine hydrochloride, (c) Bupivacaine hydrochloride with adrenaline where the maximum strength of adrenaline does not exceed 1 mg in 200 ml of bupivacaine hydrochloride, (d) Levobupivacaine hydrochloride, (e) Lidocaine hydrochloride, (f) Lidocaine hydrochloride with adrenaline where the maximum strength of adrenaline does not exceed 1 mg in 200 ml of lignocaine hydrochloride, (g) Mepivacaine hydrochloride, (h) Methylprednisolone, (i) Prilocaine hydrochloride, (j) Ropivacaine hydrochloride.	1. The administration shall only be in the course of their professional practice and where the medicine includes a combination of substances in column 2, those substances shall not have been combined by the chiropodist or podiatrist.
2. Registered midwives and student midwives.	2. Prescription only medicines for parenteral administration containing any of the following substances but no other substance that is classified as a product available on prescription only— (a) Adrenaline, (b) Anti-D immunoglobulin, (c) Carboprost, (d) Cyclizine lactate, (e) Diamorphine, (f) Ergometrine maleate, (g) Gelofusine,	2. The medicine shall— (a) in the case of Lidocaine and Lidocaine hydrochloride, be administered only while attending on a woman in childbirth, and (b) where administration is— (i) by a registered midwife, be administered in the course of their professional practice; (ii) by a student midwife— (aa) be administered under the direct supervision of a registered midwife; and



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (h) Hartmann's solution,  
(i) Hepatitis B vaccine,  
(j) Hepatitis immunoglobulin,  
(k) Lidocaine hydrochloride,  
(l) Morphine,  
(m) Naloxone hydrochloride,  
(n) Oxytocins, natural and synthetic,  
(o) Pethidine hydrochloride,  
(p) Phytomenadione,  
(q) Prochlorperazine,  
(r) Sodium chloride 0.9%.
- (bb) not include Diamorphine, Morphine or Pethidine hydrochloride.
3. Persons who are authorised as members of a group by a group authority granted under regulations 8(3) or 9(3) of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001  
M114  
or, regulations 8(3) or 9(3) of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002  
M115  
, to supply a controlled drug by way of administration only.
3. Prescription only medicines that are specified in the group authority.
3. The administration shall be subject to such conditions and in such circumstances and to such extent as may be specified in the group authority.
4. The owner or master of a ship which does not carry a doctor on board as part of the ship's complement.
4. All prescription only medicines that are for parenteral administration.
4. The administration shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of persons on the ship.
5. Persons operating an occupational health scheme.
5. Prescription only medicines that are for parenteral administration sold or supplied to the person operating an occupational health scheme in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor or a registered nurse.
5. The prescription only is administered in the course of an occupational health scheme, and the individual administering the medicine is—  
(a) a doctor, or  
(b) a registered nurse acting in accordance with the written instructions of a doctor as to the circumstances in which prescription only medicines of the description in question are to be used.
6. The operator or commander of an aircraft.
6. Prescription only medicines for parenteral administration which have been sold or supplied to the operator or commander of the aircraft in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor.
6. The administration shall be only so far as is necessary for the immediate treatment of sick or injured persons on the aircraft and shall be in accordance with the written instructions of the doctor as to the circumstances in which

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | prescription only medicines of the description in question are to be used on the aircraft.   |
| 7. Persons employed as qualified first-aid personnel on off-shore installations. | 7. All prescription only medicines that are for parenteral administration.   | 7. The administration shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of persons on the installation.   |
| 8. Persons who are registered paramedics.  | 8. The following prescription only medicines for parenteral administration—<br>(a) Diazepam 5 mg per ml emulsion for injection,<br>(b) Succinylated Modified Fluid Gelatin 4 per cent intravenous infusion,<br>(c) medicines containing the substance Ergometrine Maleate 500 mcg per ml with Oxytocin 5 iu per ml, but no other active ingredient,<br>(d) prescription only medicines containing one or more of the following substances, but no other active ingredient—<br>(i) Adrenaline Acid Tartrate,<br>(ii) Adrenaline hydrochloride,<br>(iii) Amiodarone,<br>(iv) Anhydrous glucose,<br>(v) Benzlypenicillin,<br>(vi) Compound Sodium Lactate Intravenous Infusion (Hartmann's Solution),<br>(vii) Ergometrine Maleate,<br>(viii) Furosemide,<br>(ix) Glucose,<br>(x) Heparin Sodium,<br>(xi) Lidocaine Hydrochloride,<br>(xii) Metoclopramide,<br>(xiii) Morphine Sulphate,<br>(xiv) Nalbuphine Hydrochloride,<br>(xv) Naloxone Hydrochloride,<br>(xvi) Ondansetron<br>(xvii) Paracetamol,<br>(xviii) Reteplase,<br>(xix) Sodium Chloride,<br>(xx) Streptokinase,<br>(xxi) Tenecteplase. | 8. The administration shall be only for the immediate, necessary treatment of sick or injured persons and in the case of prescription only medicine containing Heparin Sodium shall be only for the purpose of cannula flushing. |
| 9. Persons who hold the advanced life support provider                           | 9. The following prescription only medicines for parenteral administration —   | 9. The administration shall be only in an emergency involving cardiac arrest, and in the case  |

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

certificate issued by the (a) Adrenaline 1:10,000 up to I of adrenaline the administration  
Resuscitation Council (UK). mg; and shall be intravenous only.

(b) Amiodarone.

[<sup>F303</sup>10. Persons (“P”) who are 10. All prescription only 10. The administration shall  
members of Her Majesty’s medicines. be—  
armed forces.

(a) in the course of P  
undertaking any function  
as a member of Her  
Majesty’s armed forces;  
and

(b) where P is satisfied that  
it is not practicable for  
another person who  
is legally entitled to  
administer a prescription  
only medicine to do so;  
and

(c) only in so far as is  
necessary—

(i) for the treatment  
of a sick or injured  
person in an  
emergency, or

(ii) to prevent ill-  
health where there  
is a risk that a  
person would suffer  
ill-health if the  
prescription only  
medicine is not  
administered.]

[<sup>F304</sup>11 A person (“P”) carrying 11 A prescription only medicine 11 The administration shall  
on the business of a school comprising an auto-injector be—  
who is trained to administer the containing adrenaline.

(a) in the course of P carrying  
on the business of a school;

(b) where administration  
is to a pupil at that school  
who is known to be at risk of  
anaphylaxis; and

(c) where the pupil requires  
the medicinal product in an  
emergency.]

### Textual Amendments

**F303** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 3 added (E.W.S.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/490\)](#), regs. 1(2), **11** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 3 added (N.I.) (31.3.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/323\)](#), regs. 1(2), **11**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F304** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 3 inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **8(3)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 3 inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **8(3)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M114** [S.I. 2001/3998](#) as amended by [S.I. 2007/2154](#). There are other amendments that are not relevant.

**M115** [S.R. 2002 No. 1](#), as amended by [S.R. 2007 No. 348](#). There are other amendments that are not relevant.

## PART 4

Exemptions from the restrictions in regulations 220 and 221 for certain persons who sell, supply, or offer for sale or supply certain medicinal products

Column 1 <i>Persons exempted</i>	Column 2 <i>Medicinal products to which exemption applies</i>	Column 3 <i>Conditions</i>
1. Registered chiropodists and podiatrists.	1. Medicinal products on a general sale list which are for external use and are not veterinary drugs and the following pharmacy medicines for external use— (a) Potassium permanganate crystals or solution; (b) ointment of heparinoid and hyaluronidase; and (c) products containing, as their only active ingredients, any of the following substances, at a strength, in the case of each substance, not exceeding that specified in relation to that substance— (i) 9.0 per cent Borotannic complex (ii) 10.0 per cent Buclosamide (iii) 3.0 per cent Chlorquinaldol (iv) 1.0 per cent Clotrimazole (v) 10.0 per cent Crotamiton (vi) 5.0 per cent Diamthazole hydrochloride (vii) 1.0 per cent Econazole nitrate (viii) 1.0 per cent Fenticlor (ix) 10.0 per cent Glutaraldehyde (x) 1.0 per cent Griseofulvin (xi) 0.4 per cent Hydrargaphen	

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (xii) 2.0 per cent Mepyramine maleate
- (xiii) 2.0 per cent Miconazole nitrate
- (xiv) 2.0 per cent Phenoxypropan-2-ol
- (xv) 20.0 per cent Podophyllum resin
- (xvi) 10.0 per cent Polynoxylin
- (xvii) 70.0 per cent Pyrogallol
- (xviii) 70.0 per cent Salicylic acid
- (xix) 1.0 per cent Terbinafine
- (xx) 0.1 per cent Thiomersal.

2. Registered chiropodists and podiatrists against whose names are recorded in the relevant register annotations signifying that they are qualified to use the medicines in column 2.

2. (a) The following prescription only medicines—
- (i) Amorolfine hydrochloride cream where the maximum strength of the Amorolfine in the cream does not exceed 0.25 per cent by weight in weight,
  - (ii) Amorolfine hydrochloride lacquer where the maximum strength of Amorolfine in the lacquer does not exceed 5 per cent by weight in volume,
  - (iii) Amoxicillin,
  - (iv) Co-Codamol,
  - (v) Co-dydramol 10/500 tablets,
  - (vi) Codeine Phosphate,
  - (vii) Erythromycin,
  - (viii) Flucloxacillin,
  - (ix) Silver Sulfadiazine,
  - (x) Tioconazole 28%,
  - (xi) Topical hydrocortisone where the maximum strength of the hydrocortisone in the medicinal product does not exceed 1 per cent by weight in weight; and
- (b) Ibuprofen, other than preparations of ibuprofen which are prescription only medicines.

2. The sale or supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice, and the medicinal product must have been made up for sale or supply in a container elsewhere than at the place at which it is sold or supplied.

3. Registered optometrists.

3. All medical products on a general sale list, all pharmacy medicines and prescription only medicines which are not

3. The sale or supply shall be only—  
(a) in the case of medicinal products on a general sale list

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| <p>4. Additional optometrists.</p>  | <p>supply</p>  | <p>4. Medicinal products which are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain any of the following substances—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Acetylcysteine,</li> <li>(b) Atropine sulphate,</li> <li>(c) Azelastine hydrochloride,</li> <li>(d) Diclofenac sodium,</li> <li>(e) Emedastine,</li> <li>(f) Homotropine hydrobromide,</li> <li>(g) Ketotifen,</li> <li>(h) Levocabastine,</li> <li>(i) Lodoximide,</li> <li>(j) Nedocromil sodium,</li> <li>(k) Olopatadine,</li> <li>(l) Pilocarpine hydrochloride,</li> <li>(m) Pilocarpine nitrate,</li> <li>(n) Polymyxin B/bacitracin,</li> <li>(o) Polymyxin B/trimethoprim,</li> <li>(p) Sodium Cromoglycate.</li> </ul> | <p>4. The sale or supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice and only in an emergency.</p>  |
| <p>5. Holders of manufacturer's licences where the licence in question contains a provision</p> | <p>5. Medicinal products on a general sale list are for external use and</p> | <p>5. The licence holder shall sell or supply the medicinal product in question only to a particular</p>   | <p>and pharmacy medicines, in the course of their professional practice;</p> <p>(a) are eye drops and are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain not more than—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) 30.0 per cent Sulphacetamide Sodium, or</li> <li>(ii) 0.5 per cent Chloramphenicol, or</li> </ul> <p>(b) in the case of prescription only medicines, in the course of their professional practice and in an emergency.</p> <p>(b) are eye ointments and are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain not more than—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) 30.0 per cent Sulphacetamide Sodium, or</li> <li>(ii) 1.0 per cent Chloramphenicol, or</li> </ul> <p>(c) are prescription only medicines by reason only that they contain any of the following substances—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Cyclopentolate hydrochloride,</li> <li>(ii) Fusidic acid,</li> <li>(iii) Tropicamide.</li> </ul> |

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- that the licence holder shall manufacture the medicinal product to which the licence relates only for a particular person after being requested by or on behalf of that person and in that person's presence to use his own judgement as to the treatment required.
- are not veterinary drugs and pharmacy medicines which are for external use in the treatment of hair and scalp conditions and which contain any of the following—
- (a) not more than 5.0 per cent of Boric acid,
  - (b) Isopropyl myristate or Lauryl sulphate,
  - (c) not more than 0.004 per cent Oestrogens,
  - (d) not more than 1.0 per cent of Resorcinol,
  - (e) not more than 3.0 per cent of Salicylic acid,
  - (f) not more than 0.2 per cent of Sodium pyrithione.
6. Persons selling or supplying medicinal products to universities, other institutions concerned with higher education or institutions concerned with research.
6. All medicinal products.
6. The sale or supply shall be—
- (a) Subject to the presentation of an order signed by the principal of the institution concerned with education or research or the appropriate head of department in charge of the specified course of research stating—
    - (i) the name of the institution for which the medicinal product is required,
    - (ii) the purpose for which the medicinal product is required, and
    - (iii) the total quantity required, and
  - (b) for the purposes of the education or research with which the institution is concerned.
7. Persons selling or supplying medicinal products to organisations for research purposes.
7. All medicinal products.
7. The sale or supply is only for the purposes of research and shall be—
- (a) subject to the presentation of an order signed by the representative of the organisation concerned stating—
    - (i) who requires the medicine,
    - (ii) the purposes for which it is required,
    - (iii) the quantity required, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>8. Persons selling or supplying medicinal products to any of the following—</p> <p>(a) a public analyst appointed under section 27 of the Food Safety Act 1990 or under article 27 of the Food Safety (Northern Ireland) Order 1991;</p> <p>(b) an agricultural analyst appointed under section 67 of the Agriculture Act 1970<sup>M116</sup>,</p> <p>(c) a person duly authorised by an enforcement authority under regulations 325 to 328,</p> <p>(d) a sampling officer within the meaning a sampling officer within the meaning of Schedule 31.</p> | <p>8. All medicinal products.</p>   | <p>(iv) the purposes of the research with which the organisation is concerned; and</p> <p>(b) not for administration to humans.</p> <p>8. The sale or supply is in connection with the exercise of any statutory function carried out by any person listed in sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) of column 1 provided that—</p> <p>(a) the medicinal products are requested on an order signed by or on behalf of a person listed in sub-paragraph (a) to (d) of column 1, and</p> <p>(b) the order gives—</p> <p>(i) the status of the person signing it,</p> <p>(ii) the amount of medicinal product required.</p> |
| <p>9. Holders of a marketing authorisation, a certificate of registration or a manufacturer's licence.</p>   | <p>9. Medicinal product referred to in the marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or manufacturer's licence.</p>  | <p>The sale or supply shall be only—</p> <p>(a) to a pharmacist,</p> <p>(b) so as to enable that pharmacist to prepare an entry relating to the medical product in question in a tablet or capsule identification guide or similar publication, and</p> <p>(c) of no greater quantity than is reasonably necessary for that purpose.</p>  |
| <p>10. Registered dispensing opticians.</p>  | <p>10. Pharmacy medicines for external use containing chloramphenicol at a strength not exceeding—</p> <p>(a) 0.5 per cent in eye drops;</p> <p>(b) 1 per cent in ointment.</p> | <p>10. The sale or supply shall only be in the course of their professional practice.</p>   |
| <p><sup>F305</sup>11. Operator or commander of an aircraft.</p>  | <p>11. All medicinal products on a general sale list.</p>   | <p>11. The medicinal product must—</p> <p>(a) have been made up for sale or supply in a container elsewhere than at the place at which it is sold or supplied; and</p> <p>(b) be stored in a part of the aircraft which the operator is able to close</p>   |



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		so as to exclude the public.]
[ <sup>F305</sup> 12. The operator of a train.	12. All medicinal products on a general sale list.	12. The medicinal product must— (a) have been made up for sale or supply in a container elsewhere than at the place at which it is sold or supplied; and (b) be stored in a part of the train which the operator is able to close so as to exclude the public.]
[ <sup>F306</sup> 13 Registered orthoptists [ <sup>F307</sup> against whose names are recorded in the relevant register annotations signifying that they are qualified to sell or supply the medicine specified in column 2].	13 All medicinal products on a general sale list, all pharmacy medicines and the following prescription only medicines— (a) Atropine,  (b) Cyclopentolate,  (c) Tropicamide,  (d) Lidocaine with fluorescein,  (e) Oxybuprocaine,  (f) Proxymetacaine,  (g) Tetracaine,  (h) Chloramphenicol,  (i) Fusidic acid.	13 The sale or supply shall be only in the course of their professional practice.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F305** Sch. 17 Pt. 4 Table Item 11, 12 inserted (11.11.2013) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/2593\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9**
- F306** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 4 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, **16(4)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 4 inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, **16(4)**
- F307** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 4 inserted (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/715\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 4 inserted (N.I.) (1.10.2017) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2017 \(S.R. 2017/241\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

**M116 1970 c.40:** subsection (1) was amended by section 272(1) of and Schedule 30 to the Local Government Act 1972; section 16 of and Schedule 8 paragraph 15 to the Local Government Act 1985, and section 66(6) and (8) of, and Schedule 16 paragraph 38(5) and Schedule 18 to the Local Government (Wales) Act 1994. Subsection (1A) was inserted by section 66(6) of and Schedule 16 paragraph 38(5) to that Act. Subsection 2 was substituted by section 180(1) of and Schedule 13 paragraph 85(2) to the Local Government etc (Scotland) Act 1994, and subsection (7) was repealed by sections 1(1) and 194 of, and Schedule 1 paragraph 8 and Schedule 34 Part 1 to the Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980.

## PART 5

### Exemptions from the restrictions in regulations 220 and 221 for certain persons who supply certain medicinal products

Column 1 <i>Persons exempted</i>	Column 2 <i>Medicinal products to which exemption applies</i>	Column 3 <i>Conditions</i>
1. Royal National Lifeboat Institution and certificated first aiders of the Institution.	1. All medicinal products.	1. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons.
2. British Red Cross Society and certificated first aid and certificated nursing members of the Society.	2. All pharmacy medicines and all medicinal products on a general sale list.	2. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons.
3. St John Ambulance Association and Brigade and certificated first aid and certificated nursing members of the Association and Brigade.	3. All pharmacy medicines and all medicinal products on a general sale list.	3. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons.
4. St. Andrew's Ambulance Association and certificated first aid and certificated nursing members of the Association.	4. All pharmacy medicines and all medicinal products on a general sale list.	4. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick and injured persons.
5. Order of Malta Ambulance Corps and certificated first aid and certificated nursing members of the Corps.	5. All pharmacy medicines and all medicinal products on a general sale list.	5. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons.
6. Persons authorised by licences granted under regulation 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 or regulation 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002.	6. Such prescription only medicines and such pharmacy medicines as are specified in the licence.	6. The supply shall be subject to such conditions and in such circumstances and to such an extent as may be specified in the licence.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| 7. Persons employed or engaged in the provision of lawful drug treatment services.   | 7. Ampoules of sterile water for injection that contain no more than 5ml of water each.  | 7. The supply shall be only in the course of provision of lawful drug treatment services.   |
| [ <sup>F308</sup> 7a Persons employed or engaged in the provision of drug treatment services provided by, on behalf of or under arrangements made by one of the following bodies—  | 7a A prescription only medicine for parenteral administration containing naloxone hydrochloride but no other substance that is classified as a product available on prescription only.   | 7a The supply shall be only in the course of provisions of lawful drug treatment services and only where required for the purpose of saving life in an emergency.]  |
| (a) an NHS body;   |  |   |
| (d) a local authority;   |  |   |
| (c) Public Health England; or  |  |   |
| (d) Public Health Agency.  |  |   |
| 8. Persons requiring medicinal products for the purpose of enabling them, in the course of any business carried on by them, to comply with any requirements made by or in pursuance of any enactment with respect to the medical treatment of their employees. | 8. Such prescription only medicines and such pharmacy medicines as may be specified in the relevant enactment and medicinal products on a general sale list.   | 8. The supply shall be—<br>(a) for the purpose of enabling compliance with any requirement made by or in pursuance of any such enactment, and<br>(b) subject to such conditions and in such circumstances as may be specified in the relevant enactment.  |
| 9. The owner or master of a ship which does not carry a doctor on board as part of the ship's complement.  | 9. All medicinal products.   | 9. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of persons on the ship.  |
| 10. Persons operating an occupational health scheme.   | 10. All pharmacy medicines, all medicinal products on a general sale list and such prescription only medicines as are sold or supplied to a person operating an occupational health scheme in response to an order signed by a doctor or a registered nurse. | 10. (a) The supply shall be in the course of an occupational health scheme.<br>(b) The individual supplying the medicinal product, if not a doctor, shall be—<br>(i) a registered nurse, and<br>(ii) where the medicinal product in question is a prescription only medicine, acting in accordance with the written instructions of a doctor as to the circumstances in which prescription only medicines of the description in question are to be used in the course of an occupational health scheme. |

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| 11. Persons carrying on the business of a school providing full-time education.  | 11. Pharmacy medicines that are for use in the prevention of dental caries and consist of or contain Sodium Fluoride.  | 11. The supply shall be—<br>(a) in the course of a school dental scheme, and<br>(b) if to a child under 16 only where the parent or guardian of that child has consented to such supply.  |
| 12. Health authorities or Primary Health Trusts.   | 12. Pharmacy medicines that are for use in the prevention of dental caries and consist of or contain Sodium Fluoride.  | 12. The supply shall be in the course of—<br>(a) a pre-school dental scheme, and the individual supplying the medicinal product shall be a registered nurse, or<br>(b) a school dental scheme, and if to a child under 16 only where the parent or guardian of that child has consented to such supply.   |
| 13. The operator or commander of an aircraft.  | 13. All pharmacy medicines, all medicinal products on a general sale list and such prescription only medicines which are not for parenteral administration and which have been sold or supplied to the operator or commander of an aircraft in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor. | 13. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the immediate treatment of sick or injured persons on the aircraft and, in the case of a prescription only medicine, shall be in accordance with the written instructions of a doctor as to the circumstances in which the prescription only medicines of the description in question are to be used on the aircraft. |
| 14. Persons employed as qualified first-aid personnel on offshore installations.   | 14. All medicinal products.  | 14. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of persons on the installation.   |
| 15. A prison officer.  | 15. All medicinal products on the general sale list.   | 15. The supply shall only be so far as is necessary for the treatment of prisoners.   |
| 16. Persons who hold a certificate in first aid from the Mountain Rescue Council of England and Wales, or from the Northern Ireland Mountain Rescue Co-ordinating Committee. | 16. All pharmacy medicines, all medicinal products on a general sale list and such prescription only medicines which are sold or supplied to a person specified in column 1 of this paragraph in response to an order in writing signed by a doctor.   | 16. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of sick or injured persons in the course of providing mountain rescue services.   |
| 17. Her Majesty's armed forces.  | 17. All medicinal products.  | 17. The supply shall be only so far as is necessary for the treatment of a sick or injured  |

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

<p>[<sup>F309</sup>18. A person (“P”) carrying on the business of a school who is trained to administer the relevant medicine.</p>	<p>18. A prescription only medicinal product comprising an inhaler containing salbutamol.</p>	<p>person or the prevention of ill-health.</p> <p>18. The supply shall be—</p> <p>(a) in the course of P carrying on the business of a school;</p>
		<p>(b) where supply is to a pupil at that school who is known to suffer from asthma; and</p> <p>(c) where the pupil requires the medicinal product in an emergency.]</p>
<p>[<sup>F310</sup>19. Persons supplying medicinal products under an off-site emergency plan prepared under the Radiation (Emergency Preparedness and Public Information) Regulations 2001.]</p>	<p>[<sup>F310</sup>19. Pharmacy medicines which contain any of the following substances but no other active ingredient—</p> <p>(a) Potassium Iodide;</p> <p>(b) Potassium Iodate.]</p>	<p>[<sup>F310</sup>19. The supply shall be—</p> <p>(a) in accordance with the off-site emergency plan; and</p> <p>(b) only in the event that a radiation emergency has occurred or an event has occurred which could reasonably be expected to lead to a radiation emergency.]</p>
<p>[<sup>F310</sup>20. A person or body listed in Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 1 to the Civil Contingencies Act 2004.]</p>	<p>[<sup>F310</sup>20. Pharmacy medicines which contain any of the following substances but no other active ingredient—</p> <p>(a) Potassium Iodide;</p> <p>(b) Potassium Iodate.]</p>	<p>[<sup>F310</sup>20. The supply shall only be in response to the occurrence, or likely occurrence, of one of the following events—</p> <p>(a) an emergency within the meaning of section 1 of the Civil Contingencies Act 2004;</p> <p>(b) a radiological emergency within the meaning of regulation 24 of the Carriage of Dangerous Goods and Use of Transportable Pressure Equipment Regulations 2009.]</p>

### Textual Amendments

**F308** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 5 added (E.W.S.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1503\)](#), regs. 1, **10(3)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 5 added (N.I.) (1.10.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No.3\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/354\)](#), regs. 1, **10(3)**

**F309** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 5 added (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **27(4)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 5 added (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **27(4)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F310** Words in Sch. 17 Pt. 5 inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **12(2)** and words in Sch. 17 Pt. 5 inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **12(2)**

## SCHEDULE 18

Regulation 225

Substances that may not be sold or supplied by a pharmacist  
without a prescription in reliance on regulation 225

Ammonium bromide  
Calcium bromide  
Calcium bromidolactobionate  
Embutramide  
Fencamfamin hydrochloride  
Fluanisone  
Hexobarbitone  
Hexobarbitone sodium  
Hydrobromic acid  
Meclofenoxate hydrochloride  
Methohexitone sodium  
Pemoline  
Piracetam  
Potassium bromide  
Prolintane hydrochloride  
Sodium bromide  
Strychnine hydrochloride  
Tacrine hydrochloride  
Thiopentone sodium

## SCHEDULE 19

Regulation 238

Medicinal products for parenteral administration in an emergency

Adrenaline 1:1000 up to 1mg for intramuscular use in anaphylaxis  
Atropine sulphate and obidoxime chloride injection  
Atropine sulphate and pralidoxime chloride injection  
Atropine sulphate injection  
Atropine sulphate, pralidoxime mesilate and avizafone injection  
Chlorphenamine injection

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Dicobalt edetate injection  
 Glucagon injection  
 Glucose injection  
 Hydrocortisone injection  
 Naloxone hydrochloride  
 Pralidoxime chloride injection  
 Pralidoxime mesilate injection  
 Promethazine hydrochloride injection  
 Snake venom antiserum  
 Sodium nitrite injection  
 Sodium thiosulphate injection  
 Sterile pralidoxime

## SCHEDULE 20

Regulation 241

Herbal medicinal products specified for the purposes of regulation 241

**PART 1**

<i>Botanical Source</i>	<i>Common Name</i>
Apocynum cannabinum	Canadian hemp
Areca catechu	Areca
Artemisia cina	Santonica
Brayera anthelmintica	Kousso
Catha edulis	Catha
Chenopodium ambrosioides var anthelminticum	Chenopodium
Crotalaria berberoana	Crotalaria fulva
Crotalaria spectabilis	Crotalaria spect.
Cucurbita maxima	Cucurbita
Delphinium staphisagria	Stavesacre seeds
Dryopteris filix-mas	Male fern
Duboisia leichardtii	Duboisia
Duboisia myoporoides	
Ecballium elaterium	Elaterium
Embelia ribes	Embelia
Embelia robusta	
Erysimum canescens	Erysimum

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Holarrhena antidysenterica	Holarrhena
Juniperus sabina	Savin
Mallotus philippinensis	Kamala
Pausinystalia yohimbe	Yohimbe bark
Punica granatum	Pomegranate bark
Rhus radicans	Poison ivy
Scopolia carniolica	Scopolia
Scopolia japonica	
Strophanthus courmonti	Strophanthus
Strophanthus emini	
Strophanthus gratus	
Strophanthus hispidus	
Strophanthus kombe	
Strophanthus nicholsoni	
Strophanthus sarmentosus	
Ulmus fulva	Slippery elm bark (whole or unpowdered)
Ulmus rubra	
Viscum album	Mistletoe berry

## PART 2

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<b>Substance</b>		
<b>Botanical Source</b>	<b>Common Name</b>	<b>Maximum dose and Percentage maximum daily dose</b>
Aconitum balfourni	Aconite	1.3 per cent
Aconitum chasmanthum		
Aconitum deinorrhizum		
Aconitum lycoctonum		
Aconitum napellus		
Aconitum spicatum		
Aconitum stoerkianum		
Aconitum uncinatum var japonicum		
Adonis vernalis	Adonis vernalis	100 mg (MD) 300mg (MDD)
Aspidosperma quebrachoblanco	Quebracho	50 mg (MD) 150 mg (MDD)
Atropa acuminata	Belladonna herb,	In the form of
Atropa belladonna	belladonna root	belladonna herb: 50 mg (MD) 150 mg (MDD); In the form of belladonna root:



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		30 mg (MD) 90 mg (MDD)	
Chelidonium majus	Celandine	2 g (MD) 6 g (MDD)	
Cinchona calisaya	Cinchona bark	250 mg (MD)	
Cinchona ledgerana		750 mg (MDD)	
Cinchona micrantha			
Cinchona officinalis			
Cinchona succirubra			
Colchicum autumnale	Colchicum corm	100 mg (MD) 300 mg (MDD)	
Conium maculatum	Conium fruits, conium leaf		7.0 per cent
Convallaria majalis	Convallaria	150 mg (MD) 450 mg (MDD)	
Datura innoxia	Stramonium	50 mg (MD)	
Datura stramonium		150 mg (MDD)	
Ephedra distachya	Ephedra	600 mg (MD)	
Ephedra equisetina		1800 mg (MDD)	
Ephedra gerardiana			
Ephedra intermedia			
Ephedra sinica			
Gelsemium sempervirens	Gelsemium	25 mg (MD) 75 mg (MDD)	
Hyoscyamus albus	Hyoscyamus	100mg (MD)	
Hyoscyamus muticus		300 mg (MDD)	
Hyoscyamus niger			
Lobelia inflata	Lobelia	200 mg (MD) 600 mg (MDD)	
Pilocarpus jaborandi	Jaborandi		5.0 per cent
Pilocarpus microphyllus			
Rhus toxicodendron	Poison oak		10.0 per cent
Senecio jacobaea	Ragwort		10.0 per cent

## SCHEDULE 21

Regulation 242

Medicinal products at high dilutions

**PART 1**

Dilutions of unit preparations diluted to at least one part in a thousand (3x)

Agaricus muscarius

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Ailanthus glandulosa  
Apocynum cannabinum  
Aurum Iodatum  
Belladonna  
Bismuth Subgallate  
Bryonia alba dioica  
Calcium Fluoride  
Cantharis  
Cerium oxalicum  
Chelidonium majus  
Chenopodium oil  
Cina  
Colocynthis  
Convallaria majalis  
Gelsemium sempervirens  
Hyoscyamus niger  
Lycopodium  
Manganese acetate  
Ranunculus bulbosus  
Terebinthinae oleum

## PART 2

Dilutions of unit preparations diluted to at least one part in a million (6x)

Adonis vernalis  
Agaricus bulbosus  
Agaricus muscarius  
Agnus castus  
Ailanthus glandulosa  
Alum  
Amethyst  
Ammonium Iodide  
Amygdalae amarae  
Apatite  
Apocynum androsaemifolium  
Apocynum cannabinum  
Argentite  
Argentum Chloride  
Argentum Iodide  
Arnica

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Artemisia cina  
Aspidium filix-mas  
Aspidium anthelmintica  
Aurum Sulphide  
Balsamum copivae  
Balsamum peruvianum  
Barium Citrate  
Barium Citrate  
Barium Sulphate  
Bismuth Metal  
Bismuth Subgallate  
Bismuth Subnitrate  
Boletus laricis  
Bovista  
Cade Oil  
Calcium Fluoride  
Cantharis  
Carduus marianus  
Cedar Wood Oil  
Cerium Oxalicum  
Chalcocite  
Chalcopyrite  
Chelidonium majus  
Chenopodium Oil  
Colocynthis  
Convallaria majalis  
Copper Silicate, Nat.  
Crotalus horridus  
Cucurbita  
Cucumis melo  
Datura Stramonium  
Derris  
Diamond  
Ephedra vulgaris  
Ferric Acetate  
Ferrous Iodide  
Ferrous Oxalate  
Ferrous Sulphide  
Formic Acid  
Gall

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Gelsemium sempervirens  
Gneiss  
Granatum ( Pomegranate) Bark  
Harmamelis Virginiana  
Hepar Sulfuris  
Hyoscyamus niger  
Iris florentine  
Jaborandi  
Juniperus sabina  
Kalinite  
Lachmanthus tinctoria  
Lapis Albus  
Lycopodium  
Magnesium  
Magnesium Acetate  
Magnesium Chloride  
Magnetite  
Manganese Acetate  
Nicotiana tabacum  
Nicotiana tabacum oil  
Oleander  
Opuntia vulgaris  
Oxalic Acid  
Petroleum  
Phellandrium aquaticum  
Pix Liquida  
Platinum  
Platinum Chloride  
Potassium Hydroxide  
Potassium Silicate  
Pyrethrum  
Pyrolusite  
Ranunculus acris  
Ranunculus bulbosus  
Ranunculus flammula  
Ranunculus repens  
Ranunculus sceleratus  
Rhodium Oxynitrate  
Rhododendron chrysanthemum  
Rhus toxicodendron

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Salicylic Acid  
Scrophularia aquatica  
Sodium Aluminium Chloride  
Sodium Auro-chloride  
Sodium Hypochlorite  
Sodium Nitrate  
Squill  
Stannum Metal  
Staphisagria  
Sulphur Iodide  
Tamus communis  
Tannic Acid  
Terebinthinae Oleum  
Theridion  
Thuja occidentalis  
Topaz  
Uric Acid  
Zinc Hypophosphite  
Zinc Isovalerate

### **PART 3**

Dilutions of unit preparations diluted to at least one part in ten (1x)

Abies excelsa  
Abies nigra  
Abies nobilis  
Acalpha indica  
Agate  
Alisma plantago Aq.  
Alstonia scholaris  
Aluminium  
Amber (Succinum)  
Ambra grisea  
Ammonium Phosphate  
Angostura vera  
Anthoxanthum  
Apis mellifera  
Aqua Marina  
Aqua Mellis  
Aralia racemosa

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Aranea diadema  
Arum maculatum  
Arum triphyllum  
Asarum  
Asperula odorata  
Astacus fluviatillis  
Auric Chloride  
Badiaga  
Beech (fagus sylvestris)  
Bellis perennis  
Berberis aquifolium  
Borago officinalis  
Butyric Acid  
Calcium Metal  
Calcium Chloride  
Calcium Oxide  
Calcium Sulphate  
Castoreum  
Ceanothus americanus  
Cedron  
Cerato (Ceratostigma Willmottiana)  
Cherry Plum (Prunus cerasifera)  
Chestnut, Red and Sweet  
Cholesterinum  
Chrysolite  
Cistus canadensis  
Clematis erecta  
Conchae vera  
Conchiolinum  
Corallium Rubrum  
Crab Apple  
Crocus sativus  
Erbium  
Erigeron Canadense  
Fuligo  
Genista tinctoria  
Geum urbanum  
Glycogen  
Gnaphalium leontopodium  
Gold

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Gorse (*Ulex europaeus*)  
Graphites  
Gratiola officinalis  
Gymnocladus (American Coffee Tree)  
Haematoxylon Campechianum  
Hecla Lava (Ash from Mount Hecla)  
Hedeoma pulegioides  
Hedra helix  
Heliotrope  
Heracleum spondylium  
Herniaria  
Hornbeam (*Carpinus betulus*)  
Iberis amara  
Impatiens  
Iris germanica  
Iris pseudacorus  
Jacaranda procera  
Jatropha curcas  
Juncus communis  
Justica adhatoda  
Lamium album  
Laurus nobilis oil  
Laurocerasus  
Ledum palustre  
Lilium tigrinum  
Lonicera caprifolium  
Lysimachia vulgaris  
Magnesium Phosphate  
Magnesite  
Magnolia  
Marum verum  
Melilotus officinalis  
Menispermum canadense  
Pephtis putorius  
Mercurialis perennis  
Mimulus (*Mimullis guttatus*)  
Moschus  
Myrica gale  
Myrtus communis  
Ocimum basilicum

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Olive  
Oxalis acetosella  
Pangamic Acid  
Paullinia cupana  
Penthorum sedoides  
Pollen (mixed)  
Polygonatum multiflorum  
Polygonum aviculare  
Polypodium vulgare  
Primula vulgaris  
Prunella vulgaris  
Ptellea trifoliata  
Ratanhia  
Robinia pseudoacacia  
Rubia tinctorum  
Rumex acetosella  
Sal Marina  
Sarcolactic Acid  
Sarracenia purpurea  
Scleranthus (Scleranthus annuus)  
Silica  
Silphium laciniatum  
Sodium Benzoate  
Spongia marina  
Star of Bethlehem (Ornithogalum umbellatum)  
Ulmus campestris  
Vine  
Walnut (juglerus regia)  
Water Violet (Hottonia palustris)  
Wild Oat  
Wild Rose

## **PART 4**

Dilutions of unit preparations diluted to at least one part in ten (1x) for external use

Adonis vernalis  
Agricus bulbosus  
Agricus muscarius  
Agnus castus  
Allanthus glandulosa



**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Alum  
Amethyst  
Ammonium Iodide  
Amygdalae amarae  
Apatite  
Apocynum androsaemifolium  
Apocynum cannabinum  
Argentite  
Argentum Chloride  
Argentum Iodide  
Artemisia cina  
Aspidium filix-mas  
Aspidium anthelmintica  
Aurum Sulphide  
Balsamum copaivae  
Balsamum peruvianum  
Barium Citrate  
Barium Sulphate  
Bismuth Metal  
Bismuth Subgallate  
Bismuth Subnitrate  
Boletus laricis  
Bovista  
Cade Oil  
Calcium Fluoride  
Carduus marianus  
Cedar Wood Oil  
Cerium Oxalicum  
Chalcocite  
Chalcopyrite  
Chelidonium majus  
Chenopodium Oil  
Colocynthis  
Convallaria majalis  
Copper Silicate, Nat  
Crotalus horridus  
Cucurbita  
Cucumis melo  
Datura stramonium  
Derris

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Diamond  
Ephedra vulgaris  
Ferric Acetate  
Ferrous Iodide  
Ferrous Oxalate  
Ferrous Sulphide  
Formic Acid  
Gall  
Gelsemium sempervirens  
Gneiss  
Hamamelis virginiana  
Hepar Sulfuris  
Hyoscyamus niger  
Iris florentine  
Jaborandi  
Juniperus sabina  
Kaolinite  
Lachmanthus tinctoria  
Lapis Albus  
Lycopodium  
Magnesium  
Magnesium Acetate  
Magnesium Chloride  
Magnetite  
Manganese Acetate  
Nicotiana tabacum  
Nicotiana tabacum oil  
Oleander  
Opuntia vulgaris  
Oxalic Acid  
Petroleum  
Phellandrium aquaticum  
Pix Liquida  
Platinum  
Platinum Chloride  
Potassium Hydroxide  
Potassium Silicate  
Pyrethrum  
Pyrolusite  
Ranunculus acris

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Ranunculus bulbosus  
Ranunculus flammula  
Ranunculus repens  
Ranunculus scelerantus  
Rhodium Oxynitrate  
Rhododendron chrysanthemum  
Rhus toxicodendron  
Salicylic Acid  
Scrophularia aquatica  
Sodium Aluminium Chloride  
Sodium Auro-chloride  
Sodium Hypochlorite  
Sodium Nitrate  
Squill  
Stannum Metal  
Sulphur Iodide  
Tannic Acid  
Terebinthinae Oleum  
Topaz  
Uric Acid  
Zinc Hypophosphite  
Zinc Isovalerate

## SCHEDULE 22

Regulation 249

### Classes of person for the purposes of regulation 249

Doctors

Dentists

Persons lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business within the meaning of section 69 of the Medicines Act 1968.

Authorities or persons carrying on the business of—

- (a) an independent hospital, independent clinic or independent medical agency,
- (b) a hospital or health centre which is not an independent hospital or independent clinic, or
- (c) in Northern Ireland, a nursing home.

Holders of wholesale dealer's licences or persons to whom the restrictions imposed by regulation 18(1) do not apply by virtue of an exemption in these Regulations.

Ministers of the Crown and Government departments.

Scottish Ministers.

Welsh Ministers.

A Northern Ireland Minister.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

An NHS trust.

An NHS foundation trust.

[<sup>F311</sup>A local authority in the exercise of public health functions (within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F311** Words in Sch. 22 inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(8)(a)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

[<sup>F312</sup>Public Health England.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F312** Words in Sch. 22 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)** and words in Sch. 22 inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **8(2)**

[<sup>F312</sup>Public Health Agency.]

The Common Services Agency.

A health authority or a special health authority.

<sup>F313</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F313** Words in Sch. 22 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(8)(b)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

A person other than an excepted person who carries on a business consisting (wholly or partly) of supplying medicinal products in circumstances corresponding to retail sale, or of administering such products, pursuant to an arrangement made with—

- (a) an NHS trust or an NHS foundation trust;
- (b) the Common Services Agency;

[<sup>F314</sup>(ba) a clinical commissioning group; ]

[<sup>F314</sup>(bb) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;]

[<sup>F315</sup>(bc) a local authority;

(bd) Public Health England;

(be) Public Health Agency; or]

(c) a health authority or a special health authority; <sup>F316</sup>...

<sup>F316</sup>(d) .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F314** Words in Sch. 22 inserted (1.4.2013) by [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(8)(c)(i)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)
- F315** Words in Sch. 22 substituted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **8(3)** and words in Sch. 22 substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **8(3)**
- F316** Words in Sch. 22 omitted (1.4.2013) by virtue of [The National Treatment Agency \(Abolition\) and the Health and Social Care Act 2012 \(Consequential, Transitional and Saving Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/235\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 176(8)(c)(ii)** (with Sch. 3 para. 28)

A person other than an excepted person who carries on a business consisting (wholly or partly) of the supply or administration of medicinal products for the purpose of assisting the provision of health care by or on behalf of, or under arrangements made by—

- (a) a police force in England, Wales or Scotland;
- (b) the Police Service of Northern Ireland;
- (c) a prison service; <sup>F317</sup> ...
- <sup>F318</sup>(d) Her Majesty's Forces; or
- (e) a contractor carrying out helicopter search and rescue operations on behalf of the Maritime and Coastguard Agency.]

### Textual Amendments

- F317** Word in Sch. 22 omitted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)** and word in Sch. 22 omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **8(4)**
- F318** Words in Sch. 22 substituted (E.W.S.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/323\)](#), regs. 1, **8(5)** and words in Sch. 22 substituted (N.I.) (1.4.2015) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2015 \(S.R. 2015/178\)](#), regs. 1, **8(5)**

In this Schedule “excepted person” means—

- (a) a doctor or dentist; or
- (b) a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business within the meaning of section 69 of the Medicines Act 1968.

## SCHEDULE 23

Regulation 253

### Particulars in pharmacy records

1. Paragraph 2 applies, subject to paragraph 3, where the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine is—

- (a) in pursuance of a prescription given by—
  - (i) a doctor or dentist,
  - (ii) a supplementary prescriber,
  - (iii) a community practitioner nurse prescriber,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iv) a nurse independent prescriber,
- [<sup>F319</sup>(v) an optometrist independent prescriber,
- (vi) a pharmacist independent prescriber,
- (vii) a podiatrist independent prescriber,
- (viii) a physiotherapist independent prescriber, <sup>F320</sup>...
- (ix) a therapeutic radiographer independent prescriber; or]
- [<sup>F321</sup>(x) a paramedic independent prescriber; or]
- (b) under regulation 224 (emergency sale etc by pharmacist: prescriber unable to provide prescription).

#### Textual Amendments

- F319** Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(v)-(ix) substituted for Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(v)(vi) (E.W.S.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/186\)](#), regs. 1, 17 and Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(v)-(ix) substituted for Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(v)(vi) (N.I.) (1.4.2016) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2016 \(S.R. 2016/407\)](#), regs. 1, 17
- F320** Word in Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(viii) omitted (1.4.2018) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **13(2)(a)** and word in Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(viii) omitted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **13(2)(a)**
- F321** Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(x) inserted (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.I. 2018/199\)](#), regs. 1, **13(2)(b)** and Sch. 23 para. 1(a)(x) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2018) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) Regulations 2018 \(S.R. 2018/64\)](#), regs. 1, **13(2)(b)**

2. In such a case, the particulars referred to in regulation 253(2)(a) are—
  - (a) the date on which the prescription only medicine was sold or supplied;
  - (b) the name, quantity and, except where it is apparent from the name, the pharmaceutical form and strength of the prescription only medicine sold or supplied;
  - (c) the name and address of the person giving the prescription;
  - (d) the name and address of the person for whom the prescription only medicine was prescribed;
  - (e) the date on the prescription; and
  - (f) in relation to the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine under regulation 224 the date on which the prescription relating to that sale or supply is received.
3. Where the sale or supply is in pursuance of a repeatable prescription and is not the first sale or supply in pursuance of that prescription, the particulars referred to in regulation 253(2)(a) are either—
  - (a) the date on which the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied and a reference to the entry in the record referred to in regulation 253(1) which was made in respect of the first sale or supply in pursuance of that prescription and which contains the particulars specified in paragraph 2; or
  - (b) the particulars specified in paragraph 2.
4. Where the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine is a sale or supply under regulation 225 (emergency sale etc by pharmacist: at patient's request), the particulars referred to in regulation 253(2)(a) are—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the date on which the prescription only medicine was sold or supplied;
  - (b) the name, quantity and, except where it is apparent from the name, the pharmaceutical form and strength of the prescription only medicine sold or supplied;
  - (c) the name and address of the person requiring the prescription only medicine; and
  - (d) the nature of the emergency.
5. Paragraph 6 applies where—
- (a) the sale or supply of a prescription only medicine is by way of wholesale dealing and no order or invoice or copy of the order or invoice has been retained under regulation 224 or 225; or
  - (b) the sale or supply is one to which regulation 214(1) does not apply by reason of an exemption other than that in regulation 224 or 225.
6. In such a case, the particulars referred to in regulation 253(2)(a) are—
- (a) the date on which the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied;
  - (b) the name, quantity and, except where it is apparent from the name, the pharmaceutical form and strength of the prescription only medicine sold or supplied;
  - (c) the name and address and trade, business or profession of the person to whom the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied; and
  - (d) the purpose for which the prescription only medicine is sold or supplied.

## SCHEDULE 24

Regulation 257

### Packaging information requirements

## PART 1

### Outer and immediate packaging

1. The name of the medicinal product.
2. The strength and pharmaceutical form of the product.
3. Where appropriate, whether the product is intended for babies, children or adults.
4. Where the product contains up to three active substances, the common name of each active substance.
5. A statement of the active substances in the product, expressed qualitatively and quantitatively per dosage unit or according to the form of administration for a given volume or weight, using their common names.
6. The pharmaceutical form and the contents by weight, by volume or by number of doses of the product.
7. A list of—
  - (a) where the product is injectable or is a topical or eye preparation, all excipients; or
  - (b) in any other case, those excipients known to have a recognized action or effect and included in the guidance published pursuant to Article 65 of the 2001 Directive.
8. The method of administration of the product and if necessary the route of administration.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

9. Where appropriate, space for the prescribed dose to be indicated.
10. A warning that the product must be stored out of the reach and sight of children.
11. Any special warning applicable to the product.
12. The product's expiry date (month and year), in clear terms.
13. Any special storage precautions relating to the product.
14. Any special precautions relating to the disposal of an unused product or part of a product, or waste derived from the product, and reference to any appropriate collection system in place.
15. The name and address of the holder of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration relating to the product and, where applicable, the name of the holder's representative.
16. The number of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration for placing the medicinal product on the market.
17. The manufacturer's batch number.
18. In the case of a product that is not a prescription only medicine, instructions for use.

## **PART 2**

### **Immediate packaging: blister packs**

19. The name of the medicinal product.
20. The strength and pharmaceutical form of the product.
21. Where appropriate, whether the product is intended for babies, children or adults.
22. Where the product contains up to three active substances, the common name of each active substance.
23. The name of the holder of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration relating to the product.
24. The product's expiry date (month and year), in clear terms.
25. The manufacturer's batch number.

## **PART 3**

### **Immediate packaging: small packages**

26. The name of the medicinal product.
27. The strength and pharmaceutical form of the product.
28. Where appropriate, whether the product is intended for babies, children or adults.
29. Where the product contains up to three active substances, the common name of each active substance.
30. The method of administration of the product and if necessary the route of administration.
31. The product's expiry date (month and year), in clear terms.
32. The manufacturer's batch number.



33. The contents of the packaging by weight, by volume or by unit.

## SCHEDULE 25

Regulation 258

### Packaging requirements: specific provisions

## PART 1

### Medicines on prescription

1. Where the product is to be administered to a particular individual, the name of that individual.
2. The name and address of the person who sells or supplies the product.
3. The date on which the product is sold or supplied.
4. Unless paragraph 5, applies, such of the following particulars as the appropriate practitioner who prescribed the product may specify—
  - (a) the name of the product or its common name;
  - (b) directions for use of the product; and
  - (c) precautions relating to the use of the product.
5. This paragraph applies if the pharmacist, in the exercise of professional skill and judgement, is of the opinion that the inclusion of one or more of the particulars mentioned in paragraph 4 is inappropriate.
6. Where paragraph 5 applies, the pharmacist may include such particulars, of the same kind as those mentioned in paragraph 4, as the pharmacist thinks appropriate.

## PART 2

### Transport, delivery and storage

7. Any special requirements for the storage and handling of the product.
8. The expiry date of the product.
9. The manufacturer's batch number.

## PART 3

### Pharmacy and prescription only medicines

10. Paragraph 11 applies if a pharmacy medicine is—
  - (a) sold by retail;
  - (b) supplied in circumstances corresponding to retail sale;
  - (c) in the possession of a person for the purpose of sale or supply as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b), or
  - (d) distributed by way of wholesale dealing.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**11.** Where this paragraph applies, the capital letter “P” within a rectangle within which there is to be no other matter of any kind.

**12.** Paragraph 13 applies if a prescription only medicine is—

- (a) sold by retail;
- (b) supplied in circumstances corresponding to retail sale;
- (c) in the possession of a person for the purpose of sale or supply as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b); or
- (d) distributed by way of wholesale dealing.

**13.** Where this paragraph applies, the capital letters “POM” within a rectangle within which there is to be no other matter of any kind.

## PART 4

### Medicines containing paracetamol

**14.** If the product contains paracetamol, except where the name of the product includes the word “paracetamol” and appears on the outer and immediate packaging, the words “Contains paracetamol”.

**15.** If the product contains paracetamol the words “Do not take more medicine than the label tells you to. If you do not get better, talk to your doctor”, which must appear adjacent to either the directions for use or the recommended dosage.

**16.** If the product contains paracetamol, unless the product is wholly or mainly intended for children twelve years old or younger, the words “Do not take anything else containing paracetamol while taking this medicine” and—

- (a) if a package leaflet accompanying the product includes the words in quotation marks in paragraph 16 of Schedule 27 (package leaflets), the words “Talk to a doctor at once if you take too much of this medicine, even if you feel well”; or
- (b) if no package leaflet accompanies the product or the package leaflet does not include those words, the words “Talk to a doctor at once if you take too much of this medicine, even if you feel well. This is because too much paracetamol can cause delayed, serious liver damage”.

**17.** If the product contains paracetamol and is wholly or mainly intended for children twelve years old or younger, the words “Do not give anything else containing paracetamol while giving this medicine” and—

- (a) if a package leaflet accompanying the product includes the words in quotation marks in paragraph 17 of Schedule 27 (package leaflets), the words “Talk to a doctor at once if your child takes too much of this medicine, even if they seem well”; or
- (b) if no package leaflet accompanies the product or the package leaflet does not include those words, the words “Talk to a doctor at once if your child takes too much of this medicine, even if they seem well. This is because too much paracetamol can cause delayed, serious liver damage”.

**18.** If the product is required by this Part of this Schedule to show the words set out in paragraphs 14, 16 or 17, those words must appear in a prominent position.

## SCHEDULE 26

Regulations 3(13) and 4(5)

### Packaging requirements: special provisions

#### **PART 1**

##### Supply by doctors, dentists, nurses and midwives

1. Where the product is to be administered to a particular individual, the name of that individual.
2. The name and address of the person who sells or supplies the product.
3. The date on which the product is sold or supplied.
4. Such of the following particulars as the person under whose responsibility the product is sold or supplied considers appropriate—
  - (a) the name of the product or its common name;
  - (b) directions for use of the product; and
  - (c) precautions relating to the use of the product.

#### **PART 2**

##### Pharmacy exceptions

5. Where the product is to be administered to a particular individual, the name of that individual.
6. The name and address of the person who sells or supplies the product.
7. The date on which the product is sold or supplied.
8. Where the product is prescribed by an appropriate practitioner, such of the following particulars as the appropriate practitioner who prescribed the product may specify, unless paragraph 9 applies —
  - (a) the name of the product or its common name;
  - (b) directions for use of the product; and
  - (c) precautions relating to the use of the product.
9. This paragraph applies if a pharmacist, in the exercise of professional skill and judgement, is of the opinion that the inclusion of one or more of the particulars specified in paragraph 8 by the appropriate practitioner who prescribed the product is inappropriate.
10. Where paragraph 9 applies, the pharmacist may include such particulars, of the same kind as those mentioned in paragraph 8, as the pharmacist thinks appropriate.
11. Where the product is not prescribed by an appropriate practitioner, directions for use of the product, but these may be omitted in circumstances where section 10(3) of the Medicines Act 1968 applies.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 27

Regulation 260

## Package leaflets

**PART 1**

## General requirements

1. The name of the medicinal product.
2. The strength and pharmaceutical form of the product.
3. Where appropriate, whether the product is intended for babies, children or adults.
4. Where the product contains up to three active substances, the common name of each active substance.
5. The pharmaco-therapeutic group, or type of activity, of the product, in terms easily comprehensible for the patient.
6. The product's therapeutic indications.
7. A list of—
  - (a) contra-indications;
  - (b) appropriate precautions for use;
  - (c) interactions with other medicinal products which may affect the action of the product;
  - (d) interactions with other substances, including alcohol, tobacco and foodstuffs, which may affect the action of the product; and
  - (e) special warnings, if any, relating to the product.
8. The list mentioned in paragraph 7 must—
  - (a) take into account the special requirements of particular categories of users (including, in particular, children, pregnant or breastfeeding women, the elderly and persons with specific pathological conditions);
  - (b) mention, if appropriate, possible effects on the ability to drive vehicles or to operate machinery; and
  - (c) list any excipients—
    - (i) if knowledge of the excipients is important for the safe and effective use of the product, and
    - (ii) the excipients are included in the guidance published pursuant to Article 65 of the 2001 Directive.
9. Instructions for proper use of the product including in particular—
  - (a) the dosage;
  - (b) the method and, if necessary, route of administration;
  - (c) the frequency of administration (including, if necessary, specifying times at which the product may or must be administered);
  - (d) the duration of treatment if this is to be limited;
  - (e) symptoms of an overdose and the action, if any, to be taken in case of an overdose;
  - (f) what to do if one or more doses have not been taken;
  - (g) an indication, if necessary, of the risk of withdrawal effects; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (h) a specific recommendation to consult a doctor or pharmacist, as appropriate, for further explanation of the use of the product.
10. A description of the adverse reactions which may occur in normal use of the medicinal product and, if necessary, the action to be taken in such a case.
11. A reference to the expiry date printed on the packaging of the product with—
- (a) a warning against using the product after that date;
  - (b) if appropriate, details of special storage precautions to be taken;
  - (c) if necessary, a warning concerning visible signs of deterioration;
  - (d) the full qualitative composition (in active substances and excipients), and the quantitative composition in active substances, using common names, of each presentation of the medicinal product;
  - (e) for each presentation of the product, the pharmaceutical form and content in weight, volume or units of dosage;
  - (f) the name and address of the holder of the marketing authorisation, Article 126a authorisation or traditional herbal registration relating to the product and, if applicable, the name of the holder's appointed representative; and
  - (g) the name and address of the manufacturer of the product.
12. Where the product is authorised under different names in different member States in accordance with Articles 28 to 39 of the 2001 Directive, a list of the names authorised in each member State.
13. For medicinal products included in the list referred to in Article 23 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004, the statement: “This medicinal product is subject to additional <sup>F322</sup>... monitoring”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F322** Word in Sch. 27 para. 13 omitted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **28(2)** and word in Sch. 27 para. 13 omitted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by virtue of [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **28(2)**

<sup>F323</sup>14. A standardised text relating to adverse event reporting in accordance with the third subparagraph of Article 59(1) of the 2001 Directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F323** Sch. 27 para. 14 substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), regs. 1, **28(3)** and Sch. 27 para. 14 substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), regs. 1(1), **28(3)**

15. The date on which the package leaflet was last revised.

## PART 2

### Paracetamol

16. If a medicinal product contains paracetamol, unless the product is wholly or mainly intended for children twelve years old or younger, the words “Talk to a doctor at once if you take too much

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

of this medicine even if you feel well. This is because too much paracetamol can cause delayed, serious liver damage”.

17. If a medicinal product contains paracetamol and is wholly or mainly intended for children twelve years old or younger, the words “Talk to a doctor at once if your child takes too much of this medicine even if they seem well. This is because too much paracetamol can cause delayed, serious liver damage”.

## SCHEDULE 28

Regulation 264

### Labelling requirements for registrable homoeopathic medicinal products

## PART 1

### Outer and immediate packaging

1. The scientific name of the stock or stocks (which may be supplemented by an invented name if the product contains two or more stocks), and the degree of dilution, making use of the symbols of the European Pharmacopoeia or, in the absence of an entry in the European Pharmacopoeia, of the British Pharmacopoeia.
2. The name and address of the holder of the certificate of registration and, if different, the manufacturer.
3. The method and, if necessary, route of administration.
4. The product's expiry date (month and year), in clear terms.
5. The product's pharmaceutical form.
6. The contents of the presentation, specified by weight, volume or number of doses.
7. Special storage precautions, if any.
8. A special warning, if necessary in relation to the product.
9. The manufacturer's batch number.
10. The number of the certificate of registration.
11. The words “homoeopathic medicinal product without therapeutic indications”.
12. A warning advising the user to consult a doctor if symptoms persist.

## PART 2

### Blister packs etc contained in outer packaging

13. The scientific name of the stock or stocks (which may be supplemented by an invented name if the product contains two or more stocks), and the degree of dilution, making use of the symbols of the European Pharmacopoeia or, in the absence of an entry in the European Pharmacopoeia, of the British Pharmacopoeia.
14. The name and address of the holder of the certificate of registration.
15. The product's expiry date (month and year), in clear terms.

16. The manufacturer's batch number.
17. The words “homoeopathic medicinal product without therapeutic indications”.

## **PART 3**

### Small immediate packaging

18. The scientific name of the stock or stocks (which may be supplemented by an invented name if the product contains two or more stocks), and the degree of dilution, making use of the symbols of the European Pharmacopoeia or, in the absence of an entry in the European Pharmacopoeia, of the British Pharmacopoeia.
19. The name and address of the holder of the certificate of registration.
20. The method and, if necessary, route of administration.
21. The product's expiry date (month and year), in clear terms.
22. The contents of the presentation, specified by weight, volume or number of doses.
23. The manufacturer's batch number.
24. The words “homoeopathic medicinal product without therapeutic indications”.

## SCHEDULE 29

Regulation 265

### Labelling of traditional herbal medicinal products

## **PART 1**

### Traditional herbal medicinal products: general

1. A statement to the effect that the product is a traditional herbal medicinal product, for use for specific purposes by reason of long-standing use.
2. A statement that the user should consult a doctor or other health care practitioner if symptoms persist during use of the medicinal product, or if adverse effects not mentioned on the package or package leaflet occur.

## **PART 2**

### Traditional herbal medicinal products not subject to general sale

3. Subject to the provisions of regulation 265(2), paragraph 4 applies where a traditional herbal medicinal product that is a pharmacy medicine is—
  - (a) sold by retail;
  - (b) supplied in circumstances corresponding to retail sale;
  - (c) in the possession of a person for the purpose of sale or supply as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b); or
  - (d) distributed by way of wholesale dealing.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

4. Where this paragraph applies, the outer packaging and the immediate packaging of the product must be labelled to show the capital letter “P” within a rectangle, within which there is to be no other matter of any kind.

## SCHEDULE 30

Regulations 294, 295 and 297

### Particulars for advertisements to persons qualified to prescribe or supply

1. The number of the marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation for the medicinal product.

2. The name and address of the holder of the marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation for the medicinal product or the business name and address of the part of the holder's business that is responsible for its sale or supply.

3. The classification of the medicinal product as—

- (a) a product that is subject to general sale;
- (b) a prescription only medicine; or
- (c) a pharmacy medicine.

4. The name of the medicinal product.

5. A list of the active ingredients of the medicinal product that uses their common names and is placed immediately adjacent to the most prominent display of the name of the product.

6. One or more of the indications for the medicinal product consistent with the terms of the marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation for the product.

7. <sup>[F324]</sup>The entries or a] succinct statement of the entries (if any) in the summary of the product characteristics relating to—

- (a) adverse reactions, precautions and relevant contra-indications;
- (b) dosage and method of use so far as relevant to the indications shown in the advertisement, and
- (c) where this is not obvious, method of administration so far as relevant to those indications.

#### Textual Amendments

**F324** Words in [Sch. 30 para. 7](#) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1878\)](#), [regs. 1, 29](#) and words in [Sch. 30 para. 7](#) substituted (N.I.) (1.10.2014) by [The Human Medicines \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2014 \(S.R. 2014/324\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 29](#)

8. The cost excluding value added tax of—

- (a) a specified package of the medicinal product; or
- (b) a specified quantity or recommended daily dose of the medicinal product calculated by reference to a specified package of the medicinal product.

This paragraph does not apply to an advertisement inserted in a publication that is printed in the United Kingdom but that has a circulation outside the United Kingdom of more than 15 per cent of its total circulation.



- 9.—(1) The particulars specified in paragraph 7 must be printed in a clear and legible manner.
- (2) Those particulars must be placed in such a position in the advertisement that their relationship to the claims and indications for the product can readily be appreciated by the reader.

## SCHEDULE 31

Regulation 328(3)

### Sampling

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C11** Sch. 31 applied (with modifications) by The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1031), reg 47(1), Sch. 9 (as substituted (14.8.2012) by S.I. 2012/1916, reg. 1(2), Sch. 34 paras. 57(b), 64 (with Sch. 32))

### *Introductory*

- 1.—(1) This Schedule has effect where a person authorised by an enforcement authority (in this Schedule referred to as a “sampling officer”) obtains a sample of a substance or article—
- (a) in order to determine whether there has been a contravention of any provision of these Regulations which the enforcement authority (“the relevant enforcement authority”) must or may enforce by virtue of regulations 323 and 324; or
  - (b) otherwise for a purpose connected with the performance of the relevant enforcement authority of its functions under these Regulations.
- (2) This Schedule has effect whether the sample is obtained by purchase or in exercise of a power conferred by regulation 327.
- (3) In this Schedule “medicines control laboratory” means a laboratory that is—
- (a) designated by the licensing authority in accordance with Article 111(1) of the 2001 Directive for the purpose of the analysis of samples of one or more types of medicinal product; and
  - (b) is so designated in relation to a particular medicinal product that is submitted to it for analysis.

### *Division of sample*

2. The sampling officer must as soon as practicable—
- (a) divide the sample into three parts;
  - (b) mark each part;
  - (c) seal or fasten each part; and
  - (d) deal with the parts in accordance with paragraphs 3 to 10.
3. If the sample was purchased by the sampling officer otherwise than from a vending machine the officer must supply one part of the sample to the seller.
4. If the sampling officer obtained the sample from a vending machine—
- (a) if a person's name and an address in the United Kingdom are stated on the machine as being the name and address of the owner of the machine, the sampling officer must supply one part of the sample to that person; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in any other case, the sampling officer must supply one part of the sample to the occupier of the premises on which the machine stands or to which it is affixed.
5. If the sample is a sample of goods consigned from outside the United Kingdom, and was taken by the sampling officer before delivery to the consignee, the sampling officer must supply one part of the sample to the consignee.
6. If, in a case not falling within any of paragraphs 3 to 5 of this Schedule, the sample was obtained by the sampling officer at the request or with the consent of a purchaser, the sampling officer must supply one part of the sample to the seller.
7. If, in a case not falling within any of paragraphs 3 to 6 of this Schedule, the sample was taken in transit, the sampling officer must supply one part of the sample to the consignor.
8. In any case not falling within any of paragraphs 3 to 7 of this Schedule, the sampling officer must supply one part of the sample to the person appearing to the sampling officer to be the owner of the substance or article from which the sample was taken.
9. In every case falling within any of paragraphs 3 to 8 of this Schedule, the sampling officer must inform the person to whom the part of the sample in question is supplied that the sample has been obtained for the purpose of analysis or other examination.
10. Unless the sampling officer decides not to submit the sample for analysis or other examination the sampling officer must—
- (a) retain one of the two remaining parts for future comparison; and
  - (b) submit the other part for analysis or examination in accordance with the following provisions of this Schedule.
11. If a sample consists of substances or articles in unopened containers, the sampling officer may divide the sample into parts by dividing the containers into three lots without opening them if it appears to the sampling officer that—
- (a) it is not reasonably practicable to open the containers and divide the contents into parts; or
  - (b) opening the containers and dividing the contents into parts might affect the composition or impede the analysis or other examination of the contents.
12. Regulation 343(1)(a) to (d) has effect in relation to supplying a part of a sample in pursuance of the preceding paragraphs as it has effect in relation to the service of a document.
13. If after reasonable inquiry the sampling officer is unable to ascertain the name of a person to whom, or the address at which, a part of a sample should be supplied, the sampling officer may retain that part of the sample.

#### *Notice to person named on container*

- 14.—(1) This paragraph applies where the sampling officer has obtained a sample of a substance or article and it appears to the sampling officer that—
- (a) the substance or article was manufactured in the United Kingdom by a person (“M”) whose name and address in the United Kingdom are stated on its container or packaging; and
  - (b) M is not a person to whom a part of the sample must be supplied under the preceding provisions of this Schedule.
- (2) Unless the sampling officer decides not to submit the sample for analysis or other examination, the sampling officer must give notice to M—
- (a) stating that the sample has been obtained; and
  - (b) specifying the person from whom the sampling officer purchased it or, if it was obtained otherwise than by purchase, the place from which the sampling officer obtained it.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) Notice under sub-paragraph (2) must be given to M within the period of three days beginning immediately after the day on which the sample was obtained.

#### *Analysis or other examination*

**15.** Where the enforcing authority that authorises the sampling officer is the Secretary of State or the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety, if the sampling officer decides to submit the sample for analysis the officer must do so—

- (a) to a medicines control laboratory; or
- (b) to a laboratory available for the purpose in accordance with any arrangements made by the enforcing authority in question.

**16.** Where any other enforcing authority authorises the sampling officer, if the sampling officer decides to submit the sample for analysis the officer must do so to a laboratory available for the purpose in accordance with any arrangements made by the enforcing authority in question.

**17.—(1)** Arrangements of the kind mentioned in paragraphs 15(b) and 16 made by an enforcement authority in England, Wales or Scotland other than the Secretary of State must be approved by the Secretary of State.

(2) Arrangements of the kind mentioned in paragraph 15(b) made by a district council in Northern Ireland must be approved by the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety.

**18.** A laboratory to which a sample is submitted under paragraph 15 or 16 must analyse or examine the sample as soon as practicable,

**19.** A laboratory that has analysed or examined a sample submitted under the preceding provisions of this Schedule must issue and send to the sampling officer a certificate specifying the result of the analysis or examination.

**20.** A person to whom a part of the sample is to be supplied in accordance with paragraphs 2 to 8 is entitled, on payment of the required fee, to be given a copy of any certificate as to the result of an analysis or examination which is sent to the sampling officer under paragraph 19.

#### *Provisions as to evidence*

**21.—(1)** In proceedings for an offence under these Regulations, a document produced by one of the parties to the proceedings and purporting to be a certificate issued under paragraph 19 is to be sufficient evidence of the facts stated in the document unless sub-paragraph (2) applies.

(2) A party to proceedings, other than the party who produced the document mentioned in paragraph (1), may require that the person who issued the certificate be called as a witness.

(3) In proceedings in Scotland, if the person who issued the certificate is called as a witness, that person's evidence is to be sufficient evidence of the facts stated in the certificate.

**22.** In proceedings for an offence under these Regulations, a document produced by one of the parties to the proceedings which has been supplied by another party to the proceedings as a copy of a certificate issued under paragraph 19 is to be sufficient evidence of the facts stated in the document.

**23.—(1)** If, in proceedings before a magistrates' court for an offence under these Regulations, a defendant intends to produce a certificate issued under paragraph 19, or to require that the person by whom a certificate was issued be called as a witness, the defendant must give notice of that intention and (where a certificate is to be produced) a copy of the certificate to the other party at least three clear days before the day on which the summons is returnable.

(2) If sub-paragraph (1) is not complied with the court may adjourn the hearing on such terms as it thinks fit.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) In Scotland, if in proceedings in the sheriff court for an offence under these Regulations the accused intends to produce a certificate under paragraph 19, or to require that the person by whom a certificate was issued be called as a witness, the accused must give notice of that intention and (where a certificate is to be produced) a copy of the certificate to the procurator fiscal at least three clear days before the day on which the case proceeds to trial.

(4) If sub-paragraph (3) is not complied with the sheriff may adjourn the diet on such terms as the sheriff thinks fit.

### *Analysis under direction of court*

**24.**—(1) This paragraph applies where proceedings for an offence under these Regulations relate to a substance or article of which a sample has been taken as mentioned in paragraph 1 of this Schedule.

(2) Where this paragraph applies, the part of the sample retained in pursuance of paragraph 10(a) is to be produced as evidence.

(3) The court must, if requested by a party to the proceedings, and may, in the absence of such a request, cause that part of the sample to be sent for analysis to the Government Chemist (or, in Northern Ireland, to the Government Chemist in Northern Ireland) or to be sent for other examination to a laboratory specified by the court.

(4) If, in a case where an appeal is brought, no action has been taken under sub-paragraph (3), that sub-paragraph applies to the court by which the appeal is heard.

(5) A person or laboratory to whom or to which a part of a sample is sent under this paragraph for analysis or other examination must—

(a) analyse or examine it; and

(b) issue and give to the court a certificate specifying the results of the analysis or examination.

(6) A certificate under sub-paragraph (5)(b) is to be evidence (and, in Scotland, is to be sufficient evidence) of the facts stated in the certificate unless a party to the proceedings requires that the person by whom it was issued be called as a witness.

(7) In Scotland, if the person by whom a certificate is issued is called as a witness that person's evidence is sufficient evidence of the facts stated in the certificate.

**25.** The costs of analysis or examination under paragraph 24 are to be paid by the prosecutor or the defendant (or, in Scotland, the accused) as the court may order.

### *Proof by written statement*

**26.**—(1) In relation to England and Wales section 9 of the Criminal Justice Act 1967 <sup>M117</sup> does not have effect with respect to a document produced as mentioned in paragraph 21 or 22, or with respect to any certificate transmitted to a court under paragraph 24.

(2) In relation to Northern Ireland any enactment corresponding to section 9 of the Criminal Justice Act 1967 does not have effect with respect to a document produced as mentioned in paragraph 21 or 22, or with respect to any certificate transmitted to a court under paragraph 24.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M117** 1967 c.80.

### *Payment for sample taken under compulsory powers*

27.—(1) Where a sampling officer takes a sample in the exercise of a power conferred by regulation 327, the officer must, if payment is required, pay the value of the sample to the person to whom a part of the sample is required to be supplied under paragraph 5, 7 or 8 (as the case may be) of this Schedule.

(2) If the sampling officer and the person mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) are unable to agree, the value of the sample is to be determined—

- (a) by the arbitration of a single arbitrator appointed by the sampling officer and the other person in question; or
- (b) if they are unable to agree on an arbitrator, by the county court for the district (or in Northern Ireland the division) in which the sample was taken.

(3) In the application of this paragraph to Scotland for references to the county court there is to be substituted a reference to the sheriff.

## SCHEDULE 32

Regulation 347

### Transitional provisions and savings

#### *Continuity of the law*

1.—(1) This paragraph applies where any provision of these Regulations re-enacts (with or without modification) an enactment or instrument repealed or revoked by these Regulations.

(2) The repeal and re-enactment do not affect the continuity of the law.

(3) Anything done, or having effect as if done, under or for the purposes of the repealed provision that could have been done under or for the purposes of the corresponding provision of these Regulations, if in force or effective immediately before the commencement of that corresponding provision, has effect thereafter as if done under or for the purposes of that corresponding provision.

(4) Any reference (express or implied) in these Regulations or any other enactment, instrument or document to a provision of these Regulations is to be construed (so far as the context permits) as including, as respects times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the corresponding repealed provision had effect, a reference to that corresponding provision.

(5) Any reference (express or implied) in any enactment, instrument or document to a repealed provision is to be construed (so far as the context permits), as respects times, circumstances and purposes in relation to which the corresponding provision of these Regulations has effect, as being or (according to the context) including a reference to the corresponding provision of these Regulations.

(6) This paragraph has effect subject to any specific transitional provision or saving in this Schedule.

#### *Product licences*

2.—(1) This paragraph applies to a marketing authorisation that—

- (a) became a marketing authorisation on 1st January 1995 by virtue of paragraph 1 of Schedule 6<sup>M118</sup> to the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994 (conversion of existing product licences); and
- (b) by virtue of paragraph 1 of this Schedule, has effect from the coming into force of these Regulations as a marketing authorisation granted under these Regulations.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The following provisions do not apply in relation to the marketing authorisation—
- (a) regulation 68(7) (revocation etc of marketing authorisation because the holder has ceased to be established in the EU); and
  - (b) regulation 258 (packaging requirements: specific provisions).
- (3) Paragraph (4) applies if the marketing authorisation has not been renewed in the period beginning with 1st January 1995 and ending when these Regulations come into force.
- (4) The Medicines (Labelling) Regulations 1976<sup>M119</sup> and the Medicines (Leaflets) Regulations 1977<sup>M120</sup> (and subsequent regulations amending those regulations) in so far as they relate to medicinal products continue to have effect in relation to the product to which the marketing authorisation relates until the marketing authorisation is renewed.

#### Marginal Citations

**M118** S.I. 1994/3144, as amended by S.I. 2004/3224 and S.I. 2005/2759. There are other amendments to those regulations that are not relevant to this paragraph..

**M119** S.I. 1976/1726, as amended by S.I. 1977/996 and 2168, S.I. 1978/41 and 1140, S.I. 1981/1791, S.I. 1983/1729, S.I. 1985/1558 and 2008, S.I. 1988/1009, S.I. 1989/1183, S.I. 1992/3273, S.I. 1994/104 and 3144, S.I. 2002/236, S.I. 2004/1031 and S.I. 2005/2745 and 2753.

**M120** S.I. 1977/1055, as amended by S.I. 1992/3274, 1994/104 and 3144, and 2005/2753..

### *Product licences of right*

- 3.—(1) This paragraph applies to a product licence of right.
- (2) In this paragraph, “product licence of right” means a licence of right within the meaning of section 25(4) of the Medicines Act 1968 that—
- (a) has been issued in relation to the requirements to hold a product licence contained in section 7(2) of that Act; and
  - (b) is in force immediately before the coming into force of these Regulations.
- (3) A product licence of right shall continue in force, subject to the following sub-paragraphs.
- (4) Parts 4 to 11, 13 and 14 of these Regulations shall not apply in relation to a medicinal product that is the subject of a product licence of right, except as provided in the following sub-paragraphs.
- (5) A medicinal product to which a product licence of right relates shall—
- (a) continue to be classified as a prescription only medicine, a medicinal product not subject to general sale, or a medicinal product subject to general sale, as the case may be, in accordance with the provisions of the Medicines Act 1968 and any statutory instrument made under that Act that was in force immediately before the coming into force of these regulations; and
  - (b) shall be treated as a prescription only medicine, a pharmacy medicine not subject to general sale, or a medicine subject to general sale respectively, as the case may be, for the purposes of Part 12 of these Regulations.
- (6) The provisions listed in sub-paragraph (7), and any provisions to which they refer, shall continue to have effect as they did immediately before the coming into force of these Regulations in relation to a product licence of right and to the product to which it relates.
- (7) Those provisions are—
- (a) section 28(1), (2) and (3)(a) to (e) and (g) to (j) (general power to suspend, revoke or vary licences) of the Medicines Act 1968<sup>M121</sup>;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the Medicines (Advertising of Medicinal Products) (No. 2) Regulations 1975 <sup>M122</sup>;
- (c) the Medicines (Labelling) Regulations 1976 <sup>M123</sup>;
- (d) the Medicines (Leaflets) Regulations 1977 <sup>M124</sup>; and
- (e) the Medicines (Labelling and Advertising to the Public) Regulations 1978 <sup>M125</sup>.

(8) Part 1 of Schedule 11 (advice and representations) shall have effect where the licensing authority proposes to exercise any power conferred by section 28 of the Medicines Act referred to in sub-paragraph 7(a) in relation to a product licence of right, as if that proposal concerned the suspension, revocation or variation of a UK marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration under these Regulations.

(9) Without prejudice to any requirement of Part 1 of Schedule 11 as to the service of notices, where in the exercise of any such power the licensing authority suspends, revokes or varies a product licence of right, it must serve a notice on the holder a notice giving particulars of the suspension, revocation or variation and of the reasons for its decision to suspend, vary or revoke the product licence of right.

(10) Regulations 268 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: holder of authorisation etc), 269 (offences relating to packaging and package leaflets: other persons) and 271 (offences: penalties) shall have effect in relation to the provisions in sub-paragraph (7)(d) as if—

- (a) references to the holder of a marketing authorisation included reference to the holder of a product licence of right; and
- (b) the provisions in sub-paragraph (7)(d) were requirements of Part 13.

(11) A product licence of right shall cease to be in force at the same time that a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration or traditional herbal registration is granted in respect of the product to which the product licence of right relates.

#### Marginal Citations

**M121** Section 28(3) was amended by Schedule 1 to the [Animal Health and Welfare Act 1984 \(1984 c.40\)](#), [regulation 4\(5\)](#) of S.I. 1977/1050, [regulation 2\(2\)](#) of S.I. 1975/1169, [regulation 6\(2\)](#) of S.I. 1994/276, [regulation 2\(a\)\(iii\)](#) of S.I. 2002/236 and paragraph 14 of Schedule 8 to S.I. 2006/2407.

**M122** S.I. 1975/1326, as amended by S.I. 1979/1760 and S.I. 1994/1932.

**M123** S.I. 1976/1726, as amended by S.I. 1977/996, S.I. 1977/2168, S.I. 1978/41, S.I. 1978/1140, S.I. 1981/1791, S.I. 1983/1729, S.I. 1985/1558, S.I. 1985/2008, S.I. 1988/1009, S.I. 1989/1183, S.I. 1992/3273, S.I. 1994/104, S.I. 1994/3144, S.I. 2002/236, S.I. 2004/1031, S.I. 2005/2745 and S.I. 2005/2753.

**M124** S.I. 1977/1055, as amended by S.I. 1992/3274, S.I. 1994/104, S.I. 1994/3144, and S.I. 2005/2753.

**M125** S.I. 1978/41, as amended by S.I. 2004/1771.

#### *Classification of UK marketing authorisation and certificate of registration*

4.—(1) Sub-paragraph (3) applies to a UK marketing authorisation granted before 1st April 2002 if—

- (a) the authorisation contains a statement that the product to which the authorisation relates is to be available on one or more of the bases set out in paragraph (2); or
- (b) the product to which the authorisation relates is to be available on one or more of the bases set out in paragraph (2) by virtue of any enactment in force immediately before the coming into force of these Regulations.

(2) Those bases are that the product is to be available—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) only on prescription;
  - (b) only from a pharmacy; or
  - (c) on general sale.
- (3) It is a condition of the UK marketing authorisation that the product is only to be available on that basis or those bases.

### *Advanced therapy medicinal products*

5. No provision of these Regulations that applies only to advanced therapy medicinal products shall apply until 30th December 2012 to advanced therapy medicinal products which—

- (a) are tissue engineered products; and
- (b) were legally on the market in the United Kingdom in accordance with United Kingdom or European Union legislation on 30th December 2008.

### *Medicines for Human Use (Advanced Therapy Medicinal Products and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/1882)*

6. Regulation 9 (amendment of the Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004) of the Medicines for Human Use (Advanced Therapy Medicinal Products and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2010<sup>M126</sup> remains in force.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M126** [S.I. 2010/1882](#).

### *Section 60 of the Medicines Act 1968 etc*

7.—(1) Section 60 of the Medicines Act 1968 (“the Act”) shall continue to have effect insofar as it relates to the making of, and continued operation of, the Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) Regulations 1978<sup>M127</sup> (“the 1978 Regulations”).

(2) The following provisions of the Act shall continue to have effect as they did immediately before the coming into force of these Regulations in relation to the following provisions of the 1978 Regulations—

- (a) section 22A(2) to (9) and 10(b) (hearing before person appointed) of the Act, in relation to regulation 7 (hearings and written representations) of the 1978 Regulations;
- (b) section 67(2) and (4) (offences under Part III) of the Act, as they relate to section 60 of the Act, in relation to regulation 8 (application of provisions of the Act) of the 1978 Regulations; and
- (c) paragraphs 7, 8, 9(3) and 10 to 12 of Schedule 1A (provisions relating to Commission and committees) to the Act<sup>M128</sup>, in relation to the committee established under regulation 3 (advisory committee) of the 1978 Regulations.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M127** [S.I. 1978/1006](#), as amended by [S.I. 1995/2147](#), [S.I. 2005/2754](#), [S.I. 2006/2407](#) and [S.I. 2006/2806](#).

**M128** [1968 c.67](#). Schedule 1A was inserted by regulation 7(2) of [S.I. 2005/1094](#).



## SCHEDULE 33

Regulation 212

### Transitional arrangements: pharmacovigilance

#### Pharmacovigilance system master file

1. Regulation 182(2)(b) (obligation to maintain and make available pharmacovigilance system master file) does not apply in respect of a medicinal product granted an authorisation or registration before 21st July 2012 until whichever is the earlier of—

- (a) the day on which the authorisation or registration is renewed under regulation 66 (application for renewal of UK marketing authorisation) or 133 (application for renewal of traditional herbal registration) for the first time after Part 11 has come into force; or
- (b) 21st July 2015.

2. Regulation 210(3)(b) (offences relating to pharmacovigilance obligations under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004) does not apply in respect of a medicinal product granted an EU marketing authorisation before 21st July 2012 until whichever is the earlier of—

- (a) the day on which the EU marketing authorisation is renewed under article 14 of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 for the first time after Part 11 has come into force; or
- (b) 21st July 2015

#### Post-authorisation safety studies

3. Regulations 198, 199, 200, 201 and 202 (provisions relating to post authorisation safety studies) do not apply to post authorisation safety studies commenced before 21st July 2012.

4. Regulation 210(3)(g) (offences relating to pharmacovigilance obligations under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004) does not apply to post authorisation safety studies commenced before 21st July 2012.

#### Reporting obligations

5. Paragraphs 6 to 8 apply for the period—

- (a) that begins on the day that Part 11 comes into force; and
- (b) concludes at the end of the period of six months beginning on the day following the day on which the EMA announces that the functionalities of the Eudravigilance database for the purposes of Title IX of the 2001 Directive have been established.

6. The references to “the Eudravigilance database” in regulation 188(1)(a) and (d) (reporting obligations on holders) shall be read as follows—

- (a) in regulation 188(1)(a) and (d) in relation to serious adverse reactions that occur within the EEA, as a reference to the competent authority of each EEA State in whose territory the reaction occurred; and
- (b) in regulation 188(1)(a) and (d) in relation to serious adverse reactions that occur within a third country, as a reference to—
  - (i) the EMA, and
  - (ii) the relevant competent authorities insofar as each of those competent authorities has requested that serious adverse reaction reports for third countries are submitted to it.

7. The licensing authority must ensure that all reports and updated reports it receives under regulation 188(1)(a) and (d) that relate to serious adverse reactions in the United Kingdom are made available to the Eudravigilance database promptly and in any event before the end of the period of

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

fifteen days beginning on the day following the day on which the report or updated report is received by the licensing authority.

8. Regulations 186(1)(e) (reporting obligations on licensing authority in relation to non-serious suspected adverse reactions) and 188(1)(b) (reporting obligations on holders in relation to non-serious suspected adverse reactions) do not apply.

### Periodic safety update reports

9. Paragraph 10 applies for the period—

- (a) that begins on the day that Part 11 comes into force; and
- (b) concludes at the end of the period of twelve months beginning on the day following the day on which the EMA announces it is ready to receive reports pursuant to Article 107b(1) of the 2001 Directive.

10. The reference to “the EMA” in regulations 191(1) (obligation on holder to submit periodic safety update reports: general requirements) and 192(3) (obligation on holder to submit periodic safety update reports: derogation from general requirements) should be read on both occasions as a reference to “the relevant competent authorities”.

## SCHEDULE 34

Regulation 348

### Amendments to existing law

## PART 1

### The Medicines Acts 1968 and 1971

1. The Medicines Act 1968 is amended as follows.
2. For the text of section 1 (Ministers responsible for the administration of Act) substitute—
 

“1. In this Act, “the Ministers” has the meaning given by regulation 6(6) to (8) of the 2012 Regulations (but as if references in that regulation to those Regulations were references to this Act).”
3. In section 10<sup>M129</sup> (exemptions for pharmacists)—
  - (a) in subsection (1) for “a practitioner” substitute “an appropriate practitioner”;
  - (b) in subsections (1) and (4) for “sections 7 and 8 of this Act” substitute “regulations 17(1) (manufacturing of medicinal products) and 46 (requirement for authorisation) of the 2012 Regulations”;
  - (c) in subsection (5) for “section 7 of this Act” substitute “regulation 46 of the 2012 Regulations”;
  - (d) in subsection (6) for “section 8(2) of this Act” substitute “regulation 17(1) of the 2012 Regulations”;
  - (e) omit subsection (7); and
  - (f) in subsection (8) for the words from “section 92” to the end of the subsection substitute “regulation 7 (advertisements relating to medicinal products) of the 2012 Regulations”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Marginal Citations

**M129** 1968, c.67. Section 10(1), 10(3) and 10(7A) were amended and 10(2) repealed by Part 1 paragraphs 1 and 10 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#), [section 10\(1\)](#), 10(4) were amended and 10(5) to (7) and 10(8) inserted by article 3 of [S.I. 1971/1445](#), [section 10\(1\)](#) was amended and section 10(9) inserted by paragraph 5 Schedule 1 to the Regulations of Care (Scotland) Act 2001, and section 10(7A) to (7C) were inserted by section 26(1) of the Health Act 2006.

#### 4. In section 15 (provision for extending or modifying exemptions)—

- (a) omit subsections (1) and (2); and
- (b) in subsection (3) <sup>M130</sup> for “sections 9 to 14” substitute “ section 10 ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M130** Section 15(3) was amended by paragraphs 1 and 11(b) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

#### 5. In section 58 <sup>M131</sup> (medicinal products on prescription only)—

- (a) in subsection (1) for the words from the first occurrence of “for the purposes” to the end of the subsection substitute “ as prescription only medicines ”;
- (b) omit subsections (1A), (2) and (3);
- (c) in the opening words of subsection (4) for “the last preceding subsection” substitute “ regulation 223(1) of the 2012 Regulations ”;
- (d) in subsection (4)(a)—
  - (i) for “paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of this section, or both those paragraphs,” substitute “ regulation 214(1) or (2) of the 2012 Regulations ”, and
  - (ii) for the words from “or, where” to “of this section” substitute “ or, in the case of an appropriate practitioner, other than a doctor or dentist, ”;
- (e) in subsection (4)(b) for “paragraph (a) of that subsection” substitute “ regulation 214(1) of the 2012 Regulations ”;
- (f) in subsection (4A) for “a person who is an appropriate practitioner by virtue of subsection (1)(d) or (e)” substitute “ an appropriate practitioner, other than a doctor or dentist ”;
- (g) in subsection (4C) for “subsection (2)(a) or (b) of this section” substitute “ regulation 214(1) or (2) of the 2012 Regulations ”; and
- (h) after subsection (6) insert—
  - “(7) In subsection (6) “the appropriate committee” means whichever the Ministers consider appropriate of—
    - (a) the Commission; or
    - (b) an expert committee appointed by the Ministers, or by one of them acting alone.”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M131** Section 58(1), (4) and (6) was amended by paragraph 29 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#). Section 58(4) was amended by paragraph 2(b) of Schedule 5 to [S.I. 2002/53](#). Section 58(4) was amended

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

by section 63(1 and (4) of, and section 58(4A) and (4C) inserted by section 63(1) and (5) of, the Health and Social Care Act 2001.

6. In section 58A(1)<sup>M132</sup> (requirement to specify certain products as prescription-only products)

- (a) omit paragraphs (a) and (b) and the word “and” following paragraph (b); and
- (b) for the words following paragraph (c) to the end of the subsection substitute “is specified as a prescription only medicine”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M132** Section 58A was inserted by regulation 2 of [S.I. 1992/3271](#), and the heading substituted by and subsection (1) amended by paragraph 30 Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

7. In section 62<sup>M133</sup> (prohibition of sale or supply, or importation, of medicinal products of specified description), after subsection (7) add—

“(8) In this section “the appropriate committee” means whichever the Ministers consider appropriate of—

- (a) the Commission; or
- (b) an expert committee appointed by the Ministers, or by one of them acting alone.”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M133** Section 62(7) was substituted by paragraph 12(5) of Schedule 1 to [S.I. 2005/1094](#).

8. In section 64(5) (protection for purchasers of medicinal products) for “a practitioner” substitute “an appropriate practitioner”.

9.—(1) Section 67<sup>M134</sup> (offences under Part III) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1B)(a) for “by virtue of provision made under section 58(1) of this Act” substitute “within the meaning of regulation 214 of the 2012 Regulations”;

(3) in subsection (2)—

- (a) for “52, 58, 63, 64 and 65”, substitute “63 and 64”; and
- (b) omit “any regulations made under section 60 or section 61 or”.

(4) Omit subsection (3A).

(5) In subsection (4) for “subsection (1A), (1B), (2), (3) or (3A)” substitute “subsection (1A), (1B), (2) or (3)”.

(6) Omit subsections (5) and (6).

#### Marginal Citations

**M134** Section 67(1B) was inserted by section 63(7) of the Health and Social Care Act 2001, and section 67(3A) inserted and section 67(4) amended by paragraph 8 of Schedule 5 to [S.I. 2005/2789](#)

10. In section 72 (representative of pharmacist in case of death or disability)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in paragraph (1)(c) <sup>M135</sup>, for the words from “a committee” to the end of paragraph (c) substitute “a controller is appointed in his case under the Mental Health (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 <sup>M136</sup>”; and
- (b) in paragraph (4)(c) for “committee” substitute “controller”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M135** Section 72(1)(c) was amended by paragraph 12(a) of Schedule 5 to the Adults with Incapacity (Scotland) Act 2000 and paragraph 14(a) of Schedule 6 to the Mental Capacity Act 2005, and section 72(4)(c) by paragraph 14(d) of Schedule 6 to the Mental Capacity Act 2005.

**M136** S.I. 1986/594 (N.I. 4).

**11.** In section 82(4) (pharmacies: procedure relating to disqualification) for “Pharmaceutical Society” substitute—

- (a) in the first place it appears, “General Pharmaceutical Council or, in Northern Ireland, the Pharmaceutical Society of Northern Ireland”; and
- (b) in the second place it appears, “Council or the Society”.

**12.** In section 87 <sup>M137</sup> (requirements as to containers)—

- (a) in subsection (1) for “section 85(2) of this Act” substitute “ subsection (3) ”; and
- (b) after subsection (2) insert—

“(3) The purposes mentioned in subsection (1) are—

- (a) securing that medicinal products are correctly described and readily identifiable;
- (b) securing that any appropriate warning or other appropriate instruction or information is given, and that false or misleading information is not given, with respect to medicinal products;
- (c) promoting safety in relation to medicinal products.”

**Marginal Citations**

**M137** Section 87(1) was amended by paragraph 44 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**13.** In section 88(1) <sup>M138</sup> (distinctive colours, shapes and markings of medicinal products) for “section 85(2)” substitute “ section 87(3) ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M138** Section 88(1) was amended by paragraph 45 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**14.** In section 91 <sup>M139</sup> (offences under Part V, and supplementary provisions)—

- (a) omit subsection (1);
- (b) in subsection (2) omit “section 85(3), section 86(2) or”; and
- (c) in subsection (3) for “sections 85 to” substitute “ section ”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

**M139** Section 91(2) and (3) was amended by paragraph 48(b) and (c) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#), and section 91(2) was amended by section 32(2) of the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980.

- 15.** In section 104 (application of Act to certain articles and substances)—
- (a) in the heading to the section for “Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (1) for “this Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 16.** In section 105 (application of Act to certain other substances which are not medicinal products)—
- (a) in the heading to the section for “Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (1) for “this Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 17.** In section 107 (validity of decisions and proceedings relating thereto)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) omit “of the licensing authority under Part II of this Act or”, and
    - (ii) for “licence or certificate granted or issued” substitute “ certificate issued ”;
  - (b) in subsection (4)—
    - (i) for “grant a licence or certificate” substitute “ issue a certificate ”,
    - (ii) for “licence or certificate granted” substitute “ certificate issued ”, and
    - (iii) for “grant of the licence or” substitute “ issue of the ”;
  - (c) in subsection (6) omit “of Justice”.
- 18.—**(1) Section 108<sup>M140</sup> (enforcement in England and Wales) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) for the words from “sections 64” to “and 89(2)” substitute “ section 64 and sections 87(2) and 88(3) ”;
  - (b) omit paragraphs (b) and (c); and
  - (c) in the words following those paragraphs—
    - (i) for “the Pharmaceutical Society” substitute “ the General Pharmaceutical Council ”,
    - (ii) for “the Society” substitute “ the Council ”,
    - (iii) for “that Society” substitute “ that Council ”
    - (iv) for “paragraphs (a) and (b)” substitute “ paragraph (a) ”,
    - (v) for “those paragraphs” substitute “ that paragraph ”, and
    - (vi) omit the words from “, and the provisions” to the end of the subsection.
- (3) Omit subsections (3) to (5).
- (4) In subsection (6)—
- (a) for “the Pharmaceutical Society” substitute “ the General Pharmaceutical Council ”;
  - (b) omit paragraph (a); and
  - (c) in paragraph (b) omit “or section 61”.
- (5) In subsections (6A) and (6B) for “the Pharmaceutical Society” substitute “ the General Pharmaceutical Council ”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Omit subsection (7).
- (7) In subsection (9) for “(7)” substitute “ (6D) ”.
- (8) In subsection (10)—
  - (i) for “the Pharmaceutical Society” substitute “ the General Pharmaceutical Council ”, and
  - (ii) for the words from “or any” to “that duty” substitute “ has in relation to any matter failed to perform a duty imposed on it by subsections (6A) or (6B) to enforce any provisions mentioned in those subsections ”.
- (9) In subsection (12) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—
  - “(a) in relation to an area in England other than the City of London, the council of a non-metropolitan county, metropolitan district or London borough;
  - (b) in relation to the City of London (including the Inner Temple and the Middle Temple), the Common Council of the City of London; and
  - (c) in relation to an area in Wales, the council of a county or county borough.”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M140** Section 108(2) was amended and 108(12) inserted by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to the Food Safety Act 1990, section 108(6A) to (6D) was inserted and section 108(9) and (10) amended by section 31(1) of the Health Act 2006, section 108(9) was amended by paragraph 56(c), section 108(10) by paragraph 56(d) and section 108(11) by paragraph 56(e) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#), and section . 108(12) was amended by paragraph 33 of Schedule 16 to the Local Government (Wales) Act 1994.

- 19.** In section 109 <sup>M141</sup> (enforcement in Scotland)—
  - (a) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for the words from “(2)” to “(10)” substitute “ (2), (6) to (6D), (9) and (10) ”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph (a) omit the words from “or” to “jointly”; and
  - (b) omit subsection (3).

#### Marginal Citations

**M141** Section 109(2)(c) was repealed by paragraph 9(a) of Schedule 3 to the Food Safety Act 1990, and section 109(2)(d) was repealed by paragraph 57 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

- 20.** In section 110 <sup>M142</sup> (enforcement in Northern Ireland)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), for “Minister of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland” substitute “ Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety ”;
  - (b) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “paragraphs (a) and (b)” substitute “ paragraph (a) ” in both places where it occurs,
    - (ii) for the words from “those paragraphs” to “subsection” substitute “ that paragraph ”,
    - (iii) for “area” substitute “ district ”<sup>M143</sup>,
    - (iv) for “health authority” in both places where it occurs substitute “ district council ”,
    - (v) omit the words “and the provisions and regulations specified in the said paragraph (c)”;
  - (c) omit subsection (3);

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) in subsections (3A) and (3B), after “the Pharmaceutical Society” insert “ of Northern Ireland ”;
- (e) in subsection (5)—
  - (i) for “Subsections (9) and (10)” substitute “ Subsection (9) ”,
  - (ii) in paragraph (a) for “(2) to (7)” substitute “ (2) to (6D) ”, and
  - (iii) omit paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding that paragraph;
- (f) omit subsections (6) and (7); and
- (g) for subsection (8) substitute—
  - “(8) In this section “district council” means a council established under the Local Government Act (Northern Ireland) 1972 <sup>M144</sup>.”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M142** Section 110(1) was amended by paragraph 58(a) and section 110(5)(a) was amended by paragraph 58(c) (i) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#), and section 110(3A) and (3B) were inserted by section 31(3) (b) and section 110(5)(a) amended by section 31(3)(c) of the Health Act 2006. In relation to Northern Ireland,

**M143** The amendments in paragraph 19(b)(iii) and (iv), (f) and (g) reproduce amendments already made with effect in Northern Ireland by article 2 and the Schedule to S.R. (NI) 1973 No 211.

**M144** [1972 c. 9 \(N.I.\)](#).

- 21.** In section 111 <sup>M145</sup> (rights of entry)—
- (a) in subsection (1) omit paragraph (aa) except for the word “or”;
  - (b) in subsection (2) omit paragraph (a);
  - (c) omit subsection (3);
  - (d) in subsection (6) omit—
    - (i) “aircraft,” in both places where it occurs, and
    - (ii) “, commander”; and
  - (e) for subsection (9) substitute—
    - “(9) References in this section to a justice of the peace—
      - (a) in relation to England, include a reference to a district judge (magistrates' courts);
      - (b) in relation to Scotland, are to be read as references to a sheriff, stipendiary magistrate or justice of the peace, and
      - (c) in relation to Northern Ireland, are to be read as references to a lay magistrate or a district judge (magistrates' courts).”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M145** Section 111(1)(aa) was inserted by paragraph 9 of Schedule 5 to [S.I. 2005/2789](#).

**22.** In section 113(1) (application of sampling procedure to substance or article seized under section 112), omit the words from “(including” to the end of the subsection.

- 23.** In section 114(1) (supplementary provisions as to rights of entry and related rights), omit—
- (a) “aircraft,” in both places where it occurs; and



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) “, commander”.

**24.** In section 121(4) <sup>M146</sup> (contravention due to default of other person), for the words from “63” to “96” substitute “ 63, 64, 87 and 88 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M146** Section 121(4) was amended by paragraph 61 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**25.** In section 122(2) <sup>M147</sup> (warranty as defence), for the words “section 63(b), sections 64 and 65, sections 85 to 88” substitute “ sections 63(b), 64, 87 and 88 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M147** Section 122(2) was amended by paragraph 62 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**26.** In section 123(1)(b) (offences in relation to warranties and certificates of analysis), omit “section 115 of this Act, or under”.

**27.** In section 125 <sup>M148</sup> (prosecutions)—

(a) in subsection (4)—

(i) for “the Pharmaceutical Society” substitute “ the General Pharmaceutical Council ”, and

(ii) for “that Society” substitute “ the Council ”;

(b) in subsections (6) and (7) for “Minister of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland” substitute “ Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M148** Section 125(4) was amended by paragraph 63 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**28.** In section 126 <sup>M149</sup> (presumptions)—

(a) in subsection (1), omit paragraph (b) and the word “or” following it;

(b) in subsection (3), omit “subsections (3) and (5) of section 85,”; and

(c) omit subsection (4).

**Marginal Citations**

**M149** Section 126(3) was amended by paragraph 64(c) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**29.** In section 128 (financial provisions)—

(a) in subsection (1), for the words from “any of” to “section 1(1) of this Act” substitute “ either of the Ministers ”;

(b) in subsections (4) and (5), for “the Pharmaceutical Society” substitute “ the General Pharmaceutical Council or (as the case may be) the Pharmaceutical Society of Northern Ireland ”;

(c) in subsection (5), for “a Minister” substitute “ either of the Ministers ”; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(d) in subsection (6), for the words from “any of the Ministers” to “Ireland” substitute “ the Secretary of State ”.

**30.** In section 129 <sup>M150</sup> (orders and regulations)—

(a) in subsection (2), omit the words from “or any regulations” to “section 120 of this Act”;

(b) in subsection (3)—

(i) in paragraph (a), for the words from “13” to “and 130(5)(c)” substitute “ 58, 62, 79 and 106 ”, and

(ii) omit paragraph (b);

(c) in subsection (4) omit the words from “, other” to “69(3),” and

(d) in subsection (7)—

(i) omit “Part V or Part VI”, and

(ii) for the words “a committee established under section 4 of this Act” substitute “ an expert committee appointed by themselves, or by one of them acting alone ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M150** Section 129(2) was amended by paragraph 65(a) of and section 129(3) was amended by paragraph 65(b) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**31.** In section 130 <sup>M151</sup> (meaning of medicinal product and related expressions)—

(a) for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) In this Act, “medicinal product” has the meaning given by regulation 2 of the 2012 Regulations.”; and

(b) omit subsections (2) to (8) and (10).

#### Marginal Citations

**M151** Section 130(1) was amended by paragraph 66(a) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

**32.** In section 131(5) <sup>M152</sup> (meaning of “wholesale dealing”, “retail sale” and related expressions) for “or the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972” substitute “ , the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 or the Health and Social Care (Reform) Act (Northern Ireland) 2009 ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M152** Section 131(5) was amended by paragraphs 43 and 44 of Schedule 1 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006, paragraph 30 of Schedule 16 to the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 and paragraph 128(2) of Schedule 4 to the National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973.

**33.** In section 132 (general interpretation provisions)—

(a) for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) In this Act—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) unless the context otherwise requires, any expression defined by any provision of the 2012 Regulations, and not defined in this Act, has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of those Regulations; and
  - (b) “the 2012 Regulations” means the Human Medicines Regulations 2012.”;
  - (b) omit subsections (2) and (3);
  - (c) in subsection (4) omit “licence or” in each place it appears; and
  - (d) omit subsection (5).
- 34.** In Schedule 3 <sup>M153</sup> (sampling)—
- (a) omit paragraphs 5 to 7;
  - (b) in paragraph 8 for “3 to 7” substitute “ 3 or 4 ”;
  - (c) in paragraph 9 for “3 to 8” substitute “ 3, 4, or 8 ”; and
  - (d) in paragraph 17, in the words following paragraph (c)—
    - (i) for the words “a health authority” substitute “ the Pharmaceutical Society of Northern Ireland ”, and
    - (ii) for “the Minister of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland” substitute “ the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M153** Paragraph 17 of Schedule 3 was amended by paragraph 66 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

- 35.** In Schedule 4 <sup>M154</sup> (provisions relating to Northern Ireland)—
- (a) for every reference to “the Minister of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland” substitute “ the Minister for Health, Social Services and Public Safety ”;
  - (b) in paragraph 6 omit the words from “(except” to “Act”;
  - (c) in paragraph 8 omit the words from “, and every regulation made solely” to “this Act,”; and
  - (d) in paragraph 10 for “the Ministry of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland” substitute “ the Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M154** Paragraphs 2 to 5, 7 and 9(b) and (c) and following words of Schedule 4 were omitted by paragraphs 69(a), (c) and (e)(iii) and (iv) of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#). Paragraph 6 was amended by paragraph 69(b), paragraph 8 by paragraph 69(d), paragraph 9 by paragraph 69(e) and paragraph 10 by paragraph 69(f) of that Part.

*Medicines Act 1971*

- 36.**—(1) The Medicines Act 1971 <sup>M155</sup> shall have effect as follows.
- (2) In section 1 (fees)—
- (a) in subsection (1), the reference to any application in pursuance of the Medicines Act 1968 for a licence or certificate under Part II of that Act, or for the variation or renewal of such a licence or certificate, shall have effect as a reference to any application under Parts 3 to 8 of these Regulations for the grant, variation or renewal of—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) a manufacturer's licence,
  - (ii) a wholesale dealer's licence,
  - (iii) a marketing authorisation,
  - (iv) a certificate of registration,
  - (v) a traditional herbal registration, or
  - (vi) an Article 126a authorisation; and
- (b) in subsection (2)(b), the reference to any licence or certificate under the Medicines Act 1968 shall have effect as a reference to a manufacturer's licence, a wholesale dealer's licence, a marketing authorisation, a certificate of registration, a traditional herbal registration, or an Article 126a authorisation under these Regulations.
- (3) Paragraph (2) has effect in relation to references of the kind mentioned in that paragraph in regulations made under section 1.

**Marginal Citations**

[M155 1971 c.69.](#)

## PART 2

### Other primary legislation

#### *Trade Descriptions Act 1968*

**37.** In section 2(5)(b) (trade descriptions) of the Trade Descriptions Act 1968 <sup>M156</sup> for the words from “made under Part V” to “that Act)” substitute “ of Chapter 1 of Part 13 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

[M156 1968 c.29.](#) Paragraph (b) of section 2(5) was inserted by paragraph 16 of Schedule 5 to the Medicines Act 1968.

#### *House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975*

**38.** In Part II (bodies of which all members are disqualified) of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 <sup>M157</sup> for the entry for the Commission for Human Medicines and any committee established under section 4 of the Medicines Act 1968 substitute—

“The Commission on Human Medicines.”.

**Marginal Citations**

[M157 1975 c.24.](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975*

**39.** In Part II (bodies of which all members are disqualified) of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 <sup>M158</sup> for the entry for the Commission for Human Medicines and any committee established under section 4 of the Medicines Act 1968 substitute—

“The Commission on Human Medicines.”

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M158** 1975 c.25.

### *Consumer Protection Act 1987*

**40.** Section 19(1) (interpretation of Part II) of the Consumer Protection Act 1987 <sup>M159</sup> shall have effect as if, in the definition “licensed medicinal product”, the reference to any medicinal product within the meaning of the Medicines Act 1968, in respect of which a product licence within the meaning of that Act is for the time being in force, included a reference to a medicinal product, in respect of which a marketing authorisation or a traditional herbal registration within the meaning of these Regulations is for the time being in force.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M159** 1987 c.43. Section 19(1) was amended by paragraph 7 of Part 1 of Schedule 9 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#); there are other amendments to that subsection, but none is relevant.

### *Environmental Protection Act 1990*

**41.** In section 142(7) (powers to obtain information about potentially hazardous substances) of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 <sup>M160</sup>, for the entry relating to the Medicines Act 1968 substitute “ Parts 3 to 8 and 16 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M160** 1990 c.43. Section 142(7) was amended by paragraph 8 of Schedule 4 to the [Radioactive Substances Act 1993](#) (1993 c.12), in relation to England and Wales by paragraph 5(1) and (12) of Part 1 of Schedule 26 to [S.I. 2010/675](#), and by paragraph 8 of Part 1 of Schedule 9 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

### *Value Added Tax Act 1994*

**42.** In Part II of Schedule 8 (zero-rating) to the Value Added Tax Act 1994 <sup>M161</sup>—

- (a) in note (2B) to Group 12 (drugs, medicines, aids for the handicapped etc) for the words “article 1(2) of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (b) in note (11) to Group 15 (charities etc)—
  - (i) for paragraph (a) substitute—
    - “(a) “medicinal product” has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 2(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”, and
  - (ii) omit paragraphs (b) and (c).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Marginal Citations

**M161** 1994 c.23. In Part II of Schedule 8, note (2B) to Group 12 was inserted by [S.I. 2009/2972](#), and note (11) (a) to Group 15 was amended by paragraph 10(a), and (11)(d) inserted by paragraph 10(b), of Schedule 9 to [S.I. 2006/2407](#).

#### *Health Act 1999*

**43.** In section 60(2A)(c) (regulation of health care and associated professions) of the Health Act 1999 <sup>M162</sup>, after “that Act” insert “ or the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M162** 1999 c.8. Subsection (2A) was inserted by paragraph 1 of Schedule 8 to the [Health and Social Care Act 2008](#) (2008 c.14).

#### *Communications Act 2003*

**44.** In section 368R(1) (interpretation of Part 4A) of the Communications Act 2003 <sup>M163</sup>, for the definition “prescription-only medicine” substitute the following definition—

““prescription-only medicine” means a prescription only medicine within the meaning of regulation 5(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M163** 2003 c.21. Section 368R was inserted by regulation 2 of [S.I. 2009/2979](#).

#### *Christmas Day and New Year's Day Trading (Scotland) Act 2007*

**45.** In section 7 (interpretation) of the Christmas Day and New Year's Day Trading (Scotland) Act 2007 <sup>M164</sup>—

(a) omit the definition “appropriate person”; and

(b) for the definition “on prescription” substitute the following definition—

““on prescription” means in accordance with a prescription given by an appropriate practitioner, within the meaning of regulation 214(1) and (3) to (6) (sale or supply of prescription only medicines) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M164** 2007 asp 13.

## PART 3

### Northern Ireland Orders in Council

#### *Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972*

**46.** The Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 <sup>M165</sup> is amended as follows—

- (a) in article 2(2), in the definition “pharmacist” for “Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (b) in article 57D—
  - (i) in paragraphs (3) and (5) for “Community” substitute “ EU ”, and
  - (ii) in paragraph (5) for “regulation 1 of the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations etc Regulations 1997” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M165** S.I. 1972/1265 (N.I. 14). Article 57D was inserted by article 4 of the [Primary Medical Services \(Northern Ireland\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/311 \(N.I. 2\)\)](#)

#### *Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976*

**47.** In article 2(2) of the Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 <sup>M166</sup>, in the definition “retail pharmacy business” for “section 132(1) of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M166** S.I. 1976/1213 (N.I. 22).

#### *Poisons (Northern Ireland) Order 1976*

- 48.** In article 2(2) of the Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 <sup>M167</sup>—
- (a) in the definition “pharmacist” after “Medicines Act” insert “ or the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) in the definition “retail pharmacy business” for “section 132(1) of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M167** S.I. 1976/1214 (N.I. 23).

#### *Diseases of Animals (Northern Ireland) Order 1981*

**49.** In article 38 of the Diseases of Animals (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 <sup>M168</sup> in the definition “retail pharmacy business” for “section 132(1) of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

**M168 S.I. 1981/1115 (N.I. 22).**

*Waste and Contaminated Land (Northern Ireland) Order 1997*

**50.** In article 33(6) of the Waste and Contaminated Land (Northern Ireland) Order 1997 <sup>M169</sup> for the entry relating to the Medicines Act 1968 substitute “ Parts 3 to 8, 12 and 16 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M169 S.I. 1997/2778 (N.I. 19).** Article 33(6) was amended by S.R. (NI) 2006 No 45.

*Shops (Sunday Trading &c.) (Northern Ireland) Order 1997*

**51.** In article 4(3) of the Shops (Sunday Trading &c.) (Northern Ireland) Order 1997 <sup>M170</sup> for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M170 S.I. 1997/2779 (N.I. 20).**

## PART 4

### The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004

**52.** The Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004 <sup>M171</sup> are amended as follows.

**Marginal Citations**

**M171 S.I. 2004/1031**, as amended by **S.I. 2005/2754**. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

**53.** In regulation 2(1) (interpretation)—

(a) before the definition “the Act” insert the following definition—

““the 2012 Regulations” means the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”;

(b) for the definition “appropriate committee” substitute—

““appropriate committee” for the purposes of any provision of these Regulations under which a function falls to be performed means whichever the licensing authority considers to be appropriate of—

(a) the Commission on Human Medicines; or

(b) an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority;”;

(c) insert in the appropriate position in alphabetical order the following definition—

““the Commission on Human Medicines” means the Commission on Human Medicines within the meaning of regulation 9 of the 2012 Regulations;”;



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) in the definition “licensing authority” for “section 6 of the Act” substitute “ regulation 6 of the 2012 Regulations ”;
  - (e) for sub-paragraph (a) of the definition “marketing authorisation” substitute—
    - “(a) a UK marketing authorisation granted by the licensing authority under the 2012 Regulations.”; and
  - (f) for the definition “medicinal product” substitute—
    - ““medicinal product” means a medicinal product within the meaning of regulation 2(1) of the 2012 Regulations.”
- 54.** In regulation 4(3) (responsibility for functions under the Directive) for “the Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 55.** In regulation 19(10) (authorisation procedure for clinical trials involving medicinal products for gene therapy etc) omit “established by section 2A of the Act”.
- 56.** In regulation 46(2)(c) (labelling) for words from “Schedule 5” to the end of the sub-paragraph substitute “ Part 13 of the 2012 Regulations that apply in relation to medicinal products sold or supplied in accordance with a prescription given by a person who is an appropriate practitioner within the meaning of regulation 214(3) to (6) of those Regulations ”.
- 57.** In regulation 47 (application of enforcement provisions of the Act)—
- (a) for “the Act” in the heading substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”; and
  - (b) for paragraph (1) substitute—
    - “(1) Regulations 2, 8(1), 322, 323(1), 324(1), 325 to 330, 332 to 339, 343 and Schedule 31 of the 2012 Regulations (“those provisions”) shall apply for the purposes of these Regulations as they apply for the purposes of the 2012 Regulations, but with the modifications specified in Schedule 9, and any reference in those provisions to the 2012 Regulations includes a reference to these Regulations.”; and
  - (c) after paragraph (2) insert the following paragraph—
    - “(3) In those provisions as applying by virtue of paragraph (1), any reference to, or relating to, a requirement, a power, a function, a right, a duty, an entitlement, or a protection shall be read as a reference to, or relating to, that requirement, power, function, right, duty, entitlement, or protection as applied by this regulation.”
- 58.** In regulation 48(5) (infringement notices) for “sections 108 to 110 of the Act” substitute “ regulation 323(1) or 324(1) of the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 59.** In regulation 49(5) (offences) for “the Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 60.** In regulation 53(3) (construction of references to specified publications) for “section 103(1) of the Act” substitute “ regulation 321(1) of the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 61.** In paragraph 4(2) of Schedule 5 (procedural provisions relating to the refusal or amendment of, or imposition of conditions relating to, clinical trial authorisations and the suspension or termination of clinical trials)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (a), for paragraphs (i) to (iii) substitute—
    - “(i) the Commission on Human Medicines,
    - (ii) an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority,
    - (iii) an expert advisory group within the meaning of regulation 14 of the 2012 Regulations,
    - (iv) the British Pharmacopoeia Commission referred to in regulation 11 of the 2012 Regulations, or any of its sub-committees,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (v) the Medicines Commission formerly established under section 2 of the Act, or any of its committees,
  - (vi) the Advisory Board on the Registration of Homoeopathic Products formerly established under section 4 of the Act, or any of its sub-committees, or
  - (vii) the Herbal Medicines Advisory Committee formerly established under section 4 of the Act, or any of its sub-committees, and”; and
- (b) in sub-paragraph (b) after “Crown” insert “ , the Scottish Ministers, the Welsh Ministers or a Northern Ireland Minister ”.
- 62.** In Schedule 7 (standard provisions for manufacturing authorisations)—
- (a) in Part 2—
    - (i) in paragraph 5 for “the Act” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”,
    - (ii) in paragraph 9 for “the Act or any regulations under the Act” substitute “ or the 2012 Regulations ”, and
    - (iii) in paragraph 13—
      - (aa) for “Part II of the Act” substitute “ Parts 3 to 8 of the 2012 Regulations ”, and
      - (bb) for “the Act” in the second place where it occurs substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”; and
  - (b) in Part 3—
    - (i) in paragraph 6 for “the Act” in the first place where it occurs substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph 8—
      - (aa) for “Part II of the Act” substitute “ Parts 3 to 8 of the 2012 Regulations ”, and
      - (bb) for “the Act” in the second place where it occurs substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”.
- 63.** In paragraph 5(2) of Schedule 8 (procedural provisions relating to proposals to grant, refuse to grant, vary, suspend or revoke manufacturing authorisations)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (a), for paragraphs (i) to (iii) substitute—
    - “(i) the Commission on Human Medicines,
    - (ii) an expert committee appointed by the licensing authority,
    - (iii) an expert advisory group within the meaning of regulation 14 of the 2012 Regulations,
    - (iv) the British Pharmacopoeia Commission referred to in regulation 11 of the 2012 Regulations, or any of its sub-committees,
    - (v) the Medicines Commission formerly established under section 2 of the Act, or any of its committees,
    - (vi) the Advisory Board on the Registration of Homoeopathic Products formerly established under section 4 of the Act, or any of its sub-committees, or
    - (vii) the Herbal Medicines Advisory Committee formerly established under section 4 of the Act, or any of its sub-committees, and”; and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (b) after “Crown” insert “ , the Scottish Ministers, the Welsh Ministers or a Northern Ireland Minister ”.
- 64.** For Schedule 9 substitute the following Schedule—

“SCHEDULE 9

Regulation 47(1)

MODIFICATIONS OF THE ENFORCEMENT PROVISIONS OF THE  
2012 REGULATIONS SUBJECT TO WHICH THOSE PROVISIONS  
ARE APPLIED FOR THE PURPOSES OF THESE REGULATIONS

1. The modifications of the 2012 Regulations mentioned in regulation 47 are as follows.
2. In regulation 2 (medicinal products)—
  - (a) at the beginning of paragraph (1) insert “ Subject to paragraph (3), ”; and
  - (b) after paragraph (2) insert the following paragraph—

“(3) “Medicinal product” includes any investigational medicinal product.”.
2. In regulation 8(1) (interpretation)—
  - (a) the definition “assemble” is substituted by the definition of that expression in regulation 2(1) of these Regulations; and
  - (b) there is inserted in the appropriate position in alphabetical order a definition “container” in the same terms as the definition of that expression in regulation 2(1) of these Regulations; and
  - (c) the definition “qualified person” is substituted by the definition of that expression in regulation 2(1) of these Regulations.
3. In regulation 322(1) (validity of decisions and proceedings) omit “or” and insert a comma before “ 8 (Article 126a authorisations) ”, and after those words insert “ or the Clinical Trials Regulations ”.
4. In regulation 325(1) (rights of entry) insert after sub-paragraph (b) the following sub-paragraph—

“(ba) in order to verify any statement contained in an application or request for an authorisation under the Clinical Trials Regulations;”.
- 5.—(1) Regulation 327 (powers of inspection, sampling and seizure) is amended as follows.
  - (2) In paragraph (1)—
    - (a) after sub-paragraph (b) omit “; or”;
    - (b) after sub-paragraph (c) insert “; or” and the following sub-paragraph—

“(d) in order to verify any statement contained in an application or request for an authorisation under the Clinical Trials Regulations.”.
  - (3) After paragraph (2)(g) insert the following sub-paragraph—

“(h) information and documents relating to clinical trials”.
  - (4) In paragraph (3)—
    - (a) omit “or” following sub-paragraph (a); and
    - (b) following paragraph (b) insert “; or” and the following sub-paragraph—

“(c) a medicinal product used, or intended to be used, in a clinical trial”.
  - (5) In paragraph (4)—
    - (a) after “require” insert “ — (a) ”; and
    - (b) after “control” insert “; or” and the following sub-paragraph—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “(b) a person associated with a clinical trial to produce information or documents relating to the clinical trial which are in the person's possession or under the person's control”.
- (6) In paragraph (5)(a) for “(2)(f) or (g)” substitute “ (2)(f), (g) or (h) ”.
- (7) After paragraph (9) insert the following paragraph—
- “(10) In this regulation, “a person associated with a clinical trial means any of the following—
- (a) the sponsor of a clinical trial (within the meaning of regulation 3 of the Clinical Trials Regulations);
  - (b) any person who, under arrangements made with the sponsor of a clinical trial, carries out functions of the sponsor of the trial;
  - (c) in investigator for a clinical trial (within the meaning of regulation 2(1) of the Clinical Trials Regulations);
  - (d) any person, other than an investigator, who conducts a clinical trial;
  - (e) any person occupying premises at which a clinical trial is being conducted; or
  - (f) any person who, in the course of employment with a person listed in any of sub-paragraphs (a) to (e), undertakes activities in connection with a clinical trial.”.
- (8) In regulation 335(6) (contravention due to fault of another person) omit “and” after sub-paragraph (e) and after sub-paragraph (f) insert “ ; and ” and the following sub-paragraph—
- “(g) any obligation or prohibition under the Clinical Trials Regulations”.
- (9) In regulation 336(3) (warranty as defence) omit “and” after sub-paragraph (c) and after sub-paragraph (d) insert “ ; and ” and the following sub-paragraph—
- “(e) regulation 46 of the Clinical Trials Regulations (labelling)”.

## PART 5

### Other United Kingdom, Scotland and Wales Secondary legislation

#### *Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) Regulations 1978*

- 65.** In regulation 8(1) of the Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) Regulations 1978 <sup>M172</sup>—
- (a) for “Section 6(2) of the Act” substitute “Regulation 6(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 (“the 2012 Regulations”); and
  - (b) for “by or under the Act” substitute “ by the 2012 Regulations ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M172** [S.I. 1978/1006](#), as amended by [S.I. 1995/2147](#) and [S.I. 2006/2407](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Importation of Animal Products and Poultry Products Order 1980*

**66.** In the Schedule to the Importation of Animal Products and Poultry Products Order 1980 <sup>M173</sup>, for “or the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc. Regulations) 1994” substitute “or the Human Medicines Regulations 2012”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M173** [S.I. 1980/14](#), as amended by [S.I. 1994/2920](#), [S.I. 1994/3142](#) and [S.I. 1994/3144](#).

*Medicines Act (Hearings by Persons Appointed) (Scotland) Rules 1986*

- 67.** In rule 2 of The Medicines Act (Hearings by Persons Appointed) Rules 1986 <sup>M174</sup>—
- (a) in the definition “applicant” omit the words “a licence or certificate under Part II or a direction under section 47(6) (application for a direction concerning incorporation of standard conditions into a licence or certificate) or”;
  - (b) in the definition “person appointed” omit—
    - (i) sub-paragraphs (i), (ii), (iii), (v) and (vi), and
    - (ii) the words following sub-paragraph (vii), from “including” until the end of the definition; and
  - (c) in the definition “relevant Minister”—
    - (i) omit sub-paragraph (i), and
    - (ii) in sub-paragraph (ii) for “the appropriate Ministers as defined in section 1(2)” substitute “the Ministers as defined in regulation 6(6) and (7) (the licensing authority and the Ministers) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M174** [S.I. 1986/1700](#). There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*Medicines Act (Hearings by Persons Appointed) Rules 1986*

- 68.** In rule 2 of The Medicines Act (Hearings by Persons Appointed) Rules 1986 <sup>M175</sup>—
- (a) in the definition “applicant” omit the words “a licence or certificate under Part II or a direction under section 47(6) (application for a direction concerning incorporation of standard conditions into a licence or certificate) or”;
  - (b) in the definition “person appointed” omit—
    - (i) sub-paragraphs (i), (ii), (iii), (v) and (vi), and
    - (ii) the words following sub-paragraph (vii), from “including” until the end of the definition; and
  - (c) in the definition “relevant Minister”—
    - (i) omit sub-paragraph (i), and
    - (ii) in sub-paragraph (ii) for “section 1(1)” substitute “regulation 6(6) and (7) (the licensing authority and the Ministers) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Marginal Citations

**M175** [S.I. 1986/1761](#), as amended by [S.I. 2006/2407](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

#### *Medicines (Fixing of Fees Relating to Medicinal Products for Human Use) Order 1989*

**69.**—(1) The Medicines (Fixing of Fees Relating to Medicinal Products for Human Use) Order 1989 <sup>M176</sup> is amended as follows.

- (2) In article 1(2) insert after the definition “ the 1987 Act ” the following definition—  
 ““the 2012 Regulations” means the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.
- (3) In Schedule 1—
- (a) in paragraph 1 omit “ , II ” and “ , VI ”;
- (b) after paragraph 1 insert the following paragraph—  
 “**1A.** Functions of the Ministers under the 2012 Regulations (except those under Part 15 (British Pharmacopoeia) of those Regulations), subject to paragraph 11 below.”.
- (c) in paragraph 2 for “Part II of the 1968 Act “ substitute “Parts 3 to 8 of the 2012 Regulations”;
- (d) for paragraph 3 substitute—  
 “**3.** Functions of the Commission on Human Medicines, whose continuation is provided for in regulation 9 of the 2012 Regulations (except those under Part 15 (British Pharmacopoeia) of those Regulations).”;
- (e) for paragraph 4 substitute—  
 “**4.** Functions of any expert committee appointed by the licensing authority under the 2012 Regulations.”.
- (f) for paragraph 8 substitute—  
 “**8.** Functions of reviewers appointed under the 2012 Regulations.”.
- (g) omit paragraphs 9A, 9C and 9D;
- (h) in paragraph 10(c) for “and of the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994” substitute “ and of the 2012 Regulations ” and
- (i) in paragraph 11—  
 (i) after “Paragraphs 1” insert “ , 1A ”, and  
 (ii) after “under it” insert “ or under the 2012 Regulations ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M176** [S.I. 1989/684](#), as amended by [S.I. 1995/871](#), [S.I. 2004/1031](#) and [S.I. 2005/2754](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

#### *Medical Devices (Consultation Requirements) (Fees) Regulations 1995*

**70.** In regulation 1(2) of the Medical Devices (Consultation Requirements) (Fees) Regulations 1995 <sup>M177</sup>—

- (a) in the definition “authorised medicinal product”—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) in sub-paragraph (b) before “under” insert “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 or ”, and
  - (ii) in sub-paragraph (c) for “those” substitute “ the latter ”; and
- (b) in the definition “product licence of right” for “section 25(4) of that Act” substitute “ paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 32 to the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M177** S.I. 1995/449

*Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997*

**71.**—(1) The Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997 <sup>M178</sup> is amended as follows.

(2) In article 1—

- (a) in paragraph (2) omit all the defined expressions except “inhaler” and “maximum strength”;
- (b) for paragraph (2A) substitute—

“(2A) In this Order, unless the context otherwise requires, any expression defined by any provision of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of those Regulations.”;
- (c) in paragraph (5) for “Schedules 1, 2, 3A and 5” substitute “ Schedules 1 and 2 ”; and
- (d) omit paragraphs (6) to (9).

(3) In article 5(1) for the words from the beginning of the paragraph until sub-paragraph (a) substitute “A medicinal product that is not the subject of a marketing authorisation is a prescription only medicine for the purposes of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 if it, or a substance in it, is listed in column 1 of Schedule 1, unless there”.

(4) In paragraphs (1) and (2) of article 10 for the words “The restrictions” to “administration of” substitute “ A medicinal product is not a prescription only medicine for the purposes of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 by virtue of Article 5(1) if it is ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M178** S.I. 1997/1830, as amended by S.I. 1997/2044, S.I. 1998/108, S.I. 1998/1178, S.I. 1998/2081, S.I. 1999/1044, S.I. 1999/3463, S.I. 2000/1917, S.I. 2000/2899, S.I. 2000/3231, S.I. 2001/2777, S.I. 2001/3942, S.I. 2003/696, and S.I. 2006/915. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*General Optical Council (Rules relating to Injury or Disease of the Eye) Order of Council 1999*

**72.** In rule 7B(b) of the Schedule to the General Optical Council (Rules relating to Injury or Disease of the Eye) Order of Council 1999 <sup>M179</sup>, for the words from “article” to the end of the paragraph substitute “ regulation 215 (prescribing and administration by supplementary prescribers) ” of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012.

**Marginal Citations**

**M179** S.I. 1999/3267, as amended by S.I. 2005/1476. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*National Health Service (Charges for Drugs and Appliances) Regulations 2000*

73. The National Health Service (Charges for Drugs and Appliances) Regulations 2000 <sup>M180</sup> are amended as follows—

- <sup>F325</sup>(a) .....
- (b) in regulation 6A(6) for the words from “the Medicines” to the end of the paragraph substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Textual Amendments**  
**F325** Sch. 34 para. 73(a) revoked (E.) (1.4.2015) by [The National Health Service \(Charges for Drugs and Appliances\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/570\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 3**

---

**Marginal Citations**  
**M180** [S.I. 2000/620](#), as amended by [S.I. 2000/3189](#) and [S.I. 2009/1166](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Biocidal Products Regulations 2001*

74. In Schedule 2 to the Biocidal Products Regulations 2001 <sup>M181</sup>—

- (a) omit entry (f); and
- (b) for entry (i) substitute—
  - “(i) the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.

**Marginal Citations**  
**M181** [S.I. 2001/880](#), as amended by [S.I. 2010/745](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Medicines (Aristolochia and Mu Tong etc) (Prohibition Order) 2001*

75. In article 4(4) of the Medicines (Aristolochia and Mu Tong etc) (Prohibition Order) 2001 <sup>M182</sup>, for the words following “marketing authorisation” to the end of the paragraph substitute “ , certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation within the meaning of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012. ”

**Marginal Citations**  
**M182** [S.I. 2001/1841](#), as amended by [S.I. 2005/2750](#) and [S.I. 2008/548](#).

*Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001*

76. In regulation 2(1) of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 <sup>M183</sup>—

- (a) in the definitions “clinical management plan”, “nurse independent prescriber”, “patient group direction”, “pharmacist independent prescriber”, “registered chiropodist”, “registered midwife”, “registered nurse”, “registered occupational therapist”, “registered optometrist”, “registered orthoptist”, “registered orthotist and prosthetist”, “registered paramedic”, “registered physiotherapist”, “registered radiographer” and “supplementary



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

prescriber”, for “the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and

- (b) in the definitions “pharmacist” and “registered pharmacy” for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M183** [S.I. 2001/3998](#), as amended by [S.I. 2003/2429](#), [S.I. 2005/271](#), [S.I. 2006/986](#), [S.I. 2006/1450](#), [S.I. 2007/2154](#) and 2012/973. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Medicines for Human Use (Kava-kava) (Prohibition Order) 2002*

**77.** In paragraph (d) of article 3 of the Medicines for Human Use (Kava-kava) (Prohibition Order) 2002 <sup>M184</sup>, for the words following “subject” to the end of the article substitute “ of a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation within the meaning of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012. ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M184** [S.I. 2002/3170](#), as amended by [S.I. 2005/2750](#) and [S.I. 2008/548](#).

*Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency Trading Fund Order 2003*

**78.** In article 1(3) of the Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency Trading Fund Order 2003 <sup>M185</sup> for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc) Regulations 1994” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M185** [S.I. 2003/1076](#), as amended by [S.I. 2005/2061](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Enterprise Act 2002 (Part 8 Community Infringements Specified UK Laws) Order 2003*

**79.** In the column “specified UK laws” of the Schedule to the Enterprise Act 2002 (Part 8 Community Infringements Specified UK Laws) Order 2003 <sup>M186</sup> for “the Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 1994” substitute “ Chapters 1 and 2 of Part 14 (advertising) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M186** [S.I. 2003/1374](#). There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*Enterprise Act 2002 (Part 8 Notice to OFT of Intended Prosecution Specified Enactments, Revocation and Transitional Provision) Order 2003*

**80.** In the Schedule to the Enterprise Act 2002 (Part 8 Notice to OFT of Intended Prosecution Specified Enactments, Revocation and Transitional Provision) Order 2003 <sup>M187</sup>—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in the first column, insert in the appropriate position in alphabetical order “ Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”;
- (b) in the second column, insert adjacent to the entry “ Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ” in the first column “regulation 303 (advertising offences)”;
- (c) omit “Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 1994” in the first column and the adjacent entry “regulation 23 (offences)” in the second column.

#### Marginal Citations

**M187 S.I. 2003/1376.** There are amendments, but none is relevant.

#### *Health Professions (Parts of and Entries in the Register) Order of Council 2003*

**81.** In article 6 of the Health Professions (Parts of and Entries in the Register) Order of Council 2003 <sup>M188</sup>—

- (a) for sub-paragraph (b) of paragraph (2), up to and including the word “analgesics”, substitute—
  - “(b) referred to in the following provisions of Schedule 17 (exemption for sale, supply or administration by certain persons) to the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 —
    - (i) in Part 1 (exemption from restrictions on sale or supply of prescription only medicines), paragraph 11 (certificate of competence in the use of specified medicines), or
    - (ii) in Part 3 (exemptions from the restriction on administration of prescription only medicines), paragraph 1 (certificate in the use of analgesics),”; and
- (b) in paragraph (3) for “the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M188 S.I. 2003/1571,** as amended by **S.I. 2006/1996.** There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

#### *Unlicensed Medicinal Products for Human Use (Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathies) (Safety) Regulations 2003*

**82.—**(1) The Unlicensed Medicinal Products for Human Use (Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathies) (Safety) Regulations 2003 <sup>M189</sup> (interpretation) are amended as follows.

- (2) In regulation 1(2)—
  - (a) omit the following definitions—
    - (i) “the 1994 Regulations”, and
    - (ii) “herbal remedy”;
  - (b) before the definition of “the appropriate committee” insert—
 

““the 2012 Regulations” means the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.
  - (c) for the definition of “the appropriate committee” substitute—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

““the appropriate committee” means whichever the appropriate Minister considers to be the appropriate body of the following—

- (a) the Commission; or
- (b) an expert committee appointed by the appropriate Minister, or by the appropriate Ministers for Great Britain and for Northern Ireland acting jointly;”;
- (d) after the definition of “the appropriate Minister” insert—

““the Commission” means the Commission on Human Medicines continued in existence by regulation 9 of the 2012 Regulations;”;
- (e) for the definition of “excluded medicine” substitute—

““excluded medicine” means a medicinal product to which the restrictions in regulation 46 (requirement for authorisation) of the 2012 Regulations do not apply by virtue of regulation 3(6) (scope of these Regulations: special provisions) or 4(1) (special provisions for pharmacies etc) of those Regulations;”;
- (f) in the definition of “market” for the words from “have the same meaning” to the end substitute “ are to be construed in accordance with the 2012 Regulations; ”;
- (g) for the definition of “medicinal product” substitute—

““medicinal product” has the meaning given by regulation 2 of the 2012 Regulations;”;

and
- (h) in the definition of “unlicensed product”—
  - (i) in paragraph (a)(i), for “the 1994 Regulations” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”,
  - (ii) omit paragraph (b) and the word “or” following it,
  - (iii) for paragraph (c) substitute—

“(c) no traditional herbal registration has been granted by the licensing authority under the 2012 Regulations;”;

and
  - (iv) after that paragraph insert the word “ or ” and the following paragraph —

“(d) no Article 126a authorisation has been granted by the licensing authority under those regulations;”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M189** S.I. 2003/1680, as amended by S.I. 2004/3224, S.I. 2005/2750 and S.I. 2005/2754.

#### *National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) (Scotland) Regulations 2004*

**83.**—(1) The National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) (Scotland) Regulations 2004<sup>M190</sup> are amended as follows.

- (2) In regulation 2(1)—
  - (a) omit the definition “the POM Order”; and
  - (b) in the definition “prescription only medicine” for the words from “article” to the end of the definition substitute “ regulation 5(3) (classification of medicinal products) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (3) In paragraph 41(2)(a) of Schedule 5—
  - (a) for “article 3B(3) of the POM Order” substitute “ regulation 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) for “that Order” substitute “ those Regulations ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M190** S.S.I. 2004/115, as amended by S.S.I. 2005/337. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*National Health Service (Primary Medical Services Section 17C Agreements) (Scotland) Regulations 2004*

**84.**—(1) The National Health Service (Primary Medical Services Section 17C Agreements) (Scotland) Regulations 2004 <sup>M191</sup> are amended as follows.

(2) In regulation 2(1)—

- (a) omit the definition “the POM Order”; and
- (b) in the definition “prescription only medicine” for the words from “article” to the end of the definition substitute “ regulation 5(3) (classification of medicinal products) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

(3) In paragraph 13(2)(a) of Schedule 1—

- (a) for “article 3B(3) of the POM Order” substitute “ regulation 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (b) for “that Order” substitute “ those Regulations ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M191** S.S.I. 2004/116, as amended by S.S.I. 2005/336. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) Regulations 2004*

<sup>F326</sup>**85.** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F326** Sch. 34 para. 85 revoked (E.) (7.12.2015) by [The National Health Service \(General Medical Services Contracts\) Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/1862), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 5](#) (with reg. 2)

*National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) (Wales) Regulations 2004*

**86.**—(1) The National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) (Wales) Regulations 2004 <sup>M192</sup> are amended as follows.

(2) In regulation 2—

- (a) in paragraph (1)—
  - (i) omit the definition “the POM Order”; and
  - (ii) in the definition “prescription only medicine” for the words from “article” to the end of the definition substitute “ regulation 5(3) (classification of medicinal products) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in paragraph (3) for “the POM Order” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (3) In paragraph 43(2)(a) of Schedule 6—
  - (a) for “article 3B(3) of the POM Order” substitute “ regulation 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) for “that Order” substitute “ those Regulations ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M192** [S.I. 2004/478](#), as amended by [S.I. 2006/358](#) and [S.I. 2010/1647](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*National Health Service (Personal Medical Services Agreements) Regulations 2004*

<sup>F327</sup>**87.** . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

**F327** [Sch. 34 para. 87](#) revoked (E.) (7.12.2015) by [The National Health Service \(Personal Medical Services Agreements\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1879\)](#), [reg. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 4](#) (with [regs. 2, 88](#))

*National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts)  
(Prescription of Drugs Etc.) (Wales) Regulations 2004*

**88.** In Schedule 2 to the National Health Service (General Medical Services Contracts) (Prescription of Drugs Etc.) (Wales) Regulations 2004 <sup>M193</sup> for “article 12F of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997 or article 8 of the Medicines (Pharmacy and General Sale-Exemptions) Order 1980”, in both places where those words occur, substitute “ regulation 247 (exemption for supply in the event or anticipation of pandemic disease) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M193** [S.I. 2004/1022](#), as amended by [S.I. 2005/366](#) and [S.I. 2009/1977](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Contracting Out (Functions relating to Broadcast Advertising)  
and Specification of Relevant Functions Order 2004*

**89.—**(1) The Contracting Out (Functions relating to Broadcast Advertising) and Specification of Relevant Functions Order 2004 <sup>M194</sup> is amended as follows.

- (2) In article 2(1)—
  - (a) omit the definition “the 1994 Regulations”; and
  - (b) after the definition “the 2003 Act” insert the following definition—

““the 2012 Regulations” means the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.
- (3) In article 7—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in paragraph (1) for “the 1994 Regulations” substitute “ Chapter 3 (monitoring of advertising) of Part 14 of the 2012 Regulations ”; and
- (b) in paragraph (2)—
  - (i) for “the 1994 Regulations” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”, and
  - (ii) for the words from “the following” to the end of the paragraph substitute “ regulation 314 of the 2012 Regulations ”.
- (4) In article 8(3)(d) for “the 1994 Regulations” substitute “ Chapter 3 (monitoring of advertising) of Part 14 of the 2012 Regulations ”.
- (5) In article 11—
  - (a) in paragraph (2) for “the 1994 Regulations” substitute “ the 2012 Regulations ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (3)—
    - (i) for “section 1(1)(a) of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 6(6) of the 2012 Regulations ”, and
    - (ii) for “the 1994 Regulations” substitute “ Chapter 3 (monitoring of advertising) of Part 14 of the 2012 Regulations ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M194** [S.I. 2004/1975](#).

*General Optical Council (Registration Rules) Order of Council 2005*

- 90.** In the Table in rule 10 of the Schedule to the General Optical Council (Registration Rules) Order of Council 2005 <sup>M195</sup>—
- (a) in entry B column 3—
    - (i) in paragraph (a) for “paragraph 6A of Schedule 5 to the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ paragraph 8 of Part 1 of Schedule 17 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph (b) for “6B” substitute “ 9 ”;
  - (b) in entry C column 3 for “article 3B of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ regulation 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (c) in entry D column 3 for “article 3 of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ regulation 5(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M195** [S.I. 2005/1478](#), as amended by [S.I. 2008/1940](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*National Health Service (Free Prescriptions and Charges for Drugs and Appliances) (Wales) Regulations 2007*

- 91.**—(1) The National Health Service (Free Prescriptions and Charges for Drugs and Appliances) (Wales) Regulations 2007 <sup>M196</sup> are amended as follows.
- (2) In regulation 2(1) omit the definition of “the POM Order”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) In regulation 2(2A) for “the POM Order” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

(4) In regulation 7(2) for the words from “the Medicines” to the end of the regulation substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

(5) In regulation 7A(1)(b) for the words from “article 12F” to the end of the regulation substitute “ regulation 247 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M196** [S.I. 2007/121](#), as amended by [S.I. 2009/1175](#) and [S.I. 2010/1647](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Human Tissue (Quality and Safety for Human Application) Regulations 2007*

**92.** In regulation 2(3) of the Human Tissue (Quality and Safety for Human Application) Regulations 2007 <sup>M197</sup>—

(a) omit sub-paragraph (a); and

(b) for sub-paragraph (b) substitute—

“(b) the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M197** [S.I. 2007/1523](#).

*Legislative and Regulatory Reform (Regulatory Functions) Order 2007*

**93.**—(1) The Schedule to the Legislative and Regulatory Reform (Regulatory Functions) Order 2007 <sup>M198</sup> is amended as follows.

(2) In Part 2 under the heading “Medicines”—

(a) omit the entries—

“Medicines (Homoeopathic Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 1994”,

“Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 1994”,

“Medicines (Monitoring of Advertising) Regulations 1994”,

“Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994”,

“Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005”, and

“Medicines for Human Use (Manufacturing, Wholesale Dealing and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2005”; and

(b) add the entry—

“Human Medicines Regulations 2012”.

(3) In Part 3 under the heading “Public health and safety”—

(a) omit the entries—

“Medicines (Advertising) Amendment Regulations 2004”, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005”;  
and
- (b) add the entry—  
“Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Part 7 (traditional herbal registrations) of those Regulations”.
- (4) In Part 6—
- (a) omit the entry—  
“Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 2005”; and
- (b) add the entry—  
“Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Chapters 1 and 2 of Part 14 (advertising) of those Regulations”.
- (5) In Part 8—
- (a) omit the entry—  
“Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005”;  
and
- (b) add the entry—  
“Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Part 7 (traditional herbal registrations) of those Regulations”.
- (6) In Part 13—
- (a) omit the entry—  
“Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005”;  
and
- (b) add the entry—  
“Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Part 7 (traditional herbal registrations) of those Regulations”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M198** [S.I. 2007/3544](#), as amended by [S.I. 2009/2981](#). There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

#### *Medicines for Human Use (Prohibition) (Senecio and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2008*

**94.** In paragraph (d) of article 3 of the Medicines for Human Use (Prohibition) (Senecio and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2008 <sup>M199</sup>, for the words following “subject” to the end of the article substitute “ of a marketing authorisation, certificate of registration, traditional herbal registration or Article 126a authorisation within the meaning of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012. ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M199** [S.I. 2008/548](#).

#### *Specified Animal Pathogens Order 2008*

**95.** In article 5(2) of the Specified Animal Pathogens Order 2008 <sup>M200</sup>—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in sub-paragraph (b) for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (c).

**Marginal Citations**

M200 S.I. 2008/944. There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*Specified Animal Pathogens (Wales) Order 2008*

96. In article 5(2) of the Specified Animal Pathogens (Wales) Order 2008 <sup>M201</sup>—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (b) for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) omit sub-paragraph (c).

**Marginal Citations**

M201 S.I. 2008/1270. There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*Health Service Branded Medicines (Control of Prices and Supply of Information) (No 2) Regulations 2008*

97. In regulation 1(2) of the Health Service Branded Medicines (Control of Prices and Supply of Information) (No 2) Regulations 2008 <sup>M202</sup> in the definition “prescription only medicine”, for “the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M202 S.I. 2008/3258. There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*Specified Animal Pathogens (Scotland) Order 2009*

98. In article 5(2) of the Specified Animal Pathogens (Scotland) Order 2009 <sup>M203</sup>—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (b) for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994;” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012. ”; and
  - (b) omit sub-paragraph (c).

**Marginal Citations**

M203 S.S.I. 2009/45. There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*National Health Service (Pharmaceutical Services) (Scotland) Regulations 2009*

- 99.—(1) The National Health Service (Pharmaceutical Services) (Scotland) Regulations 2009 <sup>M204</sup> are amended as follows.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In regulation 2(1)—
- (a) in the definition “clinical management plan” for the words from “article” to the end of the definition substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”;
  - (b) in the definition “non-proprietary name”—
    - (i) for “section 103(5) of the 1968 Act” in both places where it occurs substitute “regulation 321(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012, and
    - (ii) for “section 100 of that Act” substitute “ regulation 318 of those Regulations ”;
  - (c) in the definition “Patient Group Direction” for the words from “Article” to the end of the definition substitute “ regulation 213 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (d) in the definition “supply form” for the words from “Article” to the end of the definition substitute “ regulation 233 (exemption for supply etc under a PGD by person conducting a retail pharmacy business) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (3) In Schedule 1—
- (a) in paragraph 4—
    - (i) in sub-paragraph (23) for “Article 12C of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997 (exemption for persons conducting a retail pharmacy business who supply or administer prescription only medicines under a Patient Group Direction)” substitute “ regulation 233 (exemption for supply etc under a PGD by person conducting a retail pharmacy business) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
    - (ii) in sub-paragraph (29) for “paragraph (4) of article 8 of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ regulation 225 (emergency sale etc by pharmacist: at patient's request) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph 10(8) for “article 12C of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997, (exemption for persons conducting a retail pharmacy business who supply or administer prescription only medicines under a Patient Group Direction)” substitute “ regulation 233 (exemption for supply etc under a PGD by person conducting a retail pharmacy business) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012, ”.

#### Marginal Citations

M204 S.S.I. 2009/183.

#### *Co-ordination of Regulatory Enforcement (Regulatory Functions in Scotland and Northern Ireland) Order 2009*

**100.**—(1) The Co-ordination of Regulatory Enforcement (Regulatory Functions in Scotland and Northern Ireland) Order 2009 <sup>M205</sup> is amended as follows.

(2) In Part 1 of Schedule 1, to the entry “Medicines Act 1968 (section 109)” add “or Human Medicines Regulations 2012 (regulation 323)”.

(3) In Part 2 of Schedule 1—

- (a) omit the entry—
  - “Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 1994”; and
- (b) add in the appropriate place the entry—
  - “Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Chapters 1 and 2 of Part 14 (advertising) of those Regulations”.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In Part 4 of Schedule 1—
- (a) omit the entry—  
“Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for human use) Regulations 2005”;  
and
  - (b) add in the appropriate place the entry—  
“Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Part 7 (traditional herbal registrations) of those Regulations”.
- (5) In Part 2 of Schedule 2—
- (a) omit the entry—  
“Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005”;  
and
  - (b) add the entry—  
“Human Medicines Regulations 2012, in relation to Part 7 (traditional herbal registrations) of those Regulations”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M205 S.I. 2009/669.** There are amendments, but none is relevant.

*Single Use Carrier Bags Charge (Wales) Regulations 2010*

- 101.** In Schedule 1(3) to the Single Use Carrier Bags Charge (Wales) Regulations 2010 <sup>M206</sup>—
- (a) in the definition “EEA health professional” for the words from “1(2)” to the end of the definition substitute “ 213(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”;
  - (b) in the definition “pharmacy medicine” for the words from “means” to the end of the definition substitute “ has the meaning given in regulation 5(5) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”;
  - (c) in the definition “prescription only medicine” for the words from “means” to the end of the definition substitute “ has the meaning given in regulation 5(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (d) in the definition beginning “supplementary prescriber” for “article 1(2) of the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M206 S.I. 2010/2880.** There are amendments, but none is relevant.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART 6

### Northern Ireland statutory rules

#### *Control of Pesticides Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1987*

**102.** For regulation 3(2)(b)(i) of the Control of Pesticides Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1987<sup>M207</sup> substitute—

“(i) the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M207** S.R. (NI) 1987 No 414, as amended by S.R. (NI) 1997 No 469.

#### *Prison and Young Offenders Centre (Amendment) Rules (Northern Ireland) 1995*

**103.** In rule 4 of the Prison and Young Offenders Centre (Amendment) Rules (Northern Ireland) 1995<sup>M208</sup>—

- (a) omit the definition “the 1997 Order”;
- (b) in the definitions “nurse independent prescriber” and “pharmacist independent prescriber” for “article 1(2) of the 1997 Order” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (c) in the definition “prescription only medicine” for “article 1(2) of the 1997 Order” substitute “ regulation 5(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M208** S.R. (NI) 1995 No 8, as amended by S.R. (NI) 2009 No 429. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

#### *Diseases of Animals (Importation of Bird Products) Order (Northern Ireland) 1996*

**104.** In the Schedule to the Diseases of Animals (Importation of Bird Products) Order (Northern Ireland) 1996<sup>M209</sup> for “Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M209** S.R. (NI) 1996 No 81.

#### *Pharmaceutical Services Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1997*

**105.** In Part 2 of Schedule 2 to the Pharmaceutical Services Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1997<sup>M210</sup>, in paragraph 2(12) for the words from “Articles” to the end of the paragraph substitute regulation 224 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

**M210** S.R. (NI) 1997 No 381, as amended by S.R. (NI) 1999 No 405. There are other amendments, but none is relevant.

*Industrial Pollution Control (Prescribed Processes and Substances) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1998*

**106.** In Schedule 1, Chapter 4, Section 4.8, Part C of the Industrial Pollution Control (Prescribed Processes and Substances) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1998 <sup>M211</sup>, for the words from “means” to the end of the Part substitute “ has the meaning given in regulation 2 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M211** S.R. (NI) 1998 No 28.

*Products of Animal Origin (Import and Export) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1998*

**107.** The Products of Animal Origin (Import and Export) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1998 <sup>M212</sup> are amended as follows—

- (a) in regulation 10(1)(a) for “section 8 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 17 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (b) in regulation 11(1) for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M212** S.R. (NI) 1998 No 45, as amended by S.R. (NI) 2011 No 124.

*Importation of Animal Pathogens Order (Northern Ireland) 1999*

**108.** In article 5(a) of the Importation of Animal Pathogens Order (Northern Ireland) 1999 <sup>M213</sup> for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M213** S.R. (NI) 1999 No 433.

*Biocidal Products Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2001*

**109.** In Schedule 2 to the Biocidal Products Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2001 <sup>M214</sup>—

- (a) omit entry (f); and
- (b) for entry (i) substitute—
  - “(i) the Human Medicines Regulations 2012;”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Marginal Citations

M214 S.R. (NI) 2001 No 422.

### *Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002*

- 110.**—(1) The Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002<sup>M215</sup> are amended as follows.
- (2) In regulation 2(2)—
- (a) in the definitions “clinical management plan”, “nurse independent prescriber”, “patient group direction”, “registered chiropodist”, “registered midwife”, “registered nurse”, “registered occupational therapist”, “registered optometrist”, “registered orthoptist”, “registered orthotist and prosthetist”, “registered paramedic”, “registered physiotherapist”, “registered radiographer” and “supplementary prescriber”, for “the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) in the definition “medicinal product” for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”
- (3) In regulation 6A(1)(e) for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (4) In regulation 8(2)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (h) after the first occurrence of “the Medicines Act 1968” insert “ or of Schedule 31 to the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (j) after “the Medicines Act 1968” insert “ or of regulation 324 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (5) In regulation 9(2)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (f) after “the Medicines Act 1968” insert “ or of Schedule 31 to the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (h) after “the Medicines Act 1968” insert “ or of regulation 324 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (6) In regulation 11(1) for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.
- (7) In regulation 17—
- (a) after “the Medicines Act 1968” insert “ or of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (b) after “that Act” insert “ or of those Regulations ”.
- (8) In regulation 18 for paragraph (3) substitute—
- “(3) In this regulation, “clinical trial” has the same meaning as in the Medicines for Human Use (Clinical Trials) Regulations 2004.”.

#### Marginal Citations

M215 S.R. (NI) 2002 No 1, as amended by S.R. (NI) 2003 No 324, S.R. (NI) 2003 No 420, S.R. (NI) 2005 No 119, S.R. (NI) 2005 No 564, S.R. (NI) 2006 No 214, S.R. (NI) 2006 No 264, and S.R. (NI) 2007 No 348.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003*

**111.** In regulation 5(2)(c) of the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003 <sup>M216</sup> for “section 58 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 214 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M216** S.R. (NI) 2003 No 34.

*Waste Management Licensing Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003*

**112.** In paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 to the Waste Management Licensing Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003 <sup>M217</sup>, in the definition “hazardous waste” for the words following ““medicinal product” means” to the end of the definition substitute “ a prescription only medicine within the meaning of regulation 5(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M217** S.R. (NI) 2003 No 493.

*Health and Personal Social Services (General Medical Services Contracts) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004*

**113.—(1)** The Health and Personal Social Services (General Medical Services Contracts) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 <sup>M218</sup> are amended as follows.

(2) In regulation 2—

- (a) in the definition “licensing authority” for “section 6(3) of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 6 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”;
- (b) omit the definition “the POM Order” and
- (c) in the definition “prescription only medicine” for the words from “referred” to the end of the definition substitute “ within the meaning of regulation 5(3) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

(3) In regulation 47(2) for the words from “Part 3” to the end of the regulation substitute “ Part 12 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

(4) In Schedule 5—

- (a) in paragraph 11A(1) in the definition “Patient Group Direction” for “the Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
- (b) in paragraph 41(2)(a)—
  - (i) for “article 3B(3) of the POM Order” substitute “ regulation 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”; and
  - (ii) for “that Order” substitute “ those Regulations ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M218** S.R. (NI) 2004 No 140, as amended by S.R. (NI) 2005 No 368.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### *Nursing Homes Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2005*

**114.** In regulation 13(6)(b) of the Nursing Homes Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2005 <sup>M219</sup> for “section 58 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 214 or 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M219** S.R. (NI) 2005 No 160.

#### *Residential Care Homes Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2005*

**115.** In regulation 13(6)(b) of the Nursing Homes Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2005 <sup>M220</sup> for “section 58 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 214 or 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M220** S.R. (NI) 2005 No 161.

#### *Children's Homes Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2005*

**116.** In regulation 20(4)(b) of the Children's Homes Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2005 <sup>M221</sup>, for “section 58 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulations 214 or 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M221** S.R. (NI) 2005 No 176.

#### *Healthy Start Scheme and Day Care Food Scheme Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2006*

**117.** In regulation 3(1) of the Healthy Start Scheme and Day Care Food Scheme Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2006 <sup>M222</sup> in the definition “Pharmacist” for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M222** S.R. (NI) 2006 No 478.

#### *Avian Influenza and Influenza of Avian Origin in Mammals Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007*

**118.** In regulation 71(3)(a) of the Avian Influenza and Influenza of Avian Origin in Mammals Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007 <sup>M223</sup>, for “section 8(2) of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 17 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

M223 S.R. (NI) 2007 No 68.

*Day Care Setting Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007*

119. In regulation 13(6)(b) of the Day Care Setting Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007 <sup>M224</sup> for “section 58 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulations 214 or 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M224 S.R. (NI) 2007 No 234.

*Residential Family Centres Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007*

120. In regulation 13(4)(b) of the Residential Family Centres Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007 <sup>M225</sup> for “section 58 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulations 214 or 215 of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M225 S.R. (NI) 2007 No 236.

*Natural Mineral Water, Spring Water and Bottled  
Drinking Water Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007*

121. In regulation 3(1)(a) of the Natural Mineral Water, Spring Water and Bottled Drinking Water Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007 <sup>M226</sup> for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations etc.) Regulations 1994” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M226 S.R. (NI) 2007 No 420.

*Specified Animal Pathogens Order (Northern Ireland) 2008*

122. In article 5(2)(b) of the Specified Animal Pathogens Order (Northern Ireland) 2008 <sup>M227</sup> for “the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M227 S.R. (NI) 2008 No 336.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Controlled Drugs (Supervision of Management and Use) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009*

**123.** In regulation 2(2) of the Controlled Drugs (Supervision of Management and Use) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009 <sup>M228</sup>, in the definition “retail pharmacy business” for “section 132 of the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ regulation 8(1) of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M228** S.R. (NI) 2009 No 225.

*Private Water Supplies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009*

**124.** In regulation 4(b) of the Private Water Supplies Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009 <sup>M229</sup> for “the Medicines Act 1968” substitute “ the Human Medicines Regulations 2012 ”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M229** S.R. (NI) 2009 No 413.

SCHEDULE 35

Regulation 349

Repeals and revocations

<i>Enactment or instrument</i>	<i>Extent of repeal or revocation</i>
Medicines Act 1968 (c. 67)	Sections 2A to 9. Section 10(7). Sections 11 to 14. Section 15(1) and (2). Sections 16 to 57. Section 58(1A), (2) and (3). Sections 59 to 61. Sections 65 and 66. Section 67(3A), (5) and (6). Section 68. Sections 85 and 86. Section 89. Section 91(1). Sections 92 to 103. Section 108(3) to (5) and (7). Section 109(3). Section 110(3). Section 111(3). Section 112(7). Sections 115 and 116. Section 126(4). Section 130(2) to (8) and (10). Section 132(2), (3) and (5). Schedules 1A and 2.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

In Schedule 3, paragraphs 5 to 7.

Medicines (Extension to Antimicrobial Substances) Order 1973 (S.I. 1973/367)	The whole Order.
Medicines (Specified Articles and Substances) Order 1976 (S.I. 1976/968)	The whole Order.
Medicines (Fluted Bottles) Regulations 1978 (S.I. 1978/40)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Medicines Act 1968 Amendment) Regulations 1983 (S.I. 1983/1724)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Products Other than Veterinary Drugs) (General Sale List) Amendment Order 1990 (S.I. 1990/1129)	The whole Order.
Medicines Act 1968 (Application to Radiopharmaceutical-associated Products) Regulations 1992 (S.I. 1992/605)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines Act 1968 (Amendment) Regulations 1993 (S.I. 1993/834)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Homoeopathic Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/105)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Homoeopathic Medicinal Products for Human Use) Amendment Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/899)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/1932)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Monitoring of Advertising) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/1933)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/3144)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines Act 1968 (Amendment) Regulations 1995 (S.I. 1995/2321)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Homoeopathic Medicinal Products for Human Use) Amendment Regulations 1996 (S.I. 1996/482)	The whole of the Regulations.
Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997 (S.I. 1997/1830)	The whole of the Order except articles 1(1) to (5), 5 and 10 and Schedules 1 and 2.
Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Amendment Regulations 1998 (S.I. 1998/3105)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Advertising and Monitoring of Advertising) Amendment Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/267)	The whole of the Regulations.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Medicines (Monitoring of Advertising) Amendment Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/784)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Codification Amendments Etc.) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/236)	The whole of the Regulations
Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Amendment Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1618)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Child Safety) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2317)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Advertising) Amendment Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/1480)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines for Human Use (Prescribing) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/765)	The whole Order.
Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Amendment Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/768)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Advisory Bodies) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1094)	The whole of the Regulations except paragraph 12(1), (4) and (5) of Schedule 1, and regulation 8 as it relates to those paragraphs.
Medicines (Sale or Supply) (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1520)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Provision of False or Misleading Information and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/1710)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2750)	The whole of the Regulations except paragraph 8(a)(i) and (b) of Schedule 7, and regulation 12 as it relates to those paragraphs.
Medicines (Advisory Bodies) (No 2) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2754)	The whole of the Regulations, except Schedule 3, and regulation 4 as it relates to that Schedule, and paragraphs 3 and 7(1) and (3) of Schedule 4, and regulation 5 as it relates to those paragraphs.
Medicines (Advertising Amendments) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2787)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines for Human Use (Manufacturing, Wholesale Dealing and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2789)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) (Consequential Amendment) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/395)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines for Human Use (National Rules for Homoeopathic Products) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1952)	The whole of the Regulations.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Medicines for Human Use (Prescribing by EEA Practitioners) Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/1692)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Amendment Regulations 2008 (S.I. 2008/3097)	The whole of the Regulations.
Medicines for Human Use (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/1164)	The whole of the Regulations, except regulation 3.
Medicines (Exemptions and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/3062)	The whole Order.
Medicines for Human Use (Advanced Therapy Medicinal Products and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/1882)	The whole of the Regulations.

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

*(This note is not part of the Regulations)*

These Regulations consolidate the law of the United Kingdom concerning medicinal products for human use (“products”) in respect of the topics described below.

Parts 1 (general) and 2 (administration) consolidate, with only minor and drafting amendments, the administration provisions in Part 1 of the Medicines Act 1968 (“the 1968 Act”), including the definition of the licensing authority as the body responsible for regulating products. Part 1 also provides for interpretation, and for special provisions concerning the applicability of the Regulations to a number of activities by pharmacists and others. The latter provisions consolidate, with only minor and drafting amendments, provisions in Part 2 of the 1968 Act, except for the repeal of section 10(7) of the Act, which concerns wholesale dealing by pharmacists.

Part 3 (manufacturing and wholesale dealing) of the Regulations governs the manufacture and importation of, and wholesale dealing in, products. It consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, the provisions of Part 2 of the 1968 Act, and statutory instruments made under powers in that Part, on these topics. In doing so the Regulations continue to implement the obligations of the United Kingdom under Titles IV and VII of Directive [2001/83/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on the Community Code relating to medicinal products for human use (“the 2001 Directive”) (OJ No L 311, 28.11.2001, p.67, as amended most recently by Directive 2010/84/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council amending, as regards pharmacovigilance, Directive [2001/83/EC](#) on the Community Code relating to medicinal products for human use (OJ No L 348, 31.12.2010, p.74) (“the 2010 Directive”).

Part 4 (requirement for authorisation) of the Regulations establishes that products must not be sold, supplied, or offered for sale or supply in the United Kingdom unless authorised, either by the United Kingdom licensing authority under the Regulations, or by the European Commission under Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council laying down Community Procedures for the authorisation and supervision of medicinal products for human and veterinary use and establishing a European Medicines Agency (“Regulation [\(EC\) No 726/2004](#)”).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(OJ No L 136, 30.4.2004, p.1, as amended most recently by Regulation (EU) No 1235/2010, OJ No L 348, 31.12.2010, p.1).

Parts 5 to 8 (marketing authorisations, certification of homoeopathic medicinal products, traditional herbal registrations and Article 126a authorisations) provide for the procedures for authorisation by the United Kingdom licensing authority of medicinal products in various categories. Part 5 (marketing authorisations) also provides for offences in the case of breach of the corresponding requirements in the procedures under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004, and for the breach of certain obligations under Regulation (EC) No 1901/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council on medicinal products for paediatric use and amending Regulation (EEC) No 1768/92, Directive 2001/20/EC, Directive 2001/83/EC and Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 (OJ No L 378, 27.12.2006, p.1, as amended by Regulation (EC) No 1902/2006 (OJ No L 378, 27.12.2006, p.20).

In respect of United Kingdom authorisation, Parts 4 to 8 of the Regulations consolidate, with only minor and drafting amendments, the following principal statutory instruments: the Medicines for Human Use (Marketing Authorisations Etc.) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/3144, as amended, most recently by S.I. 2010/1882) (“the marketing authorisations regulations”), the Medicines (Homoeopathic Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/105, as amended, most recently by S.I. 2006/2407) (“the homoeopathic regulations”), except in respect of fees provisions that are not being revoked, and the Medicines (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products for Human Use) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2750, as amended, most recently by S.I. 2010/1621) (“the traditional herbal regulations”). In doing so, the Regulations continue to implement Titles III and VI of the 2001 Directive. At the same time the Regulations repeal the parallel national scheme for the licensing of the sale and supply of products, found in Part 2 of the 1968 Act, but now almost entirely superseded by EU provision in this field.

Part 9 (borderline products) of the Regulations consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, provision in the marketing authorisations regulations for the licensing authority to determine whether products that are supplied without authorisation are medicinal products and thus subject to the Regulations.

Part 10 (exceptions) consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, provisions in the marketing authorisations regulations, the homoeopathic regulations and the traditional herbal regulations concerning exemptions from the requirement for authorisation.

Part 11 (pharmacovigilance) consolidates provisions in the marketing authorisations regulations and the traditional herbal regulations concerning the monitoring of the safety of medicines in clinical use. This Part also implements the amendments to Title IX of the 2001 Directive made by the 2010 Directive. Part 11 also provides for offences in the case of breach of the corresponding requirements under Regulation (EC) No 726/2004.

Part 12 (dealings with medicinal products) governs the circumstances in which products may be sold, supplied and administered, and consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, the greater part of Part 3 of the 1968 Act, certain provisions of the latter which are outside the scope of the 2001 Directive being left unrepealed.

Parts 1, 3, 5, 10 and 12 contain provisions consolidating the effect of the Medicines for Human Use (Advanced Therapy Medicinal Products and Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/1882). In so doing, the Regulations continue to make provision necessary for the operation of Regulation (EC) No 1394/2007 of the European Parliament and of the Council on advanced therapy medicinal products and amending Directive 2001/83/EC and Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 (OJ No L324, 10.12.2007, p.21).

Part 13 (packaging and leaflets) Chapter 1 consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, provisions in the marketing authorisations regulations, the homoeopathic regulations and the traditional herbal registrations in respect of the information to be supplied with products, continuing to implement Title V of the 2001 Directive. Chapter 2 consolidates certain United Kingdom provisions on child safety in the presentation of products. Part 5 of the 1968 Act, which made parallel provision, is repealed, and the instruments made under it revoked, except in respect of certain powers outside the scope of the 2001 Directive.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:** The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Part 14 (advertising) consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, the Medicines (Advertising) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/1932, as amended, most recently by S.I. 2006/2407) and the Medicines (Monitoring of Advertising) Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/1933, as amended, most recently by S.I. 2006/2407). In doing so, it continues to implement Titles VIII and VIIIA of the 2001 Directive. Part 6 of the 1968 Act, which made parallel provision, is repealed, and the instruments made under it revoked.

Part 15 (British Pharmacopoeia) consolidates, with only minor and drafting amendments, Part 7 of the 1968 Act.

Parts 16 (enforcement) and Part 17 (miscellaneous and general) consolidate, with only minor and drafting amendments, Part 8 (miscellaneous and supplementary provisions) of the 1968 Act as it concerns the topics in the Regulations. That Part remains in force, in amended form, in relation primarily to Part 4 (pharmacies) of the 1968 Act, which remains in force, and to certain other matters outside the scope of the 2001 Directive.

Impact assessments for these Regulations have been prepared and are available from the Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (“MHRA”), 151 Buckingham Palace Road, London SW1W 9SZ, and published with the explanatory memorandum alongside the Regulations on [www.legislation.gov.uk](http://www.legislation.gov.uk). A transposition note for the 2010 Directive has been prepared, and is also available from MHRA.

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 01/04/2018.

**Changes to legislation:**

The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.